

Highlights More than  
1,000 Frequent Errors

# CORRECT *your* SPANISH BLUNDERS



How to Avoid  
**99%**  
of the Common  
Mistakes Made  
by Learners of  
Spanish

Feralan.com **JEAN YATES**

# CORRECT *your* SPANISH BLUNDERS

How to Avoid 99% of the Common  
Mistakes Made by Learners of Spanish

JEAN YATES

**McGraw-Hill**

New York Chicago San Francisco Lisbon London Madrid Mexico City  
Milan New Delhi San Juan Seoul Singapore Sydney Toronto

Feralan.com

Copyright © 2005 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Manufactured in the United States of America. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

0-07-146014-4

The material in this eBook also appears in the print version of this title: 0-07-143841-6.

All trademarks are trademarks of their respective owners. Rather than put a trademark symbol after every occurrence of a trademarked name, we use names in an editorial fashion only, and to the benefit of the trademark owner, with no intention of infringement of the trademark. Where such designations appear in this book, they have been printed with initial caps. McGraw-Hill eBooks are available at special quantity discounts to use as premiums and sales promotions, or for use in corporate training programs. For more information, please contact George Hoare, Special Sales, at [george\\_hoare@mcgraw-hill.com](mailto:george_hoare@mcgraw-hill.com) or (212) 904-4069.

## TERMS OF USE

This is a copyrighted work and The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. ("McGraw-Hill") and its licensors reserve all rights in and to the work. Use of this work is subject to these terms. Except as permitted under the Copyright Act of 1976 and the right to store and retrieve one copy of the work, you may not decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, reproduce, modify, create derivative works based upon, transmit, distribute, disseminate, sell, publish or sublicense the work or any part of it without McGraw-Hill's prior consent. You may use the work for your own noncommercial and personal use; any other use of the work is strictly prohibited. Your right to use the work may be terminated if you fail to comply with these terms.

THE WORK IS PROVIDED "AS IS." McGRAW-HILL AND ITS LICENSORS MAKE NO GUARANTEES OR WARRANTIES AS TO THE ACCURACY, ADEQUACY OR COMPLETENESS OF OR RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED FROM USING THE WORK, INCLUDING ANY INFORMATION THAT CAN BE ACCESSED THROUGH THE WORK VIA HYPERLINK OR OTHERWISE, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. McGraw-Hill and its licensors do not warrant or guarantee that the functions contained in the work will meet your requirements or that its operation will be uninterrupted or error free. Neither McGraw-Hill nor its licensors shall be liable to you or anyone else for any inaccuracy, error or omission, regardless of cause, in the work or for any damages resulting therefrom. McGraw-Hill has no responsibility for the content of any information accessed through the work. Under no circumstances shall McGraw-Hill and/or its licensors be liable for any indirect, incidental, special, punitive, consequential or similar damages that result from the use of or inability to use the work, even if any of them has been advised of the possibility of such damages. This limitation of liability shall apply to any claim or cause whatsoever whether such claim or cause arises in contract, tort or otherwise.

DOI: 10.1036/0071460144



# Professional



## Want to learn more?

We hope you enjoy this McGraw-Hill eBook! If you'd like more information about this book, its author, or related books and websites, please [click here](#).

# CONTENTS

Introduction v

## **PRONUNCIATION AND SPELLING** 1

Pronunciation 3

Spelling 10

Capitalization 17

Punctuation 20

## **GRAMMAR** 23

Nouns 25

Numbers 38

Noun Determiners 53

Descriptive Adjectives 80

Verbs

The Infinitive 96

Types of Verbs 102

The Indicative Mood 110

The Present Tense 111

The Preterite Perfect Tense 122

The Preterite Tense 127

The Imperfect Tense 132

The Pluperfect Tense 140

The Future Tense 143

The Future Perfect Tense 149

The Conditional 151

The Simple Conditional 152

The Conditional Perfect 155

The Subjunctive Mood	158
The Present Subjunctive	161
The Preterite Perfect Subjunctive	177
The Imperfect Subjunctive	184
The Pluperfect Subjunctive	197
Reported Speech	200
Subjects, Objects, and Their Pronouns	204
Adverbs and Prepositions with Adverbial Functions	231
Other Prepositions	257
Conjunctions	290
<b>VOCABULARY</b>	297
Words	299
Constructions	323
Catch the Blunders	331
Answer Key	337
Index of Spanish Words and Expressions	351
Subject Index	356

# INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this book is to identify the most common trouble spots for English speakers learning Spanish, to provide a basis for understanding why these trouble spots cause difficulties, and to offer guidance and practice for avoiding potential errors.

Many errors commonly made by speakers and learners of a second language are caused by transferring the patterns of the native language to the language being learned. This happens in all aspects of language, from pronunciation to word formation to sentence structure. Following are some examples of problems English speakers have when learning Spanish.

1. There are only a few sounds in Spanish that do not exist in English. Many sounds common to both languages, however, are represented by different letters in each language. For example, in certain situations the letter *d* in Spanish is pronounced like the “th” in the English “brother.” Also, English and Spanish have different pronunciation patterns for vowels, which can cause English speakers to mispronounce many words.
2. Although there are some clues as to whether Spanish nouns are masculine or feminine, many nouns seem to defy regular patterns. English speakers must learn the gender of Spanish nouns and be careful to use the correct corresponding articles and pronouns.
3. Although many Spanish words have cognates in English, there are also many false cognates, aptly called *falsos amigos* in Spanish. One example is *sensible*, an adjective in both languages; it means “level-headed” in English but “sensitive” in Spanish.
4. In many cases, one word in English has two or more noninterchangeable translations in Spanish. One example of this is the verb “be” in English, whose correspondents in Spanish are *ser* and *estar*; as well as other verbs used idiomatically. Another is the English “for,” which has several Spanish translations, among them, *por* and *para*.
5. Particles, such as prepositions and conjunctions, have no one-for-one equivalents in both languages. For example, the Spanish preposition *en* can be translated into English as “in,” “on,” “at,” “of,” and

“about.” Likewise, the translation of English “on Sunday” is *el domingo*, “the Sunday.”

6. A more insidious type of *falso amigo* is encountered in the use of verb tenses. The present tense, for example, can be used identically in both languages for certain functions. It is, therefore, often assumed that the function of the present tense will be the same in all instances. Actually, the Spanish present tense can also be used for functions that are expressed in English in the present progressive, present perfect, past, and future tenses. Every verb tense, in fact, represents a potential trouble spot for English-speaking learners of Spanish.
7. Information can be expressed one way in one language, and in a different way in the other. In English, for example, one says “I am hungry,” while in Spanish one says the equivalent of “I have hunger.” Likewise, the English “I like ice cream” is stated in Spanish as “Ice cream appeals to me.” Expressions of this type present more complications when their individual words are modified; for example, “I am *very* hungry” is the equivalent of “I have *a lot of* hunger.” Again, the pitfall is transferring the English pattern to the Spanish.

In this book you will find the reasons behind these and many other common but lesser-known “blunders” through explanations of how regular patterns of Spanish differ from those of English. You will be made aware of potential trouble spots and shown how to break bad habits and correct your own mistakes. Several examples are given for each topic, followed by exercises that test your understanding and help you avoid the pitfalls encountered when translating word for word, structure for structure, from English.

Because individual words of a language are used in connection with other words, you will find that most topics are mentioned in more than one place. This repetition allows for cross-referencing and provides multiple examples of the most problematic structures. You will find that many of the lists are structured for sense and meaning; adverbs are listed in order of *nunca* “never” to *siempre* “always,” for example. Nouns are grouped by their endings, and verbs are grouped by usage. In addition, the comprehensive, detailed index at the back of the book serves as a guide to finding all the references to each topic. At the back of the book you will also find the answers to all the exercises. It is hoped that the materials presented here will help you improve your proficiency in Spanish and avoid the most common blunders.

## **Suggestions for Using This Book**

The book is divided into three parts: Pronunciation and Spelling, Grammar, and Vocabulary. The largest section is Grammar, which identifies

the various types of words according to traditional terminology. If you are unfamiliar with these terms, or if you find them more confusing than helpful, follow these suggestions:

- First look for the “Avoid the Blunder” headings in each section. Read the examples, then read the related explanation.
- Use the Index, rather than the Contents, to find what you are looking for.
- Check all the cross-references to a topic you are interested in to find more examples.
- Do the exercises on a separate sheet of paper, then check your answers in the Answer Key at the back of the book. If you have made mistakes, reread the pertinent sections, then do the exercises again.

Throughout the book, all blunders are printed in **red type** and marked by a stylized **X**. These are words, phrases, and sentences that are unacceptable.

The guidelines here are based on current standard usage in all countries where Spanish is the native language. However, be aware that language is constantly changing, that there are many different forms of expression, and that certain items identified here as “blunders” are accepted as standard usage in some areas. The biggest blunder of all would be to correct a native speaker, or to in any way imply that he or she doesn’t speak “correct” Spanish. Recognizing the differences you encounter in different places will enrich your Spanish and enable you to identify regional variations. The best way to learn a language is to listen to its native speakers and practice by communicating with them.

## Acknowledgments

The author is indebted to her many teachers, colleagues, friends, and students, from whom she continues to learn. She especially appreciates the advice of Ligia Ochoa Sierra, and the help of Jeannette Walters Márquez and Luz Noemi Curet, who read the entire manuscript and provided many insightful comments and suggestions.

*This page intentionally left blank.*

# PRONUNCIATION AND SPELLING

*This page intentionally left blank.*

# PRONUNCIATION

## ONE-SYLLABLE VOWELS

a e i o u

## ONE-SYLLABLE VOWEL COMBINATIONS

Any combination of **a**, **e**, or **o** with the letter **i** or **u**

<b>ia</b>	<b>ie</b>	<b>io</b>	<b>iu</b>	<b>ua</b>	<b>ue</b>	<b>ui</b>	<b>uo</b>
ya	yeh	yo	yu	wa	weh	wee	wo
<b>ai</b>	<b>ei</b>	<b>oi</b>	<b>ui</b>	<b>au</b>	<b>eu</b>	<b>iu</b>	
eye	ay as in "say"	oy as in "boy"	wee	ah-oo	eh-oo	you	

## TWO-SYLLABLE VOWEL COMBINATIONS

Combinations of **a**, **e**, or **o** with accented **i** or **u**

<b>ía</b>	<b>íe</b>	<b>ío</b>	<b>úa</b>	<b>úe</b>	<b>úi</b>	<b>úo</b>
EE-ah	EE-eh	EE-o	OO-ah	OO-eh	OO-ee	OO-o
<b>aí</b>	<b>eí</b>	<b>oí</b>	<b>aú</b>	<b>eú</b>	<b>íu</b>	
ah-EE	eh-EE	o-EE	ah-OO	eh-OO	ee-OO	

Combinations that do not contain **i** or **u** and that have no accent mark

<b>ae</b>	<b>ao</b>	<b>ea</b>	<b>ee</b>	<b>eo</b>	<b>oa</b>	<b>oe</b>	<b>oo</b>
ah-eh	ah-o	eh-ah	eh-eh	eh-o	o-ah	o-eh	o-o

## CONSONANTS

### IN INITIAL POSITION

### AFTER VOWEL

similar to:

**b/v**

*b* as in "boy"

breathed through  
almost-closed lips

**c** before *a, o, u*

**k**

**qu** before *e, i*

*k* as in "skate"

**c** before *e, i*

*c* as in "ceiling" (in Latin America)  
*th* as in "thumb" (in Spain)

**cc**

*cc* as in "access"

**d**

*d* as in "dog"

*th* as in "brother"

CONSONANTS	IN INITIAL POSITION	AFTER VOWEL
	similar to:	
f	<i>f</i> as in “find”	
g before a, o, u	<i>g</i> as in “girl”	breathed through almost-closed throat
gu before e, i		
g before e, i	<i>ch</i> as in Scottish “loch” or German “ach”; a voiceless, scratchy sound from the throat	
j		
x		
h		
l	<i>h</i> as in “honest” (silent)	
ll	<i>l</i> as in “love”	<i>tl</i> as in “bottle”
y	<i>yy</i> as in “say yes” or <i>j</i> as in “jar”	
ll		
m	<i>m</i> as in “man”	
n	<i>n</i> as in “next”	
ñ	<i>ni</i> as in “onion”	
p	<i>p</i> as in “spin”	
r	rolling trill of the tongue	<i>d</i> as in “body”
rr		rolling trill of the tongue
s	<i>s</i> as in “sun”	
t	<i>t</i> as in “stamp”	
w	<i>w</i> as in “wash”	
x	<i>s</i> as in “sun” (in native Mexican words) (see also <i>g, j, x</i> )	<i>x</i> as in “extra”
y	(see ll)	<i>y</i> as in “guy,” “way,” “boy”
z	<i>s</i> as in “sun” (in Latin America) <i>th</i> as in “thumb” (in Spain)	

## Spanish Letters and Sounds

Because the Spanish and English alphabets are so similar, it is important to keep in mind that the sounds represented by most letters in Spanish are different from the sounds they represent in English.

### Vowels

Spanish vowel sounds are produced by first positioning the mouth correctly, then uttering the sound without moving the jaw.

#### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not pronounce a single vowel with two vowel sounds.

a pronounced like the *a* in “father,” but cut short: *taco*

✗ *ta uh co*

e pronounced like the *e* in “bet”: *bueno*

✗ *bwayno*

i pronounced like the *i* in “machine,” but cut short: *fino*

o pronounced like the beginning of *o* in “open”

Do not glide into an /ow/ sound: *fino*.

✗ *finow*

✗ *tacow*

u pronounced like the beginning of *u* in “tuba”

Do not make a /yu/ sound: *Cuba*.

✗ *kyuwba*

Unstressed vowels in English are usually pronounced with the mouth in a relaxed, almost-closed position, making them all sound something like “uh.” In Spanish, each vowel is pronounced clearly.

rosas

“ro sas”

buenos días

“bwe nos dee ahs”

#### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ *row zuhs*

✗ *bway nuhz dee uhz*

Any combination of the vowels *i* or *u* with *a*, *e*, or *o* is pronounced as one syllable unless there is an accent mark over one of the vowels.

<u>pí</u> no	<u>die</u> ta	Ma <u>rí</u> o	<u>viu</u> da
a <u>gua</u>	<u>bue</u> no	<u>ruí</u> nas	<u>cuo</u> ta
<u>Jai</u> me	<u>rei</u> na	<u>oi</u> go	<u>cui</u> dar
<u>Lau</u> ra	<u>Eu</u> ro pa		

Any combination of the vowels *i* or *u* with *a*, *e*, or *o* is pronounced as two syllables when there is an accent mark over either vowel.

<u>dí</u> a	<u>rí</u> o	Ma <u>rí</u> a	le <u>í</u>	
<u>grú</u> a	ac <u>tú</u> a	re <u>ú</u> ne	Ra <u>úl</u>	con ti <u>nú</u> e

Any combination of the vowels *a*, *e*, or *o* is pronounced as two syllables. No accent mark is used.

pa <u>e</u> lla	<u>fe</u> o	po <u>e</u> ma	<u>ca</u> os	le <u>er</u>
-----------------	-------------	----------------	--------------	--------------

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

<del>X</del> Jaime	<del>X</del> oígo	<del>X</del> óigo	<del>X</del> dia	<del>X</del> Raul
<del>X</del> paélla	<del>X</del> féo	<del>X</del> poéma	<del>X</del> cáos	<del>X</del> leér

When a word ends with a vowel, and the following word starts with the same vowel, the vowel is pronounced only once.

Ana anda al parque	“a nan dal par que”
la casa de Eduardo	“la ca sa de duar do”

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

<del>X</del> Ana   anda   al parque
<del>X</del> la casa de   Eduardo

When a vowel is repeated within a word, however, like *ee* or *oo*, the vowels are pronounced as two syllables that glide together.

leer	“le ER”
coordinar	“co or dee NAR”

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not add a /y/ or /w/ sound, as you would in English.

<del>X</del> le yer
<del>X</del> co wor di nar

Words are connected in a stream of speech, without a break between words.

¿Cómo está usted?

“co mwe stau sted”

Vamos a la piscina a nadar un rato.

“va mo sa la pi si na na da run  
ra to”

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ co mo | está | us ted

✗ va mos | a la pis cina | a na dar | un ra to

## Consonants

The sounds /p/, /k/, and /t/ at the beginning of English words are followed by a puff of air. Do not produce this puff of air when pronouncing these sounds in Spanish.

Pepe      papá      taco      capa      Paco      tapas

The sounds of the Spanish letters *b*, *v*, *g*, and *d* are similar to their English equivalents at the beginning of words. However, when these letters fall between two vowels, they are softer and may be lengthened.

*b, v*      Keep the lips slightly apart and let the air come through.

bebe      habas      tuvo      uva

*g*      Keep a slight opening at the throat and let the air come through.  
(This sound is like the French *r*.)

haga      traigo      mago      llegue

*d*      Place the tongue between the top and bottom teeth, exactly like the *th* in “brother.”

cada      dedo      mide      seda

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the English /d/ sound for the Spanish *d* in the middle or at the end of words. This sound is used for the Spanish *r*.

Say the following words aloud, pronouncing *d* like the English *th*, and *r* like the English *d*.

cada

cara

cedo

cero

todo

toro

dudo

duro

ida

ira

comed

comer

mide

mire

hablad

hablar

Remember that *ll* and *y* are consonants and are pronounced like the doubled *y* in “say yes” or the *j* in “jar.” They must be pronounced with force to avoid misunderstanding. For example, if the *ll* is not pronounced forcefully enough, a person might hear you say “I love myself” (*me amo*) rather than “My name is” (*me llamo*).

se llama Yolanda

“se yya ma yyo lan da”

OR “se ja ma jo lan da”

ya me llamó

“yya me yya mó” OR “ja me ja mó”

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ se ama Yolanda

✗ ya me amó

The sound /r/ in Spanish is very different from the English /r/. To pronounce the English /r/, the lips are rounded, the top teeth are somewhat bared, and the tongue is suspended in the middle of the mouth without touching anything. To pronounce the Spanish /r/, keep your lips in a flat position and tap the tip of your tongue once on the ridge behind your top front teeth. The sound is like the *d* in the English “body.”

cara

cero

hora

iré

loro

oro

para

Learn to make the trilled Spanish *r* by placing the tip of your tongue loosely on the ridge behind your top front teeth, then forcing air between the tongue and the ridge, causing it to flap rapidly and automatically. This takes practice, but it's worth learning.

The letter *r* before another consonant requires a half-trill.

carta

embargo

cierto

cerca

forma

The letter *r* at the beginning of a word is fully trilled, as is the *rr* in the middle of a word.

río

rama

rosa

carro

perro

cierra

error

The Spanish *s* is pronounced like the *s* in “sun,” even in the middle or at the end of a word. It is never pronounced like the English *z*, as in the second *s* of “Susan” or at the end of a word.

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Pronounce the Spanish *s* (even in the middle or at the end of a word) like the *s* in “sun.”

✗ Suzanna

✗ rozez

In Spanish, the only consonants that are doubled are *l*, *r*, and *c*; all of the doubled consonants represent sounds that are very different from the sounds of the single letters. (See the chart on pages 3–4.)

AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use a double consonant in Spanish where it is used in the English cognate.

✗ *intelligente*

✗ *professor*

✗ *recommendar*

# SPELLING

## Consonants

The sound /k/ is spelled with *c* before the vowels *a*, *o*, and *u*, and with *qu* before the vowels *e* and *i*.

ca	que	qui	co	cu
casa	queso	quieto	come	cuna

The sound /kw/ is always spelled *cu*.

cua	cue	cui	cuo	
cuatro	cueva	cuidar	cuota	

The sound /th/ (in Spain) and /s/ (in Latin America) is spelled with *z* before the vowels *a*, *o*, and *u*, and with *c* before the vowels *e* and *i*.

za	ce	ci	zo	zu
zapato	cero	cinco	zona	zumo

The sound /g/ is spelled with *g* before the vowels *a*, *o* and *u*, and with *gu* before the vowels *e* and *i*.

ga	gue	gui	go	gu
gala	guerra	guitarra	goza	gusano

The sound /gw/ is spelled *gu* before the vowels *a* and *o*, and *gü* before the vowels *e* and *i*.

gua	güe	güi	guo	
guante	güera	pingüino	antiguo	

The “stronger than /h/” sound (more guttural—from the throat—than the English *h*) is spelled with a *j* before the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, and *u*. It can also be spelled with a *g* before the vowels *e* and *i*, and with an *x* in the words *México* and *mexicano*.

ja	je OR ge OR xe	ji OR gi	jo	ju
jaleo	jerga	jitomate	joya	jugo
	general	gigante		
	México			
	mexicano			

The sound of the letter *ñ* is similar to that of the *ni* in the English “onion.” The *ñ* represents a combination of the consonants *n* + *y*. The tilde that distinguishes this letter from *n* may be written as a straight line over the *n*. Always pronounce the /y/ sound clearly after the /n/ sound.

año	“an yo”
baño	“ban yo”
pequeño	“pe ken yo”
niña	“nin ya”

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not forget to write the tilde.

**X** ano      **X** bano      **X** pequeno      **X** nina

■ When grammar forces a vowel change, this may affect the consonants described above. This consonant change occurs in the following situations:

- adding a plural ending to a noun or adjective

un lápiz	dos lápices	( <b>X</b> lápizes)
la actriz	las actrices	( <b>X</b> actrices)
el arroz	los arroces	( <b>X</b> arrozes)

- present indicative *yo* forms

recoger	yo recojo	( <b>X</b> recogo)
dirigir	yo dirijo	( <b>X</b> dirigo)

- preterite *yo* forms

sacar	yo saqué	( <b>X</b> sacé)
jugar	yo jugué	( <b>X</b> jugé)
empezar	yo empecé	( <b>X</b> empezé)

- present subjunctive verb forms

sacar	saque	( <b>X</b> sace)
rogar	ruegue	( <b>X</b> ruege)
recoger	recoja	( <b>X</b> recoga)
almorzar	almuerce	( <b>X</b> almuerze)

- making an adjective from a noun

Nicaragua	nicaragüense	( <b>X</b> nicaraguense)
-----------	--------------	--------------------------

- intensifying an adjective

simpático	simpatiquísimo	( <b>X</b> simpaticísimo)
feliz	felicísima	( <b>X</b> felizísima)

## AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ lápizes

✗ recogo

✗ sacé

✗ sace

✗ nicaraguense

✗ simpaticísimo

✗ felizísima

✗ actrizes

✗ dirigo

✗ jugé

✗ ruege

✗ arrozes

✗ empezé

✗ recoga

✗ almuerze

**Accent Marks**

- Accent marks are used above both uppercase and lowercase letters.

When writing the accent mark by hand, make a small mark directly over the vowel, slanting upward toward the right. When the accent mark is above a lowercase *i*, do not dot the *i*.

## AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Do not “float” accent marks above words.

✗ lápiz

✗ difícil

✗ saque

- The following present-tense forms of the verb *estar* require an accent mark.

estás

está

están

estáis

The following present-tense forms of the verb *estar* do not require an accent mark.

estoy

estamos

- Certain verbs whose infinitive ends in *-iar* require accent marks over the *i* in the *yo*, *tú*, *usted/él/ella*, and *ustedes/ellos/ellas* forms of the present tense, but not in the *nosotros(-as)* and *vosotros(-as)* forms.

confiar (*to trust*)

confío

confiamos

confías

confiáis

confía

confían

Other verbs of this type include the following.

enviar *to send*guiar *to guide*variar *to vary*

Other verbs that end in *-iar* do not have accent marks over the *i* in their conjugated forms.

estudiar ( <i>to study</i> )	estudio	estudiamos
	estudias	estudiáis
	estudia	
	estudian	

Other verbs of this type include the following.

abreviar	<i>to abbreviate</i>
cambiar	<i>to change</i>
limpiar	<i>to clean</i>

■ The words *quién*, *cómo*, *qué*, *cuál*, *dónde*, *cuándo*, and *por qué* have an accent mark when they begin a question, whether direct or indirect. They do not require an accent mark in other contexts.

“Why” is expressed with two words and has an accent mark: *¿Por qué?*  
 “Because” is expressed with one word and does not have an accent mark: *porque*.

ACCENT MARK	¿ <b>Quién</b> es?	<i>Who is it?</i>
ACCENT MARK	No sé <b>quién</b> es.	<i>I don't know who it is.</i>
NO ACCENT MARK	Fui yo <b>quien</b> vio el accidente.	<i>I was the one who saw the accident.</i>
ACCENT MARK	¿ <b>Cómo</b> estás?	<i>How are you?</i>
ACCENT MARK	No entiendo <b>cómo</b> lo haces.	<i>I don't understand how you do it.</i>
NO ACCENT MARK	Debes trabajar <b>como</b> tu papá.	<i>You should work like your father does.</i>
ACCENT MARK	¿ <b>Qué</b> es esto?	<i>What's this?</i>
ACCENT MARK	Él no sabía <b>qué</b> hacer.	<i>He didn't know what to do.</i>
NO ACCENT MARK	Él me dijo <b>que</b> lo haría.	<i>He told me he would do it.</i>
ACCENT MARK	¿ <b>Cuál</b> es su nombre?	<i>What's your name?</i>
ACCENT MARK	Quisiera saber <b>cuál</b> de los libros es el mejor.	<i>I would like to know which one is the best book.</i>
NO ACCENT MARK	He perdido mi tarjeta, sin la <b>cual</b> no puedo comprar nada.	<i>I lost my card, without which I can't buy anything.</i>

ACCENT MARK	¿ <b>Dónde</b> estás?	<i>Where are you?</i>
ACCENT MARK	Me preguntó <b>dónde</b> estaba su mamá.	<i>He asked me where his mother was.</i>
NO ACCENT MARK	Vamos al restaurante <b>donde</b> comimos ayer.	<i>Let's go to the restaurant where we ate yesterday.</i>
ACCENT MARK	¿ <b>Cuándo</b> es la fiesta?	<i>When is the party?</i>
ACCENT MARK	Tengo que averiguar <b>cuándo</b> es el examen.	<i>I have to find out when the exam is.</i>
NO ACCENT MARK	<b>Cuando</b> lo vio, se desmayó.	<i>When she saw him, she fainted.</i>
ACCENT MARK	¿ <b>Por qué</b> no vienes con nosotros?	<i>Why don't you come with us?</i>
ACCENT MARK	Me puedo imaginar <b>por qué</b> lo hiciste.	<i>I can imagine why you did it.</i>
NO ACCENT MARK	Trabaja mucho <b>porque</b> quiere ganar más.	<i>He works hard because he wants to earn more.</i>

■ The meaning of certain words is distinguished by the use of an accent mark.

aún	<i>still</i>	aun	<i>even</i>
dé	<i>give!</i> (command)	de	<i>of, from</i>
él	<i>he</i>	el	<i>the</i>
más	<i>more, plus</i>	mas	<i>however</i>
mí	<i>me</i>	mi	<i>my</i>
sí	<i>yes</i>	si	<i>if</i>
sólo	<i>only</i>	solo	<i>alone</i>
té	<i>tea</i>	te	<i>you</i> (object)
tú	<i>you</i>	tu	<i>your</i>

■ The following guidelines apply to the use of accent marks with other words.

In order to know where to put an accent mark, you need to know how the word is pronounced and be able to identify the syllable that is stressed or slightly more emphasized.

□ When the emphasized syllable is the final syllable:

- there is no accent mark if that syllable ends in a consonant other than *-n* or *-s*.

verdad      reloj      animal      error      estoy      arroz

- an accent mark is required over the vowel of the final syllable if it ends in a vowel, a one-syllable vowel combination (see page 3), *-n*, or *-s*.

habló      comí      comió      comerán      acción      sabrás

- When the emphasized syllable is the next-to-last syllable:

- there is no accent mark if the final syllable ends in a vowel, *-n*, or *-s*.

hablo      supe      comen      sabes      aprendemos

- there is no accent mark if the stressed vowel is part of a two-syllable vowel combination (any combination of the vowels *a*, *e*, and *o*).

video      cacao      Corea      poema      paella

- there is no accent mark if the final syllable is a one-syllable vowel combination.

Mario      Colombia      agua      perpetuo      superficie

- there is an accent mark over the stressed vowel if the stressed vowel is part of a normally one-syllable vowel combination (any vowel combination that includes *i* or *u*).

María      día      tío      rie      Raúl  
maíz      país

- When the emphasized syllable is the third-, fourth-, or fifth-last syllable, it always has an accent mark.

anímate      propósito      estudiándolo      dígaselo      rápidamente

- Adding a syllable can change the need for an accent mark. For example, words that end in *-ión* always have an accent mark, but when they are made plural, they lose it.

acción      acciones  
lección      lecciones

Certain other words may not have an accent mark in the singular but may need one in the plural.

examen      exámenes  
joven      jóvenes

AVOID THE *Blunder*

<del>X</del> <u>accion</u>	<del>X</del> <u>leccion</u>	<del>X</del> <u>acciones</u>	<del>X</del> <u>lecciones</u>
<del>X</del> <u>exámen</u>	<del>X</del> <u>jóven</u>	<del>X</del> <u>examenes</u>	<del>X</del> <u>jovenes</u>

## Exercises

**A** Fill in the blanks with the consonant or consonants that precede the vowel to produce the sound indicated.

- The sound /k/ is spelled: Ca    \_\_\_e    \_\_\_i    \_\_\_o    \_\_\_u
- The sound /g/ is spelled: Ga    \_\_\_e    \_\_\_i    \_\_\_o    \_\_\_u
- The sound /th/ or /s/ is spelled: Za    \_\_\_e    \_\_\_i    \_\_\_o    \_\_\_u
- The sound /kw/ is spelled: CUa    \_\_\_e    \_\_\_i    \_\_\_o
- The sound /gw/ is spelled: GUa    \_\_\_e    \_\_\_i    \_\_\_o
- The sound /h/ is spelled: Ja    \_\_\_e/\_\_\_e    \_\_\_i/\_\_\_i  
\_\_\_o    \_\_\_u

**B** Write an accent mark where necessary in the underlined words.

- Mi hermano no vino a clase porque no hizo la tarea. Ahora esta en casa.
- ¿Quienes van al cine esta tarde? ¿Vas tu? ¿Va tu hermano?
- Si, mi hermano va, pero solo si hace la tarea primero.

**C** Write the number of syllables in each word on the line next to it.

- rápidamente    \_\_\_\_
- Mario    \_\_\_\_
- María    \_\_\_\_
- video    \_\_\_\_
- aprendemos    \_\_\_\_

# CAPITALIZATION

Many conventions used in English are the same in Spanish, but there are some important exceptions.

■ The words *usted*, *ustedes*, *señor*, *señores*, *señora*, *señorita*, *don*, and *doña* are capitalized only in the abbreviated form.

Ud.	<i>you</i>	Sra.	<i>Mrs.</i>
Uds.	<i>you all</i>	Srta.	<i>Miss</i>
Sr.	<i>Mr.</i>	D.	} friendly term of respect for an older person, used with his or her first name
Sres.	<i>Gentlemen</i>	Da.	

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Usted

✗ Ustedes

✗ Señor

✗ Señora

✗ Don

■ The names of months and days are not capitalized in Spanish.

enero	<i>January</i>	lunes	<i>Monday</i>
febrero	<i>February</i>	martes	<i>Tuesday</i>
marzo	<i>March</i>	miércoles	<i>Wednesday</i>
abril	<i>April</i>	jueves	<i>Thursday</i>
mayo	<i>May</i>	viernes	<i>Friday</i>
junio	<i>June</i>	sábado	<i>Saturday</i>
julio	<i>July</i>	domingo	<i>Sunday</i>
agosto	<i>August</i>		
septiembre	<i>September</i>		
octubre	<i>October</i>		
noviembre	<i>November</i>		
diciembre	<i>December</i>		

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Enero

✗ Mayo

✗ Lunes

✗ Domingo

■ The names of languages and nationalities are not capitalized in Spanish.

argentino(-a)	<i>Argentine</i>	náhuatl	<i>Nahuatl</i>
colombiano(-a)	<i>Colombian</i>	panameño(-a)	<i>Panamanian</i>
español(a)	<i>Spanish</i>	peruano(-a)	<i>Peruvian</i>
francés/francesa	<i>French</i>	portugués/	<i>Portuguese</i>
inglés/inglesa	<i>English</i>	portuguesa	
mexicano(-a)	<i>Mexican</i>	quechua	<i>Quechua</i>

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ Español

✗ Inglés

✗ Peruano

✗ Colombiana

■ The names of religions and religious affiliations are typically not capitalized in Spanish.

budista	<i>Buddhist</i>	el budismo	<i>Buddhism</i>
católico(-a)	<i>Catholic</i>	el catolicismo	<i>Catholicism</i>
cristiano(-a)	<i>Christian</i>	el cristianismo	<i>Christianity</i>
hindú	<i>Hindu</i>	el hinduismo	<i>Hinduism</i>
judío(-a)	<i>Jew</i>	el judaísmo	<i>Judaism</i>
musulmán/ musulmana	<i>Muslim</i>	BUT el Islam	<i>Islam</i>

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ Cristiano

✗ Judía

✗ Musulmana

✗ Budismo

✗ Catolicismo

✗ Hinduismo

■ In the titles of books and articles, only the first word and proper names are capitalized.

Gramática de la lengua española	<i>Grammar of the Spanish Language</i>
Don Quijote de la Mancha	<i>Don Quixote of la Mancha</i>

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ Gramática De La Lengua Española

✗ Gramática de la Lengua Española

✗ Don Quijote De La Mancha

## Exercises

**A** Write the abbreviated form of the following words.

1. don \_\_\_\_\_
2. señora \_\_\_\_\_
3. usted \_\_\_\_\_
4. señores \_\_\_\_\_

**B** Circle the words below that have incorrect capitalization.

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. Septiembre | 6. Católico  |
| 2. viernes    | 7. judío     |
| 3. español    | 8. Miércoles |
| 4. Inglés     | 9. Argentino |
| 5. octubre    | 10. peruana  |

# PUNCTUATION

■ Two question marks are required for every question: an upside-down question mark at the beginning, and one identical to the English question mark at the end.

¿Adónde vas, papá?  
¿Me compras un juguete?

*Where are you going, Dad?*  
*Will you buy me a toy?*

Two exclamation points are required for every exclamation: an upside-down exclamation point at the beginning, and one identical to the English exclamation point at the end.

¡Váyanse de aquí!  
¡Déjame en paz!

*Get out of here!*  
*Leave me alone!*

The first question mark or exclamation point is placed at the beginning of the question or exclamation, which is not necessarily at the beginning of the sentence.

Papá, ¿adónde vas?  
Chicos, ¡váyanse de aquí!

*Dad, where are you going?*  
*Guys, get out of here!*

■ In writing dialogue, a dash, rather than quotation marks, is used to indicate the spoken word or a change in speakers.

—¿Qué piensa hacer usted,  
Sr. Rodríguez?  
—No sé. Tendré que hablarlo  
con mi familia.

*“What are you planning to do,  
Mr. Rodríguez?”*  
*“I don’t know. I’ll have to talk it  
over with my family.”*

■ Quotation marks are used, as in English, to mark someone’s exact words within a text. In Spanish the symbols «...» are often used for this purpose. If the end punctuation of the quote is a question mark or exclamation point, it goes before the final quotation mark. In Spanish, unlike English, this is followed by a period. A colon, rather than a comma, is used to introduce the quote.

El director le preguntó:  
“¿Qué piensa hacer usted,  
Sr. Rodríguez?”

*The director asked him,  
“What are you planning to do,  
Mr. Rodríguez?”*

When a quote ends in a period or is followed by a comma, the period or comma goes after the quotation mark.

El Sr. Rodríguez contestó: “No sé, tendré que hablarlo con mi familia”.

“No sé”, dijo el Sr. Rodríguez.

*Mr. Rodríguez answered, “I don’t know. I’ll have to talk it over with my family.”*

*“I don’t know,” said Mr. Rodríguez.*

#### AVOID THE

### Blunder

✗ Adónde vas, papá?

✗ ¿Papa, adónde vas?

✗ Déjame en paz!

✗ “No voy,” dijo Juan.

In Spanish, items in a series are separated by commas. No comma is used between the last two items (that is, before y).

Luisa, Elena y Dolores están en México este verano.

En el mercado compramos carne, queso, tomates, aguacates y fresas.

*Luisa, Elena, and Dolores are in Mexico this summer.*

*At the market we bought meat, cheese, tomatoes, avocados, and strawberries.*

#### AVOID THE

### Blunder

✗ Luisa, Elena, y Dolores

✗ carne, queso, tomates, aguacates, y fresas

## Exercise

**A** Punctuate the following sentences.

1. María vas a estudiar conmigo hoy
2. No no puedo
3. Me llamas más tarde
4. Sí te llamo a las ocho
5. Te voy a extrañar dijo Paco
6. Fueron a Guatemala El Salvador Honduras y Nicaragua

*This page intentionally left blank.*

# GRAMMAR

*This page intentionally left blank.*

# NOUNS

A noun is a word that names a person, an animal, an object, a place, an event, an idea, a quality, an action, a state, or other abstract notion.

## Gender

Every noun in Spanish has gender—it is either masculine or feminine.

Generally, words that name male people or animals are masculine, and those that name female people or animals are feminine, but there are exceptions.

Words that name objects, places, events, periods of time, and abstract notions are also either masculine or feminine.

The gender of a noun is indicated by the article that precedes it: *el* indicates a masculine noun; *la* indicates a feminine noun.

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Learn nouns with their articles, as if they were one unit.

## Nouns That Name People and Animals

Many nouns end in *-o* for males and *-a* for females.

el chico	<i>the boy</i>	el cartero	<i>the male mail carrier</i>
la chica	<i>the girl</i>	la cartera	<i>the female mail carrier</i>
el hermano	<i>the brother</i>		
la hermana	<i>the sister</i>		
el amigo	<i>the male friend</i>	el enfermero	<i>the male nurse</i>
la amiga	<i>the female friend</i>	la enfermera	<i>the female nurse</i>
el esposo	<i>the husband</i>		
la esposa	<i>the wife</i>		

Both males and females can be named by nouns that end in *-e*. The article used indicates the gender of the person named, *el* for a male, *la* for a female.

el estudiante	}	<i>the student</i>	el paciente	}	<i>the patient</i>
la estudiante			la paciente		
el gerente	}	<i>the manager</i>	el ayudante	}	<i>the assistant</i>
la gerente			la ayudante		
el hablante	}	<i>the speaker</i>	el presidente	}	<i>the president</i>
la hablante			la presidente*		

\**La presidenta* is used in some countries but not in others.

There are some exceptions.

el jefe	<i>the male boss</i>
la jefa	<i>the female boss</i>
el monje	<i>the monk</i>
la monja	<i>the nun</i>

Both males and females can be named by nouns that end in *-ista*. The article used indicates the gender of the person named.

el optimista	}	<i>the optimist</i>
la optimista		
el protagonista	}	<i>the main character</i>
la protagonista		
el especialista	}	<i>the specialist</i>
la especialista		
el periodista	}	<i>the journalist</i>
la periodista		

Both males and females can be named by several common nouns that end in *-o*.

el modelo	}	<i>the model</i>	el soprano	}	<i>the soprano</i>
la modelo			la soprano		
el piloto	}	<i>the pilot</i>	el miembro	}	<i>the member</i>
la piloto			la miembro		
el testigo	}	<i>the witness</i>	el médico	}	<i>the doctor</i>
la testigo			la médico*		

\**La médica* is used in some countries but not in others.

Both males and females can be named by nouns that end in *-ía*.

el policía	<i>the male police officer</i>
la policía	<i>the female police officer</i>
el guía	<i>the male guide</i>
la guía	<i>the female guide</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not change the endings of these nouns to *-o* or *-a* in an attempt to make them masculine or feminine. The article is all you need to distinguish them.

**X** la estudiante      **X** el artista      **X** la modelo      **X** el policía

Many nouns that name males end in *-or*. Their counterparts for females end in *-ora*.

el profesor	}	<i>the teacher</i>
la profesora		
el doctor	}	<i>the doctor</i>
la doctora		
el ganador	}	<i>the winner</i>
la ganadora		
el perdedor	}	<i>the loser</i>
la perdedora		
el contador	}	<i>the accountant</i>
la contadora		
el encantador	}	<i>the charmer</i>
la encantadora		

An exception is the feminine equivalent of *el actor*: *la actriz*.

Certain nouns that name males end in *-ín* or *-ón*. The counterparts for females end in *-ina* or *-ona*.

el parlanchín	}	<i>the talkative one</i>
la parlanchina		
el comilón	}	<i>the one who eats a lot</i>
la comilona		
el dormilón	}	<i>the one who sleeps a lot</i>
la dormilona		
el gruñón	}	<i>the one who growls a lot</i>
la gruñona		

A few nouns that name people do not change gender, regardless of the gender of the person they refer to.

### la persona

María es una persona muy simpática. *María is a very nice person.*

José es una persona muy simpática. *José is a very nice person.*

### la víctima

María es la víctima de una tragedia. *María is the victim of a tragedy.*

José es la víctima de una tragedia. *José is the victim of a tragedy.*

### la estrella

Verónica es la estrella que le gusta más a Pablo. *Verónica is the movie star that Pablo likes best.*

Antonio es la estrella que le gusta más a Ana. *Antonio is the movie star that Ana likes best.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not try to change the gender of these nouns.

~~X~~ el persona

~~X~~ el persono

~~X~~ el víctima

~~X~~ el viktimo

~~X~~ el estrella

When referring to a group of people, if there is at least one male in the group, the masculine plural noun is used.

dos hermanas

*two sisters*

dos hermanas y un hermano/

*two sisters and one brother/*

tres hermanos

*three siblings*

## Gender of Other Nouns

For all nouns that do not name people, the gender refers to the word, not to the person the object belongs to.

el brazo (*the arm*)

masculine, whether it is the arm of a male or a female

la pierna (*the leg*)

feminine, whether it is the leg of a male or a female

la corbata (*the necktie*)

feminine, even though it is usually worn by males

el vestido (*the dress*)

masculine, even though it is usually worn by females

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ la braza

✗ el pierno

✗ el corbata

✗ la vestida

Many nouns that end in *-o* are masculine. Many nouns that end in *-a* are feminine.

el carro

*the car*

la casa

*the house*

el año

*the year*

la empresa

*the enterprise*

el ojo

*the eye*

la pulgada

*the inch*

Certain nouns that end in *-ma* are masculine.

el problema

*the problem*

el programa

*the program*

el sistema

*the system*

el aroma

*the aroma*

el clima

*the climate*

el síntoma

*the symptom*

el trauma

*the trauma*

el carisma

*the charisma*

el drama

*the drama*

Nevertheless, others are feminine.

la trama

*the plot*

la crema

*the cream*

la yema

*the egg yolk*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Check the gender of *-ma* words that are unfamiliar to you.

✗ “no problema”

✗ la problema

✗ la sistema

✗ la programa

✗ el crema

Nouns that begin with a stressed *a-* or *ha-* may be feminine, but they are preceded by *el* instead of *la* for pronunciation purposes. Adjectives and other determiners that refer to these nouns are feminine. (See pages 55–56.)

el agua

*the water*

el águila

*the eagle*

el hambre

*the hunger*

el asma

*the asthma*

el alma

*the soul*

El agua está fría.

*The water is cold.*

Tengo mucha hambre.

*I'm really hungry. (I have a lot of hunger.)*

Te amo con toda el alma.

*I love you with all my heart. (I love you with all my soul.)*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *la* with these words. Do not use masculine adjectives with these words.

- ✗ La agua está fría.
- ✗ El agua está frío.
- ✗ Tengo mucho hambre.

Certain nouns that end in *-a* are masculine. Certain nouns that end in *-o* are feminine.

el día	<i>the day</i>	el planeta	<i>the planet</i>
el mapa	<i>the map</i>	la mano	<i>the hand</i>
el tranvía	<i>the streetcar</i>		

Buenos días. El día está muy bonito.	<i>Good morning. It's a beautiful day.</i>
Ella tiene las manos bonitas.	<i>She has pretty hands.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Unless the noun begins with a stressed *a-* or *ha-*, use the article, not the noun's ending, as a guide to gender. If the article is *el*, use masculine adjectives. If the article is *la*, use feminine adjectives.

- ✗ El día está muy bonita.
- ✗ Ella tiene las manos bonitos.

Certain nouns that end in *-o* are feminine, and they are really just shortened forms of nouns that end in *-a*.

la foto	}	<i>the photograph</i>
la fotografía		
la moto	}	<i>the motorcycle</i>
la motocicleta		

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ el foto
- ✗ el moto

All nouns that end in *-ción*, *-sión*, or *-xión* are feminine.

la nación	<i>the nation</i>	la tensión	<i>the tension</i>
la evolución	<i>the evolution</i>	la conexión	<i>the connection</i>

Certain other nouns that end in *-ión* are feminine.

la unión	<i>the union</i>
la reunión	<i>the meeting</i>
la región	<i>the region</i>

Other nouns that end in *-ión* are masculine.

el avión	<i>the airplane</i>	el camión	<i>the truck</i>
el guión	<i>the script</i>	el sarampión	<i>the measles</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

If an unfamiliar word ends in *-ión* (but not *-ción*, *-sión*, or *-xión*), check the gender before using it.

✗ el nación      ✗ el región      ✗ la avión      ✗ la sarampión

All nouns that end in *-dad*, *-dad*, *-tud*, or *-umbre* are feminine.

la libertad	<i>the liberty</i>		
la amistad	<i>the friendship</i>		
la facultad	<i>the university department</i>		
la ciudad	<i>the city</i>		
la honestidad	<i>the honesty</i>		
la nacionalidad	<i>the nationality</i>		
la virtud	<i>the virtue</i>	la costumbre	<i>the custom</i>
la gratitud	<i>the gratitude</i>	la cumbre	<i>the summit</i>
la actitud	<i>the attitude</i>	la muchedumbre	<i>the crowd</i>

All nouns that end in *-ie* are feminine.

la serie	<i>the series</i>
la superficie	<i>the surface</i>
la planicie	<i>the plain</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ el ciudad      ✗ el universidad  
✗ el muchedumbre      ✗ el serie

A number of words change in meaning according to their gender. Here are some of the most common.

## MASCULINE

el capital	<i>the money</i>
el cólera	<i>the cholera</i>
el coma	<i>the coma</i>
el cometa	<i>the comet</i>
el corriente	<i>the current month</i>
el corte	<i>the cut</i>
el cura	<i>the priest</i>
el defensa	<i>the defensive back</i> <i>in soccer</i>
el editorial	<i>the editorial</i>
el escolta	<i>the male escort</i>
el guardia	<i>the male guard</i>
el guía	<i>the male guide</i>
el orden	<i>the arrangement</i>
el policía	<i>the male police</i> <i>officer</i>
el recluta	<i>the male recruit</i>

## FEMININE

la capital	<i>the capital city</i>
la cólera	<i>the anger</i>
la coma	<i>the comma</i>
la cometa	<i>the kite</i>
la corriente	<i>the current</i>
la corte	<i>the court of law</i>
la cura	<i>the cure</i>
la defensa	<i>the defense</i>
la editorial	<i>the publisher</i>
la escolta	<i>the group of escorts,</i> <i>the female escort</i>
la guardia	<i>guard duty,</i> <i>the guard unit,</i> <i>the female guard</i>
la guía	<i>the guidebook,</i> <i>the female guide</i>
la orden	<i>the command</i>
la policía	<i>the police force,</i> <i>the female police</i> <i>officer</i>
la recluta	<i>the recruitment,</i> <i>the female recruit</i>

## AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Be aware that as the role of women in society is changing, nouns that refer to females are changing—and changing differently in different parts of the Spanish-speaking world. When in doubt about the gender of a noun, check it in a current dictionary.

## Plurals

There are several different conventions for making nouns plural.

- Add -s to most nouns that end in a vowel.

casa	<i>house</i>	pie	<i>foot</i>
casas	<i>houses</i>	pies	<i>feet</i>
libro	<i>book</i>	papá	<i>father</i>
libros	<i>books</i>	papás	<i>parents</i>

ejercicio	<i>exercise</i>	sofá	<i>sofa</i>
ejercicios	<i>exercises</i>	sofás	<i>sofas</i>

- Add *-es* to a noun ending in stressed *-í* or *-ú*.

rubí	<i>ruby</i>	marroquí	<i>Moroccan</i>
rubíes	<i>rubies</i>	marroquíes	<i>Moroccans</i>
esquí	<i>ski</i>	hindú	<i>Hindu</i>
esquíes	<i>skis</i>	hindúes	<i>Hindus</i>

- Add *-es* to a noun ending in a consonant.

ladrón	<i>thief</i>	reloj	<i>watch</i>
ladrones	<i>thieves</i>	relojes	<i>watches</i>
ciudad	<i>city</i>		
ciudades	<i>cities</i>		

- For nouns ending in *-z*, change the *-z* to *-c* and add *-es* (see page 11).

lápiz	<i>pencil</i>	cruz	<i>cross</i>
lápices	<i>pencils</i>	cruces	<i>crosses</i>
arroz	<i>rice</i>		
arrozces	<i>rice dishes</i>		

When making a noun plural, an accent mark may need to be added or deleted to indicate stress on the same syllable as in the singular form (see pages 14–15).

<u>crimen</u>	<i>crime</i>	<u>ladrón</u>	<i>thief</i>
<u>crímenes</u>	<i>crimes</i>	<u>ladrones</u>	<i>thieves</i>
<u>orden</u>	<i>order</i>	<u>reunión</u>	<i>meeting</i>
<u>órdenes</u>	<i>orders</i>	<u>reuniones</u>	<i>meetings</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Double-check the spelling of plurals you use. Keep in mind that accent marks may need to be added or deleted.

<del>×</del> rubís	<del>×</del> esquís	<del>×</del> relojs	<del>×</del> lápizes
<del>×</del> crímenes	<del>×</del> ladrónes	<del>×</del> aviónes	

A family is referred to by the singular form of its surname.

los Santiago	<i>the Santiagos</i>
los Galván	<i>the Galvans</i>
los Valdés	<i>the Valdeses</i>
los González	<i>the Gonzalezes</i>
los Pérez	<i>the Perezes</i>

Certain nouns are the same in the singular and the plural.

el lunes	<i>Monday</i>	la crisis	<i>the crisis</i>
los lunes	<i>Mondays</i>	las crisis	<i>the crises</i>
el martes	<i>Tuesday</i>	el virus	<i>the virus</i>
los martes	<i>Tuesdays</i>	los virus	<i>the viruses</i>
el miércoles	<i>Wednesday</i>		
los miércoles	<i>Wednesdays</i>		
el jueves	<i>Thursday</i>		
los jueves	<i>Thursdays</i>		
el viernes	<i>Friday</i>		
los viernes	<i>Fridays</i>		

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not try to pluralize these nouns.

✗ los luneses      ✗ los viruses

Certain nouns are plural in English but singular in Spanish.

la gente	<i>people</i>
la ropa	<i>clothes</i>

La gente es muy simpática.

*The people are very nice.*

La ropa es cara.

*Clothes are expensive.*

The names of certain school subjects end in -s in English, even though they are singular. They do not end in -s in Spanish.

la política	<i>politics</i>
la economía	<i>economics</i>
la física	<i>physics</i>

Mi hermana estudia física.

*My sister is studying physics.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not pluralize these nouns, and do not use plural adjectives and verbs with them.

✗ Las gentes son amables.

✗ Voy a comprar las ropas.

Certain nouns are singular (or noncount) in English but plural in Spanish.

las vacaciones	<i>the vacation</i>
los celos	<i>the jealousy</i>
los aplausos	<i>the applause</i>
las elecciones*	<i>the election</i>

\**La elección* means “the choice.”

Buenos días.*	<i>Good morning.</i>
Buenas tardes.	<i>Good afternoon.</i>
Buenas noches.	<i>Good evening./Good night.</i>

\**Buen día* is used in some places.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use these nouns in the singular.

- ✗ *Voy a tomar una vacación.*
- ✗ *La elección es en noviembre.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ *Buena tarde.*
- ✗ *Buena noche.*
- ✗ *Buen tarde.*
- ✗ *Buen noche.*

Nouns that are compounds of a verb plus a plural noun are singular, even though they end in -s.

el cumpleaños	<i>the birthday (the completion of years)</i>
el lavaplatos	<i>the dishwasher (the washer of dishes)</i>
el abrelatas	<i>the can opener (the opener of cans)</i>
el sacacorchos	<i>the corkscrew (the remover of corks)</i>
el salvavidas	<i>the life saver/lifeguard (the saver of lives)</i>
el quitamanchas	<i>the spot remover (the remover of spots)</i>
el paraguas	<i>the umbrella (the water-stopper)</i>
el parabrisas	<i>the windshield (the wind-stopper)</i>
el parachoques	<i>the bumper (the accident-stopper/breaker)</i>

Their plurals have the same form.

Tengo un paraguas.	<i>I have an umbrella.</i>
Mi amigo tiene dos paraguas.	<i>My friend has two umbrellas.</i>

Hoy es el cumpleaños de mi  
amigo.

En su familia siempre celebran  
los cumpleaños de los niños  
con una fiesta.

*Today is my friend's birthday.*

*In his family they always celebrate  
the children's birthdays with  
a party.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not add *-es* to these nouns to make them plural.

✗ dos paraguases

✗ los cumpleañoses

---

## Exercises

**A** Complete the following chart by adding the male equivalent of the feminine nouns and the female equivalent of the masculine nouns.

MASCULINE	FEMININE
1. el hermano	_____
2. _____	la profesora
3. el médico	_____
4. _____	la especialista
5. el paciente	_____
6. _____	la amiga
7. el miembro	_____
8. _____	la jefa
9. el hombre	_____

**B** Write the article that goes before each noun.

- |                   |                  |                     |
|-------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. _____ brazo    | 5. _____ crema   | 9. _____ cumpleaños |
| 2. _____ pierna   | 6. _____ agua    | 10. _____ camión    |
| 3. _____ problema | 7. _____ mano    | 11. _____ costumbre |
| 4. _____ día      | 8. _____ lección | 12. _____ ciudad    |

**C** Write the plural form of the following nouns.

- |                            |       |
|----------------------------|-------|
| 1. casa                    | _____ |
| 2. libro                   | _____ |
| 3. esquí                   | _____ |
| 4. ladrón                  | _____ |
| 5. ciudad                  | _____ |
| 6. lápiz                   | _____ |
| 7. orden                   | _____ |
| 8. lunes                   | _____ |
| 9. domingo                 | _____ |
| 10. el Sr. y la Sra. Pérez | _____ |

# NUMBERS

## Cardinal Numbers

0	cero	30	treinta	60	sesenta
1	uno	31	treinta y uno	61	sesenta y uno
2	dos	32	treinta y dos	62	sesenta y dos
3	tres	33	treinta y tres	63	sesenta y tres
4	cuatro	34	treinta y cuatro	64	sesenta y cuatro
5	cinco	35	treinta y cinco	65	sesenta y cinco
6	seis	36	treinta y seis	66	sesenta y seis
7	siete	37	treinta y siete	67	sesenta y siete
8	ocho	38	treinta y ocho	68	sesenta y ocho
9	nueve	39	treinta y nueve	69	sesenta y nueve
10	diez	40	cuarenta	70	setenta
11	once	41	cuarenta y uno	71	setenta y uno
12	doce	42	cuarenta y dos	72	setenta y dos
13	trece	43	cuarenta y tres	73	setenta y tres
14	catorce	44	cuarenta y cuatro	74	setenta y cuatro
15	quince	45	cuarenta y cinco	75	setenta y cinco
16	dieciséis	46	cuarenta y seis	76	setenta y seis
17	diecisiete	47	cuarenta y siete	77	setenta y siete
18	dieciocho	48	cuarenta y ocho	78	setenta y ocho
19	diecinueve	49	cuarenta y nueve	79	setenta y nueve
20	veinte	50	cincuenta	80	ochenta
21	veintiuno	51	cincuenta y uno	81	ochenta y uno
22	veintidós	52	cincuenta y dos	82	ochenta y dos
23	veintitrés	53	cincuenta y tres	83	ochenta y tres
24	veinticuatro	54	cincuenta y cuatro	84	ochenta y cuatro
25	veinticinco	55	cincuenta y cinco	85	ochenta y cinco
26	veintiséis	56	cincuenta y seis	86	ochenta y seis
27	veintisiete	57	cincuenta y siete	87	ochenta y siete
28	veintiocho	58	cincuenta y ocho	88	ochenta y ocho
29	veintinueve	59	cincuenta y nueve	89	ochenta y nueve

90	noventa	
91	noventa y uno	
92	noventa y dos	
93	noventa y tres	
94	noventa y cuatro	
95	noventa y cinco	
96	noventa y seis	
97	noventa y siete	
98	noventa y ocho	
99	noventa y nueve	
100	cien	200 doscientos(-as)
101	ciento uno	300 trescientos(-as)
102	ciento dos	400 cuatrocientos(-as)
113	ciento trece	500 quinientos(-as)
129	ciento veintinueve	600 seiscientos(-as)
133	ciento treinta y tres	700 setecientos(-as)
142	ciento cuarenta y dos	800 ochocientos(-as)
154	ciento cincuenta y cuatro	900 novecientos(-as)
165	ciento sesenta y cinco	
176	ciento setenta y seis	
188	ciento ochenta y ocho	
197	ciento noventa y siete	
1000	mil	
1492	mil cuatrocientos noventa y dos	
1776	mil setecientos setenta y seis	
1999	mil novecientos noventa y nueve	
2000	dos mil	
1.000.000	un millón	
2.472.683	dos millones, cuatrocientos setenta y dos mil, seiscientos ochenta y tres	

## Ordinal Numbers

1º	primero(-a)	primer ( <i>before masculine noun</i> )
2º	segundo(-a)	
3º	tercero(-a)	tercer ( <i>before masculine noun</i> )
4º	cuarto(-a)	
5º	quinto(-a)	
6º	sexto(-a)	
7º	séptimo(-a)	
8º	octavo(-a)	
9º	noveno(-a)	
10º	décimo(-a)	

11º undécimo(-a)	30º trigésimo(-a)
12º duodécimo(-a)	40º cuadragésimo(-a)
13º decimotercero(-a)	50º quincuagésimo(-a)
14º decimocuarto(-a)	60º sexagésimo(-a)
15º decimoquinto(-a)	70º septuagésimo(-a)
16º decimosexto(-a)	80º octogésimo(-a)
17º decimoséptimo(-a)	90º nonagésimo(-a)
18º decimoctavo(-a)	100º centésimo(-a)
19º decimonoveno(-a)	1000º milésimo(-a)
20º vigésimo(-a)	1.000.000º millonésimo(-a)
21º vigesimoprimer(-a)	
22º vigesimosegundo(-a)	
23º vigesimotercero(-a)	

## Fractions

$\frac{1}{2}$	un medio
$\frac{2}{3}$	dos tercios
$\frac{3}{4}$	tres cuartos
$\frac{4}{5}$	cuatro quintos
$\frac{5}{6}$	cinco sextos
$\frac{6}{7}$	seis séptimos
$\frac{5}{8}$	cinco octavos
$\frac{7}{9}$	siete novenos
$\frac{4}{10}$	cuatro décimos

---

Review the numbers in the charts on the previous pages.

The Spanish and English numbering systems are very similar. There are, however, several notable differences.

## Writing Numbers

In some countries, the numbers 1 and 7 are handwritten in a slightly different manner in Spanish.

uno	1	a one with a long tail (can look like a seven)
siete	7	a seven with a line through the center

In many, but not all, Spanish-speaking countries, a period is used to mark the thousands, and a comma is used for the decimal point—exactly the opposite of the English system.

2.763	<i>two thousand, seven hundred sixty-three</i>
3.892.359	<i>three million, eight hundred ninety-two thousand, three hundred fifty-nine</i>
4,25	<i>four point two five</i>
3,75	<i>three point seven five</i>

The Spanish equivalent of the English <sup>nd</sup> and <sup>th</sup>, as in 2<sup>nd</sup> or 4<sup>th</sup>, is <sup>o</sup> when referring to a masculine noun and <sup>a</sup> when referring to a feminine noun. The equivalent of the English <sup>st</sup>, as in 1<sup>st</sup>, and <sup>rd</sup>, as in 3<sup>rd</sup>, is <sup>ero</sup> when referring to a masculine noun and <sup>era</sup> when referring to a feminine noun. The <sup>ero</sup> is shortened to <sup>er</sup> (*primer* and *tercer*) before a masculine singular noun.

1 <sup>ero</sup>	primero	3 <sup>ero</sup>	tercero
1 <sup>era</sup>	primera	3 <sup>era</sup>	tercera
1 <sup>er</sup>	primer	3 <sup>er</sup>	tercer
2 <sup>o</sup>	segundo	4 <sup>o</sup>	cuarto
2 <sup>a</sup>	segunda	4 <sup>a</sup>	cuarta

## Ones

■ Note the spelling of *seis* and *siete*.

seis	“SEH ees” (rhymes with English “face”)
siete	“SYE teh”

Watch the spelling of *cuatro*.

AVOID THE <i>Blunder</i>		
✗ sies	✗ seite	✗ quatro

■ The numbers from *dos* to *cien* (“two” to “one hundred”) are never pluralized.

cuatro manzanas  
siete alumnos  
noventa personas  
cien libros

*four apples*  
*seven students*  
*ninety people*  
*a hundred books*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ *cuatros manzanas*  
✗ *noventas personas*

✗ *sietes alumnos*  
✗ *cientos libros*

■ In Spanish there are several ways to indicate “one.”

□ The word for “one” is the same as the indefinite article, which has three forms.

un, uno, una

*one*

—¿Qué tienes?

*“What do you have?”*

—Tengo un libro.

*“I have a book.”*

—¿Cuántos libros tienes?

*“How many books do you have?”*

—Tengo un libro. / Tengo uno.

*“I have one book.” / “I have one.”*

—¿Quiere un libro?

*“Do you want a book?”*

—Hay uno en la mesa.

*“There is one on the table.”*

—¿Quiere una pluma?

*“Do you want a pen?”*

—Aquí está una.

*“Here is one.”*

Numbers above 20 that contain “one” follow the same pattern.

Tengo veintiún libros.

*I have 21 books.*

Mi hermano tiene treinta y un libros.

*My brother has 31 books.*

Hay veinte niños y veintiuna niñas.

*There are 20 boys and 21 girls.*

Necesitamos cuarenta y una camisetas.

*We need 41 T-shirts.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Drop the *-o* from *uno* before a masculine noun. Use *una* before a feminine noun. Don’t forget the accent mark above the *ú* in *veintiún*.

✗ *uno libro*

✗ *un pluma*

✗ *veintiuno libros*

✗ *treinta y uno libros*

✗ *veintun libros*

- *Ningún, ninguno, or ninguna* is used to express “not one.”

No veo ningún libro.

*I don't see a book.*

*(I don't see any books.)*

No hay ninguno.

*There aren't any.*

*(There isn't a single one.)*

No tengo ningún amigo aquí.

*I don't have any friends here.*

—¿Cuántas personas vinieron?

*“How many people came?”*

—No vino ninguna.

*“Not a single one came.”*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

In English, “zero”—or “not any”—is followed by a plural noun. Do not use a plural with *ninguno* in Spanish.

✗ No tengo ningunos libros.

✗ No hay ningunas personas.

- “Another one,” “one more,” and “a different one” are expressed with *otro(-a)* in Spanish. Alternatively, *uno(-a) más* can be used for “one more” and *uno(-a) distinto(-a)* can be used for “a different one.”

Tengo un libro. Quiero otro.

*I have a book. I want another one.*

Quiero otro. / Quiero uno más.

*I want one more.*

Quiero otro. / Quiero uno distinto.

*I want a different one.*

Tiene una pluma. Quiere otra.

*He has a pen. He wants another one.*

Quiere otra. / Quiere una más.

*He wants one more.*

Quiere otra. / Quiere una distinta.

*He wants a different one.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *un, uno, or una* before *otro* or *otra*.

✗ un otro libro

✗ una otra amiga

In English, numbers are placed before the word “other.” In Spanish, they are placed after *otros(-as)*. (See pages 71–72.)

Tenemos otros dos primos.

*We have two other cousins.*

Necesitan otras cuatro sillas.

*They need four more chairs.*

AVOID THE

*Blunder*~~X~~ dos otros~~X~~ cuatro otras

## Tens

Watch the numbers *once*, *doce*, *trece*, *catorce*, and *quince*.

AVOID THE

*Blunder*~~X~~ diez y tres~~X~~ diez y cuatro~~X~~ diez y cinco

Note that the numbers from 16 through 29 are expressed as one word. It is no longer common to separate these into three-word expressions.

AVOID THE

*Blunder*~~X~~ diez y seis~~X~~ veinte y nueve

Note that the numbers 16, 22, 23, and 26 require an accent mark on the final syllable.

dieciséis

veintidós

veintitrés

veintiséis

Watch the spelling and pronunciation of *veinte*. The first syllable is spelled and pronounced like the English word “vein.” Similarly, the vowels in the first syllable of *treinta* are pronounced (but not spelled) like the vowels in the English word “train.”

AVOID THE

*Blunder*~~X~~ viente~~X~~ trienta

## Hundreds

*Ciento* is shortened to *cien* when it immediately precedes a noun and when it stands alone.

Hay cien alumnos.

Tenemos cien cajas de libros.

Hay cien.

*There are a hundred students.**We have a hundred boxes  
of books.**There are a hundred.*

In English, the number “one” or “a” can precede “hundred.” In Spanish, *ciento* and *cien* are never preceded by a form of *uno*.

Hay cien chicos.

Hay ciento veinte chicas.

*There are a/one hundred boys.*

*There are a/one hundred and twenty girls.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

~~X~~ un ciento

~~X~~ una cien

In spoken English, there is a tendency to insert “and” after the hundreds. In Spanish, there is no *y* after the hundreds. In Spanish, *y* (“and”) is used in the tens.

ciento tres

quinientos veinte

doscientos cuarenta y cuatro

*one hundred and three*

*five hundred and twenty*

*two hundred and forty-four*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

~~X~~ ciento y tres

~~X~~ cuarenta cuatro

~~X~~ quinientos y veinte

~~X~~ treinta dos

Multiple hundreds are always plural and are masculine or feminine to agree with the nouns they modify.

doscientos dólares

trescientos pesos

cuatrocientas libras

*two hundred dollars*

*three hundred pesos*

*four hundred pounds*

## Thousands

In English, the number “one” or “a” can precede “thousand.” In Spanish, *mil* is preceded by *un* only in cases of ambiguity.

\$1.000 mil dólares

\$400.000 cuatrocientos mil dólares

\$401.000 cuatrocientos un mil dólares

*one thousand dollars*

*four hundred thousand dollars*

*four hundred and one thousand dollars*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

~~X~~ un mil dólares

In English, years above 1000 are often expressed as multiples of hundreds. In Spanish, *mil* is used.

1867	mil ochocientos sesenta y siete
1959	mil novecientos cincuenta y nueve

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use this format to express 1959.

**X** diecinueve cincuenta y nueve

## Millions, Billions, and Trillions

*Millón*, *billón*, and *trillón* are preceded by *un* to express “one.” To express more than one, they are pluralized.

un millón	<i>one million</i>
dos millones	<i>two million</i>
tres billones	<i>three billion</i>
un trillón	<i>one trillion</i>

When the item being counted is stated, it is preceded by *de*.

un millón de dólares	<i>one million dollars</i>
tres billones de pesos	<i>three billion pesos</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

**X** un millón dólares

**X** tres millones pesos

## Using Cardinal Numbers

### Comparisons

When a comparison includes a number, “more than” is expressed by *más de*; “less than” is expressed by *menos de*.

Tengo que esperar más de dos horas.	<i>I have to wait more than two hours.</i>
Tiene menos de cien pesos.	<i>He has less than a hundred pesos.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

**X** más que tres

**X** menos que cuatro

## Dates

In Spanish, when numbers are used to designate a calendar date, the first number indicates the day, the second number indicates the month, and the third number indicates the year.

3/6/05

*June 3, 2005*

4/7/76

*July 4, 1976*

6/10/64

*October 6, 1964*

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Do not use this format to express November 23, 1974.

✗ 11/23/74

Do not use this format to express March 6, 2006.

✗ 3/6/06

## Telephone Numbers

Telephone numbers are expressed as a sequence of two-digit numbers in Spanish. When there are three digits in a group, the first number is stated in isolation, and the second two as a two-digit number.

64.98.31

sesenta y cuatro, noventa y ocho, treinta y uno

453-8679

cuatro, cincuenta y tres, ochenta y seis, setenta y nueve

301-220-0290

tres cero uno, dos veinte, cero dos, noventa

## Street Addresses

Street addresses typically begin with the name of the street followed by the street number, then the floor and apartment or room number, if applicable.

Calle Villamil, 27 3<sup>er</sup>B

*27 Villamil Street, Third Floor,  
Apt. B*

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ 27 Villamil Calle

## Telling Time

*¿Qué hora es?* asks for the current time. Following are some common responses. (See page 58.)

Es la una de la madrugada.	<i>It's one o'clock in the morning./ It's 1 A.M.</i>
Son las diez y cuarto de la mañana.	<i>It's a quarter after ten in the morning./It's 10:15 A.M.</i>
Son las cinco y media de la tarde.	<i>It's 5:30 in the afternoon./ It's 5:30 P.M.</i>
Es mediodía.	<i>It's 12 noon.</i>
Es medianoche.	<i>It's 12 midnight.</i>

### AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Use *es la* with “one o'clock” and *son las* with other times.

✗ *son la una*      ✗ *es las tres*      ✗ *es cinco*

*En la mañana*, *en la tarde*, and *en la noche* are correct when used to refer to parts of the day, when the actual time is not expressed. The abbreviation “A.M.” is expressed with *de la mañana* and “P.M.” is expressed with *de la tarde* or *de la noche*.

### AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ *Son las diez en la mañana.*  
✗ *Es la una en la tarde.*  
✗ *Son las once en la noche.*

*¿A qué hora es?* asks the time of an event. The answer is also expressed with *a* when a specific time is mentioned.

<i>¿A qué hora es la reunión?</i>	<i>What time is the meeting?</i>
Es en la mañana. / Es por la mañana.	<i>It's in the morning.</i>
Es a las once de la mañana.	<i>It's at 11 o'clock in the morning./ It's at 11 A.M.</i>
Es en la tarde. / Es por la tarde.	<i>It's in the afternoon. OR It's in the evening.</i>
Es a las siete y media de la tarde.	<i>It's at 7:30 in the evening./ It's at 7:30 P.M.</i>
Es en la noche. / Es por la noche.	<i>It's in the evening. OR It's at night.</i>
Es a las diez de la noche.	<i>It's at 10 o'clock at night./ It's at 10 P.M.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

A—not *es* or *son*—must be used when telling the time of an event.

✗ La reunión *es* la una.

✗ La clase *es son* las once.

## Using Ordinal Numbers

Review the ordinal numbers in the chart on pages 39–40.

Two ordinal numbers, *primero* and *tercero*, are shortened to *primer* and *tercer* when used before masculine singular nouns.

el primer presidente

*the first president*

el tercer piso

*the third floor*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ el primero año

✗ el tercero hombre

All ordinal numbers change the final *-o* to *-a* before a feminine noun.

la primera presidente

*the first president*

la tercera calle

*the third street*

la quinta milla

*the fifth mile*

*Primero* and *primera* can be used in the plural.

los primeros días de enero

*the first days in January*

las primeras llamadas del día

*the first calls of the day*

Although there are ordinals in Spanish for “eleventh” and above, cardinal numbers are usually used for ordinals higher than *décimo*.

Está en el piso once.

*It's on the eleventh floor.*

Vamos a la Calle Cincuenta

*Let's go to Fifty-fourth Street.*

y cuatro.

In spoken language, the names of kings and popes are expressed without the article *el*.

Carlos V

Carlos quinto

*Carlos the Fifth*

Alfonso XII

Alfonso doce

*Alfonso the Twelfth*

Juan XXIII

Juan veintitrés

*John the Twenty-third*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Carlos el quinto

✗ Alfonso el doce

When giving dates, the “first” of the month is expressed with *primero*. All other days are expressed with the cardinal number.

el primero de enero

*January 1*

el dos de febrero

*February 2*

el dieciséis de septiembre

*September 16*

el veintiocho de diciembre

*December 28*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ el tercero de marzo

✗ el cuarto de julio

## Using Fractions

“One-half” is expressed by using *medio(-a)* followed by a noun of quantity.

Déme medio kilo de mantequilla.

*Give me a half-kilo of butter./*

*Give me half a kilo of butter.*

He traído media docena de huevos.

*I brought a half-dozen eggs./*

*I brought half a dozen eggs.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *un, uno, una* before *medio* + noun.

✗ un medio kilo

✗ una media docena

“One and a half” is expressed by naming the noun of quantity followed by *y medio(-a)*.

Esperamos hora y media.

*We waited an hour and a half.*

Ella compró kilo y medio de harina.

*She bought a kilo and a half of flour.*

Tomé taza y media de café.

*I drank a cup and a half of coffee.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *un, uno, una* before a quantity noun if a fraction follows.

✗ una taza y media

✗ una hora y media

“Half of” a commodity can be expressed by *la media parte de* or *la mitad de*.

Pablo vendió la media parte de sus tierras. *Pablo sold half of his land.*

Ella le robó la mitad de sus bienes. *She robbed him of half of his assets.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Be sure to use *la* and *de* with these expressions.

✗ media parte sus tierras

✗ una mitad sus bienes

A whole number plus a half is always separated by a noun of quantity.

Esperamos dos horas y media. *We waited two and a half hours.*

He perdido tres kilos y medio. *I've lost three and a half kilos.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not put *y medio* or *y media* before the noun.

✗ dos y media horas

✗ tres y medio kilos

When the top number of a fraction is “one,” use *la* + the ordinal number + *parte de*.

la tercera parte de

*one-third of*

la cuarta parte de

*one-fourth of / a quarter of*

la séptima parte de

*one-seventh of*

la décima parte de

*one-tenth of*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ una tercera de

✗ una cuarta de

## Exercises

**A** Write the words for the following numbers.

1. 2 \_\_\_\_\_
2. 10 \_\_\_\_\_
3. 14 \_\_\_\_\_
4. 22 \_\_\_\_\_
5. 39 \_\_\_\_\_
6. 146 \_\_\_\_\_
7. 473 \_\_\_\_\_
8. 511 \_\_\_\_\_
9. 1984 \_\_\_\_\_
10. 2007 \_\_\_\_\_

**B** Write the words for the ordinal numbers in the chart.

	MASCULINE		FEMININE
1. <i>first</i>	<u>el primer</u> libro	_____	novela
2. <i>second</i>	_____ piso	_____	vez
3. <i>third</i>	_____ edificio	_____	casa
4. <i>fourth</i>	_____ año	_____	calle
5. <i>fifth</i>	_____ día	_____	persona

**C** Express in words.

1. 21 chicos \_\_\_\_\_
2. 21 chicas \_\_\_\_\_
3. 100 libros \_\_\_\_\_
4. 203 niños \_\_\_\_\_
5. \$2.000.000 \_\_\_\_\_
6. 2/10/77 \_\_\_\_\_
7. 202-490-3361 \_\_\_\_\_
8. 10:30 A.M. \_\_\_\_\_
9.  $\frac{1}{2}$  kilo \_\_\_\_\_
10.  $2\frac{1}{2}$  kilos \_\_\_\_\_

# NOUN DETERMINERS

## Definite Articles

el, la, los, las            *the*

## Indefinite Articles

un, una                    *a, an*

unos, unas                *some*

## Demonstratives

este, esta, esto          *this*

estos, estas              *these*

ese, esa, eso             *that*

esos, esas                *those*

aquel, aquella            *that (over there)*

aquellos, aquellas      *those (over there)*

## Possessives

### BEFORE A NOUN

mi/mis                    *my*

tu/tus/su/sus            *your*

su/sus                    *his*

su/sus                    *her*

su/sus                    *its*

nuestro(-a/-os/-as)    *our*

vuestro(-a/-os/-as)/su/sus    *your*

su/sus                    *their*

cuyo(-a/-os/-as)        *whose*

### ALONE OR AFTER AN ARTICLE OR NOUN

mío(-a/-os/-as)        *mine/my*

tuyo(-a/-os/-as)/  
suyo(-a/-os/-as)        *yours/your*

suyo(-a/-os/-as)        *his/his*

suyo(-a/-os/-as)        *hers/her*

nuestro(-a/-os/-as)    *ours/our*

vuestro(-a/-os/-as)/  
suyo(-a/-os/-as)        *yours/your*

suyo(-a/-os/-as)        *theirs/their*

**Other Determiners**

algún/alguna(-os/-as)	<i>some</i>
otro(-a/-os/-as)	<i>other, another</i>
cierto(-a/-os/-as)	<i>(a) certain</i>
propio(-a/-os/-as)	<i>one's own</i>
mucho(-a/-os/-as)	<i>a lot of</i>
poco(-a/-os/-as)	<i>little</i>
tanto(-a/-os/-as)	<i>so much, so many</i>
todo(-a/-os/-as)	<i>all, every</i>
el/la mismo(-a)	<i>the same</i>
los/las mismos(-as)	<i>the same</i>
el/la único(-a)	<i>the only</i>
los/las únicos(-as)	<i>the only</i>
ambos(-as)	<i>both</i>
los/las demás	<i>the rest</i>
varios(-as)	<i>several</i>
unos(-as) cuantos(-as)	<i>several</i>
unos(-as) pocos(-as)	<i>a few</i>
cada	<i>each</i>
tal	<i>the aforementioned</i>
semejante(s)	<i>such (a)</i>
medio(-a)	<i>half a</i>
cualquier/cualquiera	<i>any</i>

---

Review the forms in the charts on the previous pages.

Noun determiners help identify nouns and are usually placed before the noun, with a few exceptions.

## Definite Articles

The definite article—masculine singular *el*, feminine singular *la*, masculine plural *los*, feminine plural *las*—like English “the,” refers to a particular noun.

The definite article may refer to the only noun possible or simply to one that both the speaker and hearer have mutual knowledge of.

el hijo de Juan	<i>Juan's son</i>
la cocina	<i>the (only) kitchen (in this house or restaurant)</i>
los hijos de Juan	<i>Juan's children</i>
las llaves de mi casa	<i>the keys to my house</i>

■ Purely for pronunciation purposes, feminine singular nouns that begin with a stressed *a-* or *ha-* are preceded by *el* instead of *la* (see page 29).

el agua	<i>the water</i>
el águila	<i>the eagle</i>
el área	<i>the area</i>
el alma	<i>the soul</i>
el hambre	<i>the hunger</i>

*El* does not replace *la* in the following situations, however:

- If another determiner or an adjective separates the definite article from the noun.

Es la primera águila que vemos.	<i>It's the first eagle we've seen.</i>
La otra área es más bonita.	<i>The other area is prettier.</i>

- If the *el* or *la* distinguishes whether the person referred to is male or female.

el árabe	<i>the Arab (male)</i>
la árabe	<i>the Arab (female)</i>

- If the noun and definite article are plural.

las aguas	<i>the waters</i>
las águilas	<i>the eagles</i>
las áreas	<i>the areas</i>
las almas	<i>the souls</i>

All other determiners and adjectives that relate to these nouns are feminine.

el agua pura	<i>the clean water</i>
el águila bella	<i>the beautiful eagle</i>
el área seca	<i>the dry area</i>
poca agua	<i>very little water</i>
mucha hambre	<i>a lot of hunger</i>

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ la área

✗ todo el área

✗ este área

✗ los almas

✗ mucho hambre

■ When *el* is preceded by the preposition *a*, it must be contracted to *al*. When preceded by *de*, it must be contracted to *del*. This does not apply to *El* when it is part of a proper name.

Vamos al mercado.

*We're going to the market.*

Vamos a El Salvador.

*We're going to El Salvador.*

Soy del sur del país.

*I'm from the south of the country.*

Soy del sur de El Salvador.

*I'm from the south of El Salvador.*

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ a el país

✗ de el hermano

■ In Spanish, as in English, no article is used before a title when addressing someone.

Buenos días, Sr. Ochoa.

*Good morning, Mr. Ochoa.*

Hola, Sra. Rodríguez.

*Hello, Mrs. Rodríguez.*

Hasta luego, Srta. Díaz.

*See you later, Miss Díaz.*

In Spanish, a definite article is required before a title such as *señor*, *señora*, *señorita*, *doctor*, *doctora*, or *ingeniero* when speaking about someone, even though no article would be used in English.

El señor Ochoa me llamó anoche.

*Mr. Ochoa called me last night.*

Quiero presentarte a la señora

*I want to introduce you to*

Rodríguez.

*Mrs. Rodríguez.*

Voy a visitar a la señorita Díaz

*I'm going to visit Miss Díaz when*

cuando vaya a Chile.

*I go to Chile.*

Conocimos al doctor Páez el

*We met Dr. Páez last Friday.*

viernes pasado.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ *Hola, la señorita López.*

✗ *Sr. Ochoa me llamó.*

Do not forget the “personal *a*” before a direct object that is a person. When it immediately precedes the article *el*, the two words are contracted to *al*.

✗ *Conocimos doctor Páez.*

✗ *Conocimos el doctor Páez.*

No article is used when referring to people with the titles *don*, *doña*, *fray*, *sor*, *monseñor*, *San*, *Santa*, or *Santo*.

Anoche hablé con don Pablo.

*Last night I talked to don Pablo.*

Quiero presentarte a fray Luis.

*I want to introduce you to  
Brother Luis.*

■ The article *el* is used before the name of a day to indicate action occurring on that day.

Te veo el lunes.

*I'll see you on Monday.*

El martes vamos a la playa.

*On Tuesday we're going to  
the beach.*

Se fue el miércoles.

*She left on Wednesday.*

No tenemos clase el jueves.

*We don't have class on Thursday.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ *en lunes*

✗ *en el martes*

The article *los* is used before the name of a day to indicate action that occurs regularly on that day of the week.

Tenemos clase los lunes.

*We have class on Mondays.*

Hay partidos de fútbol los  
domingos.

*There are soccer games on  
Sundays.*

Se divierten los fines de semana.

*They have fun on weekends.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ *en lunes*

✗ *en los lunes*

✗ *en los fines de semanas*

In telling time, the article *la* is used to express one o'clock and *las* is used to express the other hours. No article is used to express noon and midnight. (See page 48.)

Es la una.	<i>It's one o'clock.</i>
Son las diez.	<i>It's 10 o'clock.</i>
Nos vamos a las ocho.	<i>We're leaving at eight.</i>
La fiesta terminó a medianoche.	<i>The party ended at midnight.</i>
Ellos comen a mediodía.	<i>They eat at noon.</i>

In Spanish the definite article is required before the names of seasons.

No hay clases en el verano.	<i>There are no classes in (the) summer.</i>
Esquían en el invierno.	<i>They go skiing in (the) winter.</i>
La primavera es una temporada hermosa.	<i>Spring is a beautiful season.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

**X** en verano      **X** en otoño      **X** Me encanta primavera.

■ Definite article usage varies to express movement to, movement from, and presence at certain familiar places.

As in English, no article is used to express movement to, movement from, or presence at one's own home.

Voy a casa.	<i>I'm going home.</i>
Salgo de casa a las ocho.	<i>I leave home at eight.</i>
Estamos en casa.	<i>We're at home.</i>

As in English, no article is used to express movement to or from a church service or class session.

Voy a misa.	<i>I'm going to mass.</i>
Salimos de misa a las once.	<i>We get out of mass at eleven.</i>
¿Van Uds. a clase?	<i>Are you all going to class?</i>
Salgo de clase a las cuatro.	<i>I get out of class at four.</i>

In Spanish, an article is used to express movement to certain common destinations, as well as presence at certain locations. English typically does not use an article in these cases.

Voy a la ciudad/a la iglesia/ a la escuela.	<i>I'm going to town/to church/ to school.</i>
Está en la ciudad/en la iglesia/ en la escuela/en el trabajo.	<i>He's in town/at church/ at school/at work.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ☒ Voy a ciudad.
- ☒ Va a iglesia.
- ☒ Está en escuela.

- In Spanish, an article is used to indicate “in care of”: *al cuidado de*.

Te mandé un paquete al cuidado  
del Sr. Alberto Sánchez.

*I sent you a package in care  
of Mr. Alberto Sánchez.*

- In Spanish, a definite article is used to refer to parts of the body and articles of clothing.

Me lavo las manos.	<i>I wash my hands.</i>
Se lava los dientes.	<i>She brushes her teeth.</i>
Se quitó el sombrero.	<i>He took off his hat.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ~~X~~ Lavo mis manos.
- ~~X~~ Lava sus dientes.
- ~~X~~ Se quitó su sombrero.

In Spanish, when referring to one item that pertains to more than one person, the singular noun is used and means “one each.” As in English, when more than one item is referred to, the plural noun is used.

Los chicos se quitaron el sombrero. *The boys took off their hats.*  
(one each)

Los chicos se quitaron los zapatos. *The boys took off their shoes.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Use the singular noun, unless you mean each one took off more than one hat.

- X** Los chicos se quitaron los sombreros.

Use the plural noun, unless you mean each one took off only one shoe.

- X** Los chicos se quitaron el zapato.

■ In Spanish, a definite article is used to indicate price per quantity. English uses “a” or “per.”

50 centavos la docena	<i>50 cents a dozen</i>
30 pesos el kilo	<i>30 pesos a kilo</i>
20 euros el metro	<i>20 euros a meter</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ 50 centavos una docena      ✗ 30 pesos un kilo

■ In Spanish, the names of languages are generally preceded by a definite article. English does not use a definite article before names of languages.

El español es el idioma más hablado en la América del Sur.	<i>Spanish is the most commonly spoken language in South America.</i>
El español y el francés son los idiomas que se enseñan en este colegio.	<i>Spanish and French are the languages taught at this school.</i>
Van a traducirlo del español al inglés.	<i>They're going to translate it from Spanish to English.</i>
Están estudiando la gramática del inglés.	<i>They're studying English grammar.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Español es difícil.  
 ✗ Español y francés son los idiomas que se enseñan.  
 ✗ Van a traducirlo de español a inglés.  
 ✗ la gramática de inglés

The Spanish article is generally not used when *en* or a form of *hablar* precedes the name of the language.

El artículo está escrito en chino.	<i>The article is written in Chinese.</i>
Mi hijo habla español.	<i>My son speaks Spanish.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Hablamos el español.  
 ✗ Está escrito en el chino.

- As in English, nouns that represent some but not all of the members of a class are not preceded by an article in Spanish.

Comemos enchiladas.	<i>We eat enchiladas.</i>
Tiene flores en el balcón.	<i>She has flowers on the balcony.</i>
Hay enchiladas hoy.	<i>There are enchiladas today.</i>
Había flores de toda clase.	<i>There were all kinds of flowers.</i>

- Spanish nouns used in a general sense to represent all members of a class are preceded by a definite article. English does not use an article.

El pollo es rico.	<i>Chicken (all chicken) is delicious.</i>
El pollo me gusta.	<i>I like chicken. (Chicken appeals to me.)</i>
Las enchiladas son ricas.	<i>Enchiladas (all enchiladas) are delicious.</i>
El ruido es un estorbo.	<i>Noise (in general) is a disturbance.</i>
Las flores son caras.	<i>Flowers (in general) are expensive.</i>
Las novelas me fascinan.	<i>Novels (all novels) fascinate me.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not eliminate the article before the subject.

- |                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| ✗ Pollo es rico.    | ✗ Me gusta pollo.      |
| ✗ Flores son caras. | ✗ Me fascinan novelas. |

- Spanish nouns that name abstract notions are generally preceded by a definite article. English usually does not use an article.

La contaminación del agua es un problema muy grande.	<i>Water pollution is a big problem.</i>
La salud es más importante que la riqueza.	<i>Health is more important than wealth.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- |                                 |
|---------------------------------|
| ✗ Contaminación es un problema. |
| ✗ Salud es importante.          |

- Definite articles are sometimes used with proper nouns.

*El* or *la* before a first name can have a derogatory connotation unless there is a descriptive adjective between the article and the noun.

Viene con la Anita.	<i>He's coming with that Anita.</i>
Viene con la adorable Anita.	<i>He's coming with adorable Anita.</i>

*El* can be part of a proper name, as in *El Salvador*, where it is always capitalized. The names of certain other countries, cities, and places are traditionally preceded by a lowercase definite article. This usage varies, so these must be learned individually. Following are some common examples.

la Argentina	la Habana
el Ecuador	el Perú
los Estados Unidos	El Morro

When the name of a place is modified by an adjective or phrase, it is preceded by a definite article.

la España del siglo XVI	<i>16th-century Spain</i>
la bella Madrid	<i>splendid Madrid</i>

In an appositive phrase that is placed next to a noun and defines it, no article is used in Spanish.

Washington, ciudad capital de los EE.UU.	<i>Washington, the capital of the United States</i>
Miguel Alonso, director del colegio	<i>Miguel Alonso, the school principal</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Washington, la ciudad capital de los EE.UU.
- ✗ Miguel Alonso, el director del colegio

As in English, in an appositive phrase that expresses a superlative or simply gives information about the noun, an article is used in Spanish.

Washington, la ciudad más grande del área	<i>Washington, the largest city in the area</i>
Miguel Alonso, el director que asistió a la conferencia	<i>Miguel Alonso, the director who attended the meeting</i>

Names of bodies of water and mountains are preceded by a definite article.

el Río Grande*	<i>the Río Grande</i>	los Andes	<i>the Andes</i>
el Guadalquivir	<i>the Guadalquivir</i>	los Pirineos	<i>the Pyrenees</i>
el Misisipi	<i>the Mississippi</i>	los Alpes	<i>the Alps</i>

\* The river at the border of the United States and Mexico is called “the Río Grande” north of the border and *el Río Bravo* south of the border.

- Names of the points of the compass are preceded by a definite article.

el norte	<i>north</i>	al norte de	<i>north of</i>
el sur	<i>south</i>	al sur de	<i>south of</i>
el este	<i>east</i>	en el norte de	<i>in the north of</i>
el oeste	<i>west</i>	hacia el este	<i>toward the east</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Oregón es norte de California.  
✗ Florida es sur de Georgia.

- The article is omitted in certain expressions with prepositions.

con objeto de	<i>for the purpose of</i>
con motivo de	<i>for the purpose of</i>
a orillas de	<i>on the banks of</i>
en nombre de	<i>in the name of</i>

## Indefinite Articles

The indefinite article—masculine singular *un*, feminine singular *una*, masculine plural *unos*, and feminine plural *unas*—like English “a,” “an,” and “some,” refers to an unspecified example of a noun.

Tengo un libro.	<i>I have a book.</i>
Buscamos unas revistas.	<i>We're looking for some magazines.</i>

- The indefinite article is not used when expressing nationality or professional, religious, or other affiliation in Spanish. English often uses the indefinite article in such cases.

Miguel es ecuatoriano.	<i>Miguel is an Ecuadorean./</i> <i>Miguel is Ecuadorean.</i>
Sara es médico.	<i>Sara is a doctor.</i>
Humberto es católico.	<i>Humberto is a Catholic./</i> <i>Humberto is Catholic.</i>

However, as in English, when an adjective is added to further describe the person as a member of that category, an indefinite article is used in Spanish.

Miguel es un ecuatoriano famoso.	<i>Miguel is a famous Ecuadorean.</i>
Sara es una médica comprensiva.	<i>Sara is an understanding doctor.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Soy un profesor.
- ✗ Es una mexicana.
- ✗ Es médico bueno.

- The indefinite article may be omitted before *gran*, *buen*, *buena*, *mal*, or *mala* when showing a certain “affiliation” with a type.

Es muy buena amiga.  
Es buen católico.  
Es mala persona.

*She's a good friend.*  
*He's a good Catholic.*  
*He's a bad person.*

- The indefinite article is not used before *otro*, *cierto*, *medio(-a)*, *cien*, and *mil*, or after *¡Qué!*.

Quiero otro libro.  
Noto cierto aire de indiferencia.

*I want another book.*  
*I note a certain air of*  
*indifference.*

Quiero medio kilo de azúcar.  
No tenemos mil dólares, sino cien.

*I want a half kilo of sugar.*  
*We don't have a thousand dollars;*  
*we have a hundred.*

¡Qué bella vista!  
¡Qué chica más inteligente!

*What a beautiful view!*  
*What a smart girl!*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ un otro libro
- ✗ un medio kilo
- ✗ un mil dólares
- ✗ ¡Qué una bella vista!
- ✗ ¡Qué una chica inteligente!

- When the indefinite article is omitted after the verb *tener*, a general, rather than specific, meaning is implied.

Mi amigo tiene un coche.  
Mi amigo tiene coche.

*My friend has a car.*  
*My friend has his own*  
*transportation.*

Ella tiene un novio guapo.  
Ella tiene novio.

*She has a cute boyfriend.*  
*She is unavailable.*

Tengo un trabajo interesante.  
Tengo trabajo.

*I have an interesting job.*  
*I am employed.*

No article is used after *tener* in the following expressions of a condition. English generally uses the indefinite article in such cases.

Tiene fiebre.	<i>She has a fever.</i>
Tiene resfriado.	<i>He has a cold.</i>
Tengo tos.	<i>I have a cough.</i>

Nevertheless, when an adjective describes the noun, the indefinite article is used.

Tiene una tos terrible.	<i>She has a terrible cough.</i>
-------------------------	----------------------------------

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Tiene una fiebre.
- ✗ Tengo una tos.
- ✗ Tiene resfriado terrible.

- The indefinite article is not used when expressing what one doesn't have.

No tengo coche.	<i>I don't have a car.</i>
No tenemos visita.	<i>We don't have a visitor/ any visitors.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ No tengo un coche.
- ✗ No tenemos una visita.
- ✗ No tenemos visitas.

- The indefinite article is generally not used after *sin*.

Lo hace sin problema.	<i>She does it without a problem/ without any problems.</i>
Viaja sin maleta.	<i>He travels without a suitcase.</i>
Asistió al concierto sin boleto.	<i>He attended the concert without a ticket.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ sin un problema
- ✗ sin una maleta
- ✗ sin un boleto

- The indefinite article is generally not used when indicating purpose after *por* or *como*.

Tiene por mesa una caja  
de cartón.

*He has a cardboard box for  
a table.*

Usa su abrigo como manta.

*She uses her coat as a blanket.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ por una mesa

✗ como una manta

- The indefinite article is generally not used as the first word in the title of a book or article in Spanish.

Comparación de estilos

*A Comparison of Styles*

Nuevo método para leer rápido

*A New Method for Speed Reading*

Acercamiento al aprendizaje  
de lenguas

*An Approach to Language  
Learning*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Una comparación de estilos

✗ Un nuevo método para leer rápido

✗ Un acercamiento al aprendizaje de lenguas

- The omission of an article can indicate a slight change in meaning.

Es la verdad.

*It's the truth.*

Es verdad.

*It's true.*

Es una mentira.

*It's a lie.*

Es mentira.

*It's not true.*

- A plural indefinite article—*unos* or *unas*—can indicate an approximation.

Están esperando unas veinte  
personas.

*About 20 people are waiting.*

Tengo que leer unas cincuenta  
páginas.

*I have to read about 50 pages.*

## Demonstratives

Demonstratives indicate specific nouns in relationship to their distance from the speaker. Demonstratives also serve as pronouns when it is un-

necessary to state the noun. Use of an accent mark above the first vowel of a demonstrative pronoun is now optional.

■ *Este(-a/-os/-as)* is used to indicate something that is so close that the speaker can touch it.

Este libro es interesante.	<i>This book is interesting.</i>
Éste/Este es interesante.	<i>This one is interesting.</i>
Esta novela es larga.	<i>This novel is long.</i>
Ésta/Esta es larga.	<i>This one is long.</i>
Estos exámenes están corregidos.	<i>These exams are corrected.</i>
Éstos/Estos están corregidos.	<i>These are corrected.</i>
Estas respuestas no son correctas.	<i>These answers are not correct.</i>
Éstas/Estas no son correctas.	<i>These are not correct.</i>

When the demonstrative is placed after the noun, it has a negative connotation.

La niña esta me está fastidiando.	<i>This pesky little girl is annoying me.</i>
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------

The demonstrative can also refer to time.

esta mañana	<i>this morning</i>
esta noche	<i>tonight</i>
esta semana	<i>this week</i>
este año	<i>this year</i>
estos días	<i>these days</i>

■ *Ese(-a/-os/-as)* indicates something that is farther away from the speaker, perhaps close to the person being spoken to.

Ese libro es aburrido.	<i>That book is boring.</i>
Ése/Ese es aburrido.	<i>That one is boring.</i>
Esa novela es corta.	<i>That novel is short.</i>
Ésa/Esa es corta.	<i>That one is short.</i>
Esos exámenes no están corregidos.	<i>Those exams aren't corrected.</i>
Ésos/Esos no están corregidos.	<i>Those aren't corrected.</i>
Esas respuestas son correctas.	<i>Those answers are correct.</i>
Ésas/Esas son correctas.	<i>Those are correct.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the pronouns *esto* and *eso* before nouns.

✗ *esto* año      ✗ *eso* beso

When the demonstrative is placed after the noun, it has a negative connotation.

El chico ese vive cerca de mi casa.

*That annoying kid lives near my house.*

The demonstrative can also refer to time.

esa mañana *that morning*

esa tarde *that afternoon*

esa noche *that night*

ese día *that day*

■ *Aquel/aquella/aquellos/aquellas* refers to something farther away, not close to either the speaker or the person being spoken to.

Aquel libro es carísimo.

*That book over there is really expensive.*

Aquella novela no es cara.

*That novel over there isn't expensive.*

Aquellos exámenes no son míos.

*Those exams over there aren't mine.*

Aquellas respuestas son interesantes.

*Those answers over there are interesting.*

The demonstrative can also refer to a distant time.

aquel día *that day*

aquella semana *that week*

aquella primavera *that spring*

aquellos años *those years*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Always put the demonstrative before the noun unless you want to indicate a negative connotation.

✗ la mujer esa

✗ el profesor aquel

✗ los hombres aquellos

## Possessives

The possessives, *mi(s)*, *tu(s)*, *su(s)*, *nuestro(-a/-os/-as)*, and *vuestro(-a/-os/-as)* identify the possessor or owner of something. In Spanish, they are not used with parts of the body. (See page 59.)

mi libro *my book*

mis libros *my books*

mi casa *my house*

mis casas *my houses*

tu libro	<i>your book</i>
tus libros	<i>your books</i>
tu casa	<i>your house</i>
tus casas	<i>your houses</i>
su libro	<i>your book, his book, her book, their book,</i> <i>your (pl.) book</i>
sus libros	<i>your books, his books, her books, their books,</i> <i>your (pl.) books</i>
su casa	<i>your house, his house, her house, their house,</i> <i>your (pl.) house</i>
sus casas	<i>your houses, his houses, her houses, their houses,</i> <i>your (pl.) houses</i>
nuestro libro	<i>our book</i>
nuestros libros	<i>our books</i>
nuestra casa	<i>our house</i>
nuestras casas	<i>our houses</i>
vuestro libro	<i>your (pl.) book</i>
vuestros libros	<i>your (pl.) books</i>
vuestra casa	<i>your (pl.) house</i>
vuestras casas	<i>your (pl.) houses</i>

## AVOID THE

*Blunder*✗ *nuestros libro*✗ *mi libros*✗ *sus casa*✗ *nuestras casa*

■ Remember that *su(s)* can mean “your,” “his,” “her,” and “their.” An *-s* at the end means that the things possessed are plural.

To distinguish between “your,” “his,” “her,” and “their,” a phrase with *de* may be used.

su coche	}	<i>your car</i>
el coche de usted		
sus coches	}	<i>your cars</i>
los coches de usted		
el coche de él		<i>his car</i>
los coches de él		<i>his cars</i>
el coche de ella		<i>her car</i>
los coches de ella		<i>her cars</i>

el coche de ustedes	<i>your (pl.) car</i>
los coches de ustedes	<i>your (pl.) cars</i>
el coche de ellos/ellas	<i>their car</i>
los coches de ellos/ellas	<i>their cars</i>

■ The possessive adjectives *mío*, *tuyo*, and *suyo* follow the verb *ser*, an article, or a noun, and agree with the noun (or pronoun) in number and gender.

Este coche es mío. El suyo está allí.	<i>This car is mine. Yours is over there.</i>
¿Es tuya esta chaqueta? No puedo encontrar la mía.	<i>Is this jacket yours? I can't find mine.</i>
Esos paquetes son suyos.	<i>Those packages are theirs.</i>
Los nuestros están aquí.	<i>Ours are here.</i>
Las flores son nuestras. No sé dónde están las suyas.	<i>The flowers are ours. I don't know where hers are.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

*Suyo(-a/-os/-as)* can mean “yours,” “his,” “hers,” and “theirs.” Be sure the ending agrees in number and gender with the item that is possessed.

- ✗ Los coches son mío.
- ✗ La chaqueta es suyos.
- ✗ Esos paquetes son suyo.

“Yours” (with *usted* and *ustedes*), “his,” “hers,” and “theirs” can also be expressed with a phrase using *de*.

El coche es de usted.	<i>The car is yours.</i>
El coche es de él.	<i>The car is his.</i>
El coche es de ella.	<i>The car is hers.</i>
Los coches son de ustedes.	<i>The cars are yours (pl.).</i>
Los coches son de ellos.	<i>The cars are theirs.</i>
Los coches son de ellas.	<i>The cars are theirs.</i>

“Mine” and “yours” (for *tú*) are not expressed with a phrase.

El coche es mío.	<i>The car is mine.</i>
El coche es tuyo.	<i>The car is yours.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ El coche es de mí.
- ✗ El coche es de ti.

## Other Determiners

### **algún**

*Algún/alguna(-os/-as)* refers to particular, but unidentified, nouns.

Algún día será feliz.	<i>One day/Some day he'll be happy.</i>
Quiere invitar a alguna chica.	<i>He wants to invite a girl. (I don't know which one.)</i>
Algunos chicos vienen con nosotras.	<i>Some boys are coming with us.</i>
¿Conoce alguna novela buena?	<i>Do you know of a good novel?</i>

### **cualquier**

*Cualquier* and *cualquiera* indicate any one of a class or group. *Cualquier* is used before a masculine or feminine noun. *Cualquiera* is used after a noun.

Me llamó como cualquier otro día.	} <i>He called me just like any other day.</i>
Me llamó como un día cualquiera.	
Tráeme cualquier chaqueta.	} <i>Bring me any old jacket.</i>
Tráeme una chaqueta cualquiera.	

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not change *cualquier* according to gender, but rather according to its position before or after the noun.

✗ <i>cualquiera día</i>	✗ <i>cualquiera persona</i>
✗ <i>cualquiera manera</i>	✗ <i>un día cualquier</i>

### **unos cuantos and unos pocos**

*Unos(-as) cuantos(-as)* and *unos(-as) pocos(-as)* indicate “several” or “a few.”

Tengo unos cuantos amigos en esta ciudad.	<i>I have several friends in this city.</i>
Quiero comprar unas pocas cosas.	<i>I want to buy a few things.</i>

### **otro**

*Otro(-a/-os/-as)* indicates one or several more of a noun, or one or several different ones. (See pages 43–44.)

Quiero otro profesor.	<i>I want another (a different) teacher.</i>
¿Tienen otros juguetes?	<i>Do you have any other toys?</i>
Tengo otras ideas.	<i>I have some other ideas.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ un otro

✗ otro uno

✗ unas otras

✗ otras unas

*Muchos(-as)* and *pocos(-as)* can be placed before or after *otros(-as)*.

Conoce a muchas otras personas. *He knows a lot of other people.*

Tiene otras pocas ideas. *He has a few other ideas.*

Numbers are placed after *otros(-as)*—never before.

Quiero ver otras dos películas. *I want to see two other movies.*

Mi vecino tiene otros tres coches. *My neighbor has three other cars.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ dos otros libros

✗ tres otros amigos

### **poco**

*Poco(-a/-os/-as)* indicates a small number or amount of something.

Gana poco dinero. *He earns very little money.*

Tenemos poca agua en el campo. *We have very little water in the country.*

Hay pocos alumnos en esa escuela. *There are few students at that school.*

Hay pocas cosas que hacer allí. *There are very few things to do there.*

Do not confuse *poco* with *un poco*. *Poco* emphasizes a lack; *un poco* means “some.”

Gana poco dinero. *He earns very little money.*

Gana un poco de dinero. *He earns a little money.*

Hay poca contaminación. *There is very little pollution.*

Hay un poco de contaminación. *There is some pollution.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *de* with *poco*. Do not leave it out after *un poco*.

✗ Gana poco de dinero.

✗ Hay un poco contaminación.

**mucho**

*Mucho(-a/-os/-as)* indicates a large number or amount of something.

Hay mucho ruido en la calle.	<i>There is a lot of noise in the street.</i>
Tengo mucha hambre.	<i>I'm very hungry. (I have a lot of hunger.)</i>
Lee muchos libros en el verano.	<i>He reads a lot of books in summer.</i>
Tengo muchas ganas de verte.	<i>I'm looking forward to seeing you. (I have a lot of wishes to see you.)</i>

Many expressions with *tener* and *hacer* indicate a state or condition that is expressed with “be” in English. In English, these are enhanced by “very.” In Spanish they are enhanced by *mucho(-a)*. (See page 311.)

Tengo mucho miedo/frío/calor/suerte.	<i>I am very afraid/cold/hot/lucky.</i>
Tengo mucha hambre/sed.	<i>I am very hungry/thirsty.</i>
Hace mucho frío/calor/viento.	<i>It's very cold/hot/windy.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Tengo muy miedo.
- ✗ Tengo muy hambre.
- ✗ Hace muy frío.

**tanto**

*Tanto(-a/-os/-as)* refers to a number or amount that has consequences.

Hay tanto trabajo que no sé dónde empezar.	<i>There is so much work that I don't know where to start.</i>
Tenía tanta sed que casi se muere.	<i>She was so thirsty she almost died.</i>
Tiene tantos problemas que ya no puede más.	<i>He has so many problems that he can't go on.</i>
Ella tiene tantas deudas que no las puede pagar.	<i>She has so many debts that she can't pay them.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ tan mucho
- ✗ tan muchos

**todo**

The entirety of something is expressed by *todo el*, *toda la*, *todos los*, or *todas las* plus the noun.

Voy a trabajar todo el día.	<i>I'm going to work all day.</i>
Toda la clase está aquí.	<i>The whole class is here.</i>
Trabajo todos los días.	<i>I work every day.</i>
Todas las chicas están aquí.	<i>All the girls are here.</i>

Another way to emphasize the whole of a singular noun is by placing *entero(-a)* after it.

Voy a trabajar el día entero.	<i>I'm going to work the whole day.</i>
La clase entera está aquí.	<i>The entire class is here.</i>

“Everybody” can be expressed three ways, using *todo el mundo*, *todos*, or *el mundo entero*.

Todo el mundo va a la fiesta.	}	<i>Everybody is going to the party.</i>
Todos van a la fiesta.		
Lo van a saber todos.	}	<i>Everybody is going to find out about it.</i>
Lo va a saber el mundo entero.		

**AVOID THE****Blunder**

Use a singular verb with *todo el mundo* and *el mundo entero*. Use a plural verb with *todos*.

- ✗ *Todo el mundo van a la fiesta.*
- ✗ *Lo van a saber el mundo entero.*
- ✗ *Todos va a la fiesta.*

Another way to emphasize the totality of the members of a category is *todo(-a)* plus a singular noun.

Todo trabajador merece un descanso.	<i>Every worker deserves a break.</i>
Toda niña necesita una muñeca.	<i>Every little girl needs a doll.</i>

*Todo un* or *toda una* plus a noun emphasizes the achievement of becoming the embodiment of the noun.

Su hijo es todo un hombre.	<i>Your son is all grown up (a complete man).</i>
Ella es toda una mujer.	<i>She's all grown up (a complete woman).</i>
Ya es toda una estrella de cine.	<i>Now he/she is a real movie star (in every sense of the word).</i>

**cada**

*Cada* is used to indicate all the items, emphasizing one at a time. It can be used before *uno* and *una*.

Cada alumno recibió su diploma.	<i>Each student received his diploma.</i>
Cada uno recibió su diploma.	<i>Each one received his diploma.</i>
BUT	
Todos los alumnos recibieron su diploma.	<i>All the students received their diplomas.</i>
Cada madre recogió a sus niños.	<i>Each mother picked up her children.</i>
Cada una recogió a sus niños.	<i>Each one picked up her children.</i>
BUT	
Todas las madres recogieron a sus niños.	<i>All the mothers picked up their children.</i>

**AVOID THE Blunder**

Do not use *cada* for “all” unless you want to emphasize the individuality of each member.

**ambos**

*Ambos(-as)* is used to indicate the same, but separate, state or action of two people, animals, or things. *Los dos* and *las dos* are used to indicate either joint or separate states or actions.

Ambos chicos fueron a casa.	<i>Each boy went home. / Both boys went home (separately).</i>
Los dos chicos fueron a casa.	<i>Both boys went home (separately or together).</i>
Los dos chicos fueron a casa juntos.	<i>Both boys went home (together). / The two boys went home together.</i>
Vine a visitar a los dos.	<i>I came to visit both of you (together).</i>

**AVOID THE Blunder**

Do not use *ambos(-as)* unless you want to indicate separate circumstances. To emphasize joint action, use *los dos* or *las dos* and add *juntos(-as)*.

✗ Vine a visitar a ambos de ustedes.

## los demás

*Los demás* or *las demás* refers to “the rest” or “the others.”

Miguel, Juan y los demás chicos  
ya se fueron.

*Miguel, Juan, and all the other  
boys left.*

Ana y las demás chicas se  
quedaron.

*Ana and the rest of the girls  
stayed.*

## sólo, solamente, ni un solo

*Sólo* and *solamente* emphasize the small number or small amount of something.

Sólo tres coches estaban en  
el garaje.

*Only three cars were in the  
garage.*

Me compró solamente una  
camiseta.

*She only bought me a T-shirt.*

A negative statement with the determiner *un solo* or *una sola* indicates a total lack.

No me dio un solo centavo.

*He didn't give me a red cent.*

No tengo ni una sola amiga aquí.

*I don't have even one friend here.*

## único

A definite article plus *único(-a/-os/-as)* indicates the only one of something.

Es el único lápiz que tengo.

*It's the only pencil I have.*

Es la única cosa que me queda.

*It's the only thing I have left.*

Son los únicos músicos en  
el pueblo.

*They're the only musicians  
in this town.*

Son las únicas flores que había.

*They're the only flowers there  
were.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

**X** el sólo lápiz

**X** la sólo cosa

**X** los sólo músicos

**X** las sólo flores

## tal

*Tal* can refer to something already mentioned, usually of a negative nature.

Mi hermana nunca hizo tal cosa.

*My sister never did anything  
like that.*

*Un tal* or *una tal* plus a noun indicates someone unknown to the speaker.

¿Conoces a un tal Miguel Márquez?	<i>Do you know a Miguel Márquez?</i>
Te llamó una tal Jennifer.	<i>Somebody named Jennifer called you.</i>

## Determiners with Different Meanings

The determiners in the examples below have different meanings when they are placed after the noun.

Hay cierto riesgo.	<i>There's a certain risk.</i>
Hay un riesgo cierto.	<i>There's a definite risk.</i>
Necesitas media taza de azúcar.	<i>You need half a cup of sugar.</i>
Es de la clase media.	<i>He's middle class.</i>
Es la misma mujer.	<i>It's the same woman.</i>
La mujer misma apareció.	<i>The woman herself appeared.</i>
Tiene su propia casa.	<i>He has his own house.</i>
Tiene una casa propia.	<i>He has an appropriate house.</i>
No haría semejante cosa.	<i>I wouldn't do such a thing.</i>
Ella hizo una cosa semejante.	<i>She did a similar thing.</i>
Es el único chico de la clase.	<i>He's the only boy in the class.</i>
Es un chico único.	<i>He's a unique boy.</i>
Es su único hijo.	<i>It's his only son.</i>
Es hijo único.	<i>He's an only child.</i>
Tenemos varios amigos.	<i>We have several friends.</i>
Tenemos amigos varios.	<i>We have diverse friends.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Put the determiner before the noun. Put the descriptive adjective after it.

- ✗ No haría una semejante cosa.
- ✗ Es de la media clase.
- ✗ Es su hijo único.

## Exercises

**A** Complete the chart with the corresponding singular or plural noun and its determiner.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. _____	las águilas
2. este libro	_____
3. _____	las lecciones
4. el agua	_____
5. _____	aquellos días
6. aquella persona	_____
7. _____	algunos chicos
8. un libro	_____

**B** Fill in the blank with the word or words necessary to complete each expression. If no word is necessary, write an "X" in the blank.

- \_\_\_\_\_ martes (on Tuesday)
- \_\_\_\_\_ martes (on Tuesdays)
- \_\_\_\_\_ verano (in summer)
- \_\_\_\_\_ norte (in the north)
- \_\_\_\_\_ norte de (north of)
- Me gusta \_\_\_\_\_ pollo. (I like chicken.)
- Samuel Bueno, \_\_\_\_\_ presidente de la clase (Samuel Bueno, the president of the class)
- Elena es \_\_\_\_\_ maestra. (Elena is a teacher.)
- \_\_\_\_\_ persona (another person)
- \_\_\_\_\_ personas (two other people)
- \_\_\_\_\_ persona (nobody)
- Tiene \_\_\_\_\_ fiebre. (He has a fever.)
- Tiene \_\_\_\_\_ coche nuevo. (He has a new car.)
- No tiene \_\_\_\_\_ bicicleta. (He doesn't have a bicycle.)
- Se lava \_\_\_\_\_ manos. (She washes her hands.)
- 30 centavos \_\_\_\_\_ docena (30 cents a dozen)
- Ella cocina sin \_\_\_\_\_ libro de cocina. (She cooks without a cookbook.)

**C** Match the words in the left column with the words in the right column that complete a sentence.

- |                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| _____ 1. Alberto es          | a. a la Srta. Ruiz.        |
| _____ 2. Buenas tardes,      | b. Srta. Ruiz.             |
| _____ 3. El libro está       | c. las cuatro.             |
| _____ 4. Éste es el libro    | d. a las cuatro.           |
| _____ 5. La película empieza | e. a casa.                 |
| _____ 6. No conozco          | f. en la casa de mi amigo. |
| _____ 7. Son                 | g. español.                |
| _____ 8. Van a traducirlo    | h. de español.             |
| _____ 9. Voy                 | i. al español.             |

**D** Indicate the correct order of the nouns in relation to their determiners.

1. ese / hombre

\_\_\_\_\_ es el padre de Carlos.  
(That man is Carlos's father.)

2. cualquiera / libro

Traiga un \_\_\_\_\_ a la reunión.  
(Bring any book to the meeting.)

3. cualquier / libro

Traiga \_\_\_\_\_ a la reunión.  
(Bring any book to the meeting.)

4. propio / negocio

Este es mi \_\_\_\_\_.  
(This is my own business.)

5. propio / negocio

Este es un \_\_\_\_\_ para esta comunidad.  
(This is an appropriate business for this community.)

6. única / mujer

Ella es la \_\_\_\_\_ en la oficina.  
(She's the only woman in the office.)

7. única / mujer

Ella es una \_\_\_\_\_.  
(She's a unique woman.)

8. cierto / problema

Hay \_\_\_\_\_ que tenemos que hablar.  
(There's a certain problem we have to talk about.)

# DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES

	MASCULINE		FEMININE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
-e	-e	-es	-e	-es
-ista	-ista	-istas	-ista	-istas
-or	-or	-ores	-ora	-oras
-ón	-ón	-ones	-ona	-onas
-ín	-ín	-ines	-ina	-inas
-z	-z	-ces	-z	-ces
any other consonant	consonant	-es	consonant	-es
-o	-o	-os	-a	-as

Review the forms in the chart above.

## Forms

In Spanish, descriptive adjectives generally are placed after the nouns they describe, and their endings change to agree with them in gender and number.

■ Many adjectives end in *-o* to describe masculine nouns and *-a* to describe feminine nouns. Their plurals end in *-os* and *-as*, respectively.

el hombre alto	<i>the tall man</i>
la mujer alta	<i>the tall woman</i>
el edificio alto	<i>the tall building</i>
la casa pequeña	<i>the small house</i>
los hombres altos	<i>the tall men</i>
las mujeres altas	<i>the tall women</i>
los edificios altos	<i>the tall buildings</i>
las casas pequeñas	<i>the small houses</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Be sure you know the gender of the noun, and make its adjectives match in gender and number.

A number of adjectives end in *-e* to describe both masculine and feminine nouns. Their plurals end in *-es*.

el muchacho inteligente	<i>the smart boy</i>
la muchacha inteligente	<i>the smart girl</i>
los muchachos inteligentes	<i>the smart boys</i>
las muchachas inteligentes	<i>the smart girls</i>

A number of adjectives end in *-ista* to describe both masculine and feminine nouns. Their plurals end in *-istas*.

el hombre optimista	<i>the optimistic man</i>
la mujer optimista	<i>the optimistic woman</i>
los hombres optimistas	<i>the optimistic men</i>
las mujeres optimistas	<i>the optimistic women</i>

A number of adjectives end in *-or* to describe masculine nouns. Their feminine counterparts end in *-ora*. Their plurals end in *-ores* and *-oras*, respectively.

el chico encantador	<i>the charming boy</i>
la chica encantadora	<i>the charming girl</i>
los chicos encantadores	<i>the charming boys</i>
las chicas encantadoras	<i>the charming girls</i>

Adjectives that end in *-ín* and *-ón* describe masculine nouns. Their feminine counterparts end in *-ina* and *-ona* (without accent marks), respectively.

Adjectives that end in other consonants have the same form to describe masculine and feminine nouns. Their plurals end in *-es*. (Note that a final *-z* changes to *-c-* in the plural. See pages 11 and 33.)

el lápiz azul	<i>the blue pencil</i>
la mujer joven	<i>the young woman</i>
la niña feliz	<i>the happy girl</i>
los lápices azules	<i>the blue pencils</i>
las mujeres jóvenes	<i>the young women</i>
las niñas felices	<i>the happy girls</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not assume that all masculine adjectives end in *-o* and all feminine adjectives end in *-a*.

- ✗ *inteligenta*
- ✗ *optimisto*
- ✗ *encantadoro*

■ When two adjectives describe a noun, they are connected by *y*.

la rosa roja y bonita	<i>the pretty red rose</i>
el estudiante listo y enérgico	<i>the smart, energetic student</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ *la bonita roja rosa*
- ✗ *el enérgico, inteligente estudiante*

When one adjective describes two nouns, the adjective is plural.

el coche y el camión nuevos	<i>the new car and truck</i>
la falda y la blusa caras	<i>the expensive skirt and blouse</i>
la casa y el jardín hermosos	<i>the beautiful house and garden</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use a singular adjective to describe more than one noun.

- ✗ *la casa y el jardín hermoso*
- ✗ *la falda y el vestido caro*

When two adjectives describe all components of a plural noun, both adjectives are plural.

las flores rojas y bonitas	<i>(both/all) the beautiful red flowers</i>
los estudiantes listos y enérgicos	<i>(both/all) the smart, energetic students</i>

When two separate items are described by two different adjectives, both adjectives are singular.

las rosas roja y amarilla	<i>both the red rose and the yellow one</i>
los coches blanco y azul	<i>both the white car and the blue one</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use a plural adjective to describe one component of a plural noun.

Use singular adjectives to express one red rose and one yellow one.

✗ las rosas rojas y amarillas

Use singular adjectives to express one white car and one blue one.

✗ los coches blancos y azules

■ While English nouns can function like adjectives when placed before other nouns, Spanish nouns must be preceded by a preposition in order to modify another noun.

un libro de español	<i>a Spanish book*</i>
una mesa de vidrio	<i>a glass table</i>
una bolsa de papel	<i>a paper bag</i>
una casa de adobe	<i>an adobe house</i>

\**Un libro de español* is a book for learning Spanish. *Un libro español* is a book written, manufactured, or published in Spain.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ una mesa vidrio

✗ una bolsa papel

✗ una casa adobe

## Adjective Position

The placement of descriptive adjectives varies in Spanish.

■ An adjective generally follows the noun it describes.

Adjectives of nationality and religion, as well as adjectives that classify a noun as part of a specific group, always follow the noun.

una mujer norteamericana	<i>a North American woman</i>
un hombre judío	<i>a Jewish man</i>
la cocina mexicana	<i>Mexican cuisine</i>
una casa de estilo colonial	<i>a colonial-style house</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ un judío hombre
- ✗ la mexicana cocina

Adjectives that describe a physical quality and distinguish the noun from others of its kind generally follow the noun.

el lápiz amarillo	<i>the yellow pencil</i>
la casa grande	<i>the big house</i>
el coche viejo	<i>the old car</i>
el pelo rizado	<i>the curly hair</i>
el muchacho guapo	<i>the cute boy</i>
la chica lista	<i>the smart girl</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ el amarillo lápiz
- ✗ el rizado pelo

■ When a descriptive adjective precedes a noun, it indicates that the quality is already known or inseparable from the noun. Compare the following examples.

las bonitas flores	<i>the beautiful flowers (all of which are beautiful)</i>
las flores bonitas	<i>the beautiful flowers (only the beautiful ones)</i>
las caras tiendas del barrio	<i>the expensive neighborhood stores (all of which are expensive)</i>
las tiendas caras del barrio	<i>the expensive neighborhood stores (only the expensive ones)</i>
mi nuevo novio	<i>my new boyfriend (whom you know about)</i>
mi novio nuevo	<i>my new boyfriend (not my old one)</i>

The adjectives *bueno* and *malo* are shortened when they immediately precede masculine singular nouns.

la buena muchacha	<i>the good girl (who is known to be good)</i>
el buen muchacho	<i>the good boy (who is known to be good)</i>
la mala mujer	<i>the bad woman (who is known to be bad)</i>
el mal hombre	<i>the bad man (who is known to be bad)</i>

The adjective *grande* is shortened before both masculine and feminine nouns, and it has a different meaning when placed before the noun. Compare the following examples.

la mujer grande	<i>the big woman</i>
la gran mujer	<i>the great woman</i>
el hombre grande	<i>the big man</i>
el gran hombre	<i>the great man</i>
la ciudad grande	<i>the big city</i>
la gran ciudad	<i>the great city</i>

The adjectives listed below also have slightly different meanings depending on whether they are placed before or after the noun. Compare the following examples.

la antigua capital	<i>the former capital city</i>
la capital antigua	<i>the very old capital city</i>
la tela de baja calidad	<i>the cloth of low quality</i>
la chica baja	<i>the short girl</i>
las dichosas llamadas	<i>the annoying calls</i>
las chicas dichosas	<i>the lucky girls</i>
diferentes maneras	<i>various ways</i>
maneras diferentes	<i>different ways</i>
distintos hombres	<i>various men</i>
hombres distintos	<i>different men</i>
el pobre muchacho	<i>the unfortunate boy</i>
el muchacho pobre	<i>the poor boy</i>
el raro pájaro	<i>the rare bird</i>
el pájaro raro	<i>the strange bird</i>
un simple error	<i>a mere error</i>
una casa simple	<i>a modest house</i>
mi viejo amigo	<i>my long-time friend</i>
mi amigo viejo	<i>my friend who's old</i>

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Make sure you don't call your best friend old!

## Usage

Descriptive adjectives can be used in different ways in a sentence.

■ In English, “the” plus an adjective plus “one(s)” distinguishes one or more persons or things from the others in a group. In Spanish, “one(s)” is not expressed.

la roja	<i>the red one</i>	los pequeños	<i>the small ones</i>
el grande	<i>the big one</i>	las últimas	<i>the last ones</i>

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ la roja una	✗ el grande uno
✗ los pequeños unos	✗ las últimas unas

Plural adjectives preceded by a definite article can be used as nouns that refer to an entire class.

los ricos	<i>the rich (ones)</i>
los orgullosos	<i>the proud (ones)</i>
los famosos	<i>the famous (ones)</i>
los ridículos	<i>the ridiculous (ones)</i>

■ An adjective can be used as the subject of a sentence by placing *lo* before it. (See pages 226–227.)

Lo bueno es que ella está contenta.	<i>The good thing (about it) is that she is happy.</i>
Lo malo es que vive muy lejos.	<i>The bad thing is that she lives so far away.</i>

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ la buena cosa	✗ la cosa mala
-----------------	----------------

*Lo* before an adjective can also indicate the intensity of the adjective. (See pages 226–227.)

No te imaginas lo difícil que es.	<i>You can't imagine how hard it is.</i>
Me habla de lo aburrido que está.	<i>He tells me how bored he is.</i>

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ como difícil que es	✗ como aburrido es
-----------------------	--------------------

■ The past participle of a verb (see page 122) can be used as an adjective. Its ending reflects the gender and number of the noun it modifies. Participles express different meanings, depending on whether they are used with *ser* or *estar*:

A sentence with *ser* plus a past participle gives information about how an action is done. A sentence with *estar* plus a past participle tells the result of an action.

La puerta es abierta por el guardia.	<i>The door is opened by the guard.</i>
La puerta está abierta.	<i>The door is open.</i>
La pareja va a ser casada por el cura.	<i>The couple is going to be married by the priest.</i>
La pareja está casada.	<i>The couple is married.</i>
Estas mesas son hechas en México.	<i>These tables are made in Mexico.</i>
Estas mesas están hechas.	<i>These tables are finished (already made).</i>
Los libros son publicados en este país.	<i>The books are published in this country.</i>
Los libros ya están publicados.	<i>The books are already published.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Remember that a participle used after *ser* or *estar* is an adjective, and its ending changes to agree with the noun it describes.

- ✗ La puerta está abierto.
- ✗ Estas mesas son hecho en México.

Adjectives generally express different meanings, depending on whether they are used with *ser* or *estar*. (See page 309.)

#### **abierto**

La muchacha es abierta.	<i>The girl is frank.</i>
La puerta está abierta.	<i>The door is open.</i>

#### **aburrido**

El maestro es aburrido.	<i>The teacher is boring.</i>
El maestro está aburrido.	<i>The teacher is bored.</i>

#### **alegre**

El niño es alegre.	<i>The child has a happy nature.</i>
El niño está alegre.	<i>The child is enjoying himself.</i>

#### **bajo**

Mi hermana es baja.	<i>My sister is short.</i>
Mi hermana está baja en la lista.	<i>My sister is way down on the list.</i>

**bonito**

Eres muy bonita.  
¡Estás muy bonita!

*You are a very pretty girl.  
You look pretty today!*

**callado**

La jefa es muy callada.  
La jefa está muy callada.

*The boss is not a big talker.  
The boss is very quiet today.*

**débil**

El joven es débil.  
El joven está débil.

*The boy is a weakling.  
The boy is in a weak condition.*

**despierto**

La mujer es despierta.  
La mujer está despierta.

*The woman is bright.  
The woman is awake.*

**divertido**

La chica es divertida.  
La chica está divertida.

*The girl is a lot of fun.  
The girl is having fun.*

**frío**

Esa mujer es fría.  
Esta comida está fría.

*That woman is unfeeling.  
This food is cold.*

**fuerte**

El actor es fuerte.  
El actor está fuerte.

*The actor is a strong man.  
The actor is in shape.*

**gordo**

Soy muy gorda.  
Estoy muy gorda.

*I'm very fat.  
I've gained a lot of weight.*

**listo**

El estudiante es listo.  
El estudiante está listo.

*The student is smart.  
The student is ready.*

**loco**

El pobre es loco.  
¡Estás loco!

*The poor guy is crazy.  
You must be crazy!*

**nervioso**

Soy nerviosa.  
Tengo un examen y estoy nerviosa.

*I'm a nervous person.  
I have an exam, and I'm nervous.*

**seguro**

Esta zona es segura.  
Ella está segura de lo que hace.

*This area is safe.  
She's sure about what she's doing.*

**verde**

Estas uvas son verdes.  
Estas uvas están verdes.

*These grapes are green.  
These grapes aren't ripe.*

**viejo**

Tú no eres viejo.

*You're not old.*

Tú estás viejo.

*You look old.***vivo**

Esa mujer es viva.

*That woman is "smart like a fox."*

Esa mujer está viva.

*That woman is alive.***AVOID THE *Blunder***

Use *ser* with an adjective to describe natural qualities. Use *estar* to indicate a present condition.

✗ Soy nervioso por el examen.

✗ La mujer no murió. Es viva.

✗ La puerta es abierta.

■ Certain adverbs used before an adjective make the adjective more or less intense.

un poco	medio	bastante	muy	demasiado	tan ____ que
				bien	
				sumamente	
				extremadamente	
				re-/reque-/requete-	

El coche es un poco caro.

*The car is a little expensive.*

La blusa es medio cara.

*The blouse is somewhat expensive.*

Los boletos son bastante caros.

*The tickets are quite expensive.*

Las clases son muy caras.

*The classes are very expensive.*

La universidad es demasiado cara.

*The university is extremely expensive.*

Ese restaurante es bien caro.

*That restaurant is very expensive.*Los libros son recaros/requecaros/  
requetecaros.*The books are really expensive.*Ese coche es tan caro que no  
lo puedo comprar.*That car is so expensive that  
I can't buy it./That car is too  
expensive.*Estoy tan cansada que no puedo  
caminar más.*I'm so tired that I can't walk any  
farther./I'm too tired to walk.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not change the endings of adverbs.

✗ una poca cara

✗ media cara

✗ bastantes caros

✗ demasiadas caras

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *mucho* before an adjective.

✗ mucho caro

✗ mucho viejo

*Demasiado* is often translated as “too”; however, it is better translated as “extremely” because it does not imply a negative result.

Ese coche es demasiado caro.

*That car is extremely expensive  
(no particular implication).*

Ese coche es muy caro y no lo  
puedo comprar / no lo quiero  
comprar.

*That car is too expensive and  
I can't buy it / I won't buy it.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *demasiado* to imply that you are not going to buy it.

✗ El vestido es demasiado caro.

Do not confuse *re-* before an adjective with *re-* before a verb. Before a verb *re-* means, as it does in English, “to do again.” Before an adjective it means “very.”

Tienes que reescribir la carta.  
Es una clase reaburrída.

*You have to rewrite the letter.  
It's a very boring class.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

*Frijoles refritos* are well known in English as “refried beans.” However, rather than being “refried,” they are actually “well fried.”

■ To indicate the opinion of the speaker or writer, adjectives that end in a vowel can be intensified by dropping the final vowel and adding *-ísimo, -ísima, -ísimos, -ísimas*.

la carta importantísima	<i>the extremely important letter</i>
el actor guapísimo	<i>the gorgeous actor</i>

After the final vowel has been dropped, some consonants change before adding *-ísimo*:

- If the final consonant is *c*, it changes to *qu* before *-ísimo* (see page 10).

el maestro simpatiquísimo	<i>the really nice teacher</i>
la comida riquísima	<i>the delicious meal</i>

- If the final consonant is *g*, it changes to *gu* before *-ísimo* (see page 10).

la película larguísima	<i>the very long movie</i>
------------------------	----------------------------

Adjectives that end in *-ble* add an *i* between the *b* and the *l*.

la mujer amabilísima	<i>the really, really nice woman</i>
el hombre notabilísimo	<i>the very distinguished man</i>

For adjectives that end in *-l*, add *-ísimo, -ísima, -ísimos, -ísimas*.

la lección facilísima	<i>the really easy lesson</i>
el curso difícilísimo	<i>the very difficult course/academic year</i>

For adjectives that end in *-n*, add *-císimo, -císima, -císimos, -císimas*.

el jefe jovencísimo	<i>the very young boss</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

If the final consonant is *z*, it changes to *c* before *-ísimo* (see page 11).

el animal ferocísimo	<i>the very fierce animal</i>
la niña felicísima	<i>the extremely happy child</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ jovenísimo	✗ ricísimo	✗ simpaticísimo
✗ felizísimo	✗ ferozísimo	✗ terribilísimo

- Descriptive adjectives can be used with *más* — *que* and *menos* — *que* to compare people or things.

Este coche es más caro que ese.	<i>This car is more expensive than that one.</i>
---------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

Ese coche es menos caro que este.	<i>That car is less expensive than this one.</i>
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

María es más alta que yo.  
Yo soy menos alta que María.

*María is taller than I am.  
I'm not as tall as María.*

Los zapatos blancos son más bonitos que los negros.

*The white shoes are prettier than the black ones.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Always compare subjects with subjects, and possessives with possessives.

✗ *María es más alta que mi.*

There are four irregular comparative forms: *mejor*, *peor*, *mayor*, and *menor*.

Esteban es mejor que Pablo.  
Pablo es peor que Esteban.

*Esteban is better than Pablo.  
Pablo is worse than Esteban.*

Esteban y Pablo son mejores que los otros.

*Esteban and Pablo are better than the others.*

Los otros son peores que Esteban y Pablo.

*The others are worse than Esteban and Pablo.*

Esteban es mayor que Pablo.  
Pablo es menor que Esteban.

*Esteban is older than Pablo.  
Pablo is younger than Esteban.*

Esteban y Ricardo son mayores que Pablo.

*Esteban and Ricardo are older than Pablo.*

Pablo y Juan son menores que Esteban.

*Pablo and Juan are younger than Esteban.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *más bueno* unless you mean that Esteban is more saintly.

✗ *Esteban es más bueno que Pablo.*

Do not use *más malo* unless you mean that Pablo is more diabolical.

✗ *Pablo es más malo que Esteban.*

*Mayor* can mean *más grande* and, when it refers to people, *más viejo*.  
*Menor* can mean *más pequeño* and, when it refers to people, *más joven*.

Ella va con su hermana mayor.  
Ella es menor que su hermana.

*She's going with her older sister.  
She is younger than her sister.*

- Descriptive adjectives can be used with *tan* \_\_\_\_ *como* to show equality between people or things.

Tu libro es tan caro como el mío.	<i>Your book is as expensive as mine.</i>
Tus libros son tan caros como los míos.	<i>Your books are as expensive as mine.</i>
Esta computadora es tan ligera como la otra.	<i>This computer is as light as the other one.</i>
Estas son tan buenas como esas.	<i>These are as good as those.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *que* in place of *como*.

✗ tan caro que el otro

Do not forget the article before a possessive.

✗ tan caro como mío

✗ tan buenas como tuyas

- Descriptive adjectives can be used to single out people or things as superlative.

Ese es mi mayor problema.	<i>That's my biggest problem.</i>
Ese es su mejor vestido.	<i>That is her best dress.</i>
Es la ciudad más bella del mundo.	<i>It's the most beautiful city in the world.</i>
Este coche es el más caro de todos.	<i>This car is the most expensive of all.</i>
Julia es la más alta de todas las chicas.	<i>Julia is the tallest of the girls.</i>
Esteban es el mejor de la clase.	<i>Esteban is the best (one) in the class.</i>
Julia es la más alta del grupo.	<i>Julia is the tallest (one) in the group.</i>
Mario y Juanita son los mejores de la escuela.	<i>Mario and Juanita are the best in the school.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *en* in place of *de*.

✗ más grande en el mundo

✗ la más bonita en el mundo

✗ los mejores en la clase

## Exercises

**A** Complete the chart below with the feminine equivalent of the masculine noun phrase, and the masculine equivalent of the feminine noun phrase.

MASCULINE	FEMININE
1. el chico interesante	_____
2. _____	la mujer optimista
3. los jóvenes encantadores	_____
4. _____	las niñas felices
5. _____	la muchacha alta

**B** Write the correct form and order of the Spanish nouns and adjectives for each English phrase.

1. hermoso / pequeño / casa

\_\_\_\_\_

(the pretty little house)

2. nuevo / blusa / falda

\_\_\_\_\_

(the new blouse and skirt)

3. azul / bonito / zapatos

\_\_\_\_\_

(the pretty blue shoes)

4. rojo / blanco / blusas

\_\_\_\_\_

(the red blouse and the white blouse)

**C** Circle the noun-adjective combination that reflects the English meaning.

1. This is the new car I told you about.

Éste es mi **coche nuevo** | **nuevo coche**.

2. The professor is a great man.

El profesor es un **hombre grande** | **gran hombre**.

3. These are the ruins of the former city.

Éstas son las ruinas de la **ciudad antigua** | **antigua ciudad**.

4. The girl comes from a poor family.

La chica es de una **familia pobre** | **pobre familia**.

5. Yesterday I saw my old friend, Mateo.

Ayer vi a mi **amigo viejo** | **viejo amigo**, Mateo.

**D** Write the Spanish equivalent of the following English expressions.

1. the green one \_\_\_\_\_
2. the big ones \_\_\_\_\_
3. the good thing \_\_\_\_\_
4. the interesting thing \_\_\_\_\_
5. the interesting ones \_\_\_\_\_

**E** Write *es* or *está* in the blank before each adjective to reflect the English meaning.

1. El niño \_\_\_\_\_ listo.  
*The child is smart.*
2. La estudiante \_\_\_\_\_ aburrida.  
*The student is bored.*
3. La muchacha \_\_\_\_\_ alegre.  
*The girl has a happy nature.*
4. El chico \_\_\_\_\_ divertido.  
*The boy is a lot of fun.*
5. El dormitorio \_\_\_\_\_ grande.  
*The bedroom is big.*
6. La mujer \_\_\_\_\_ gorda.  
*The woman has gained weight.*
7. El jefe \_\_\_\_\_ seguro de eso.  
*The boss is sure about that.*
8. La niña \_\_\_\_\_ nerviosa.  
*She's a nervous child.*

**F** Write the Spanish equivalent of the English expressions in parentheses.

1. Samuel es \_\_\_\_\_ enérgico. (*very*)
2. Martín es \_\_\_\_\_ perezoso. (*a little*)
3. Diego es \_\_\_\_\_ listo. (*extremely*)
4. Enrique es list \_\_\_\_\_ . (*extremely*)
5. Jorge es \_\_\_\_\_ .  
(*the tallest boy in the class*)
6. Ana es \_\_\_\_\_ .  
(*more energetic than Esteban*)
7. Marta es nervios \_\_\_\_\_ . (*extremely nervous*)
8. Susana es \_\_\_\_\_ .  
(*the most serious girl in the school*)

# VERBS

## the infinitive

Verbs are listed in the dictionary in their basic form, the infinitive. The Spanish infinitive is not equivalent to the English infinitive, “to” plus the basic verb. It is simply the basic verb.

The infinitive ending, *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir*, indicates how the verb is conjugated. Each infinitive ending has a different conjugation pattern in each tense.

### Additional Information in the Dictionary

Most dictionaries provide additional information about a verb.

- One or two vowels in parentheses after the infinitive indicate the verb's stem changes in the present tense and present subjunctive (see page 161). *-Ir* verbs of this type also have a second vowel in parentheses, which indicates the verb's stem changes in the preterite, the gerund, the imperfect subjunctive, and the *nosotros* and *vosotros* forms of the present subjunctive (see page 161).
- An infinitive with *-se* attached after the *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir* ending indicates that the verb must always be accompanied by a reflexive pronoun (see pages 103 and 208–214).

### Constructions with the Infinitive

#### Conjugated Verb + Infinitive

Certain verbs may be immediately followed by the infinitive form of another verb. Following are some examples.

deber	<i>be obligated to</i>	preferir (ie, i)	<i>prefer to</i>
esperar	<i>hope to</i>	querer (ie)	<i>want to</i>
necesitar	<i>need to</i>	saber	<i>know how to</i>
pensar (ie)	<i>plan to</i>	encantar	<i>love to</i> (see page 106)
poder (ue)	<i>be able to</i>	gustar	<i>like to</i> (see page 106)

Debes pagar la multa.	<i>You have to pay the fine.</i>
Esperamos visitar los museos.	<i>We hope to visit the museums.</i>
Piensan salir temprano.	<i>They're planning to leave early.</i>
No puedo ir contigo.	<i>I am not able to/can't go with you.</i>
Prefiere vivir solo.	<i>He prefers to live alone.</i>
Quiero dormir.	<i>I want to sleep.</i>
Mi hermano no sabe manejar.	<i>My brother doesn't know how to drive.</i>
No le gusta bailar.	<i>She doesn't like to dance.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not add *a* before the infinitive after these verbs.

- |                                        |                                       |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>X</b> Quiero <i>a</i> dormir.       | <b>X</b> Prefiere <i>a</i> vivir.     |
| <b>X</b> Necesitan <i>a</i> descansar. | <b>X</b> No le gusta <i>a</i> bailar. |

## Preposition + Infinitive

In English, certain prepositions are followed by the infinitive form of a verb ("to" + verb), and others are followed by a verb in the "-ing" form. In Spanish, a verb that follows a preposition is always in the infinitive form.

Mis padres vienen <b>a comer</b> con nosotros.	<i>My parents are coming <b>to eat</b> with us.</i>
Fue a la biblioteca <b>para estudiar</b> .	<i>He went to the library <b>to study</b>.</i>
Diego lleva dos meses <b>sin trabajar</b> .	<i>Diego has gone two months <b>without working</b>.</i>
Están cansados <b>de esperar</b> .	<i>They're tired <b>of waiting</b>.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- |                         |                                |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>X</b> sin trabajando | <b>X</b> cansados de esperando |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|

## Conjugated Verb + Preposition + Infinitive

Many common verb + preposition combinations are followed by an infinitive in Spanish.

<b>+ a</b>			
aprender a	<i>learn to</i>	empezar (ie) a	<i>begin to, start to</i>
ayudar a	<i>help to</i>	ir a	<i>be going to</i>
comenzar (ie) a	<i>begin to, start to</i>	volver (ue) a	<i>_____ again</i>

**+ de**

acabar de	<i>have just _____ed</i>
deber de	<i>must be _____ing</i>
dejar de	<i>stop _____ing</i>
haber de	<i>have to</i>
tratar de	<i>try to</i>

**+ en**

insistir en	<i>keep on _____ing</i>
pensar (ie) en	<i>concentrate on _____ing</i>
empeñarse en	<i>be determined to</i>

**+ para**

ofrecerse para	<i>offer to</i>
----------------	-----------------

**+ que\***

haber que	<i>be necessary to</i>
tener que	<i>have to</i>

\**Que* acts like a preposition after *haber* and *tener*.

Está aprendiendo a cocinar.	<i>She's learning to cook.</i>
Empiezo/Comienzo a trabajar el lunes.	<i>I start working on Monday.</i>
Vamos a hacer una fiesta el viernes.	<i>We're going to have a party on Friday.</i>
Mintió y volvió a mentir.	<i>She lied and she lied again.</i>
Acaba de terminar el trabajo.	<i>She has just finished the paper.</i>
Debe de estar en la oficina.	<i>He must be at the office.</i>
Dejó de fumar el año pasado.	<i>He stopped smoking last year.</i>
He de hacerlo por mi madre.	<i>I have to do it for my mother's sake.</i>
Insiste en llamarme cada noche.	<i>He keeps on calling me every night.</i>
Sólo piensa en estudiar medicina.	<i>All she thinks about is studying medicine.</i>
Ella se ofreció a recogernos.	<i>She offered to pick us up.</i>
Hay que leer mucho en ese curso.	<i>You have to read a lot in that course.</i>
Tenemos que ir a casa.	<i>We have to go home.</i>

Two or more expressions of this type can be used in sequence, following an initial conjugated verb.

Voy a tener que empezar a trabajar.	<i>I'm going to have to start working.</i>
Acaba de aprender a nadar.	<i>She just learned to swim.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not leave out the preposition.

- ✗ Aprende cocinar.
- ✗ Empiezo trabajar.
- ✗ Tenemos ir.

### **Ver and oír + Infinitive**

The infinitive follows the verbs *ver* and *oír* to refer to the object's action.

Vi entrar al profesor.

*I saw the teacher walk in.*

Anoche oímos a Sara tocar  
el piano.

*Last night we heard Sara play  
the piano.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not forget the *a* to indicate that the direct object is a person.

- ✗ Vi entrar el profesor.
- ✗ Oímos Sara tocar el piano.

## **Other Uses of the Infinitive**

### **Expressing Orders**

As an alternative to the subjunctive, the infinitive can be used after verbs that allow, order, demand, force, prevent, or prohibit another's action. (See page 168 for the use of the subjunctive.) Following are some typical verbs of this type.

aconsejar	<i>advise</i>	dejar	<i>allow</i>
recomendar (ie)	<i>recommend</i>	permitir	<i>allow</i>
sugerir (ie, i)	<i>suggest</i>	impedir (i, i)	<i>prevent</i>
decir (i)	<i>tell</i>	prohibir	<i>prohibit</i>
exigir	<i>demand</i>		
hacer	<i>make, cause</i>		

El profesor le exigió disculparse.

*The teacher demanded that she  
apologize.*

Mi mamá nos hizo limpiar la casa.

*My mom made us clean the  
house.*

El maestro nos dejó salir.  
 El guardia le permitió hacer una llamada.  
 Sus padres les impidieron verse.  
 Mi tío me prohibió hablar con mi amiga.

*The teacher let us leave.  
 The guard let him make a call.  
 Their parents prevented them from seeing one another.  
 My uncle prohibited me from talking to my friend.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use English word order. Use indirect object pronouns with these verbs.

- ✗ El maestro no dejó nos salir.
- ✗ El guardia permitió lo hacer una llamada.
- ✗ Mi mamá hizo nos limpiar la casa.

Do not add prepositions.

- ✗ El maestro nos dejó a salir.
- ✗ El guardia le permitió a hacer una llamada.

## Expressing Subjects

The infinitive can be used as a noun.

It can be the subject of a sentence; the masculine article *el* is optional.

(El) vivir en la ciudad puede ser peligroso.  
 Querer es poder.  
 Caminar sola por la noche no es buena idea.

*Living in the city can be dangerous.  
 Wanting to is being able to.  
 Walking alone at night isn't a good idea.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Viviendo en la ciudad es peligroso.
- ✗ Caminando sola no es buena idea.
- ✗ Queriendo es pudiendo.

The infinitive is used after *al* to indicate two simultaneous actions.

Al ver el océano, me sentí contenta.  
 Recordó el nombre al llegar a casa.

*When I saw the ocean, I felt happy.  
 He remembered the name as soon as he got home.*

## Describing Activities

As in English, Spanish uses an infinitive directly after an adjective to describe an activity.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** “be” + adjective + infinitive

**SPANISH PATTERN** *ser* + adjective + infinitive

Es fácil leer este libro.

*It's easy to read this book.*

Será difícil encontrarlo.

*It will be difficult to find him.*

## Describing Nouns

To describe a noun, an infinitive follows an adjective + *de*.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** noun + “be” + adjective + infinitive

**SPANISH PATTERN** noun + *ser* + adjective + *de* + infinitive

Este libro es fácil de leer.

*This book is easy to read.*

Él será difícil de encontrar.

*He will be difficult to find.*

## Expressing Commands

The infinitive is often used to give commands to the general public.

No fumar.

*No smoking.*

No pisar el césped.

*Do not walk on the grass.*

No entrar.

*Do not enter.*

## Exercise

**A** Use an infinitive construction to write the Spanish equivalent of each of the following English sentences.

1. We have to study more. \_\_\_\_\_
2. She wrote the exercise again. \_\_\_\_\_
3. They want to stop smoking. \_\_\_\_\_
4. We love to go shopping. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I saw the boss leave. \_\_\_\_\_
6. She made me work. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Knowing how to ride a bike is important in this city.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. He has just arrived. \_\_\_\_\_
9. It's hard to study here. \_\_\_\_\_
10. These books are easy to understand.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# VERBS

## types of verbs

Spanish verbs can be subdivided into several categories according to their usage with or without object nouns and pronouns.

### Intransitive Verbs

Intransitive verbs in Spanish, like intransitive verbs in English, have no object.

**PATTERN** subject + verb (+ adverb or prepositional phrase)

Typical intransitive verbs follow.

caminar	<i>walk</i>	llorar	<i>cry</i>
correr	<i>run</i>	nadar	<i>swim</i>
ir	<i>go</i>	salir	<i>leave (go out)</i>

Eva corre.

*Eva runs.*

Eva corre rápido.

*Eva runs fast.*

Eva corre en el parque.

*Eva runs in the park.*

El niño lloró.

*The child cried.*

El niño lloró mucho.

*The child cried a lot.*

El niño lloró en los brazos  
de su mamá.

*The child cried in his mother's  
arms.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use object pronouns when there is no object.

✗ El niño lo lloró.

✗ Eva lo corre en el parque.

Do not use reflexive pronouns with verbs that do not have -se attached to the infinitive.

✗ Eva se corre.



**PATTERN 1** subject + verb + direct object noun  
(+ adverb or prepositional phrase)

Germán llamaba a su papá todas las noches.

*Germán called his dad every night.*

Germán llamó el número equivocado.

*Germán called the wrong number.*

Vamos a ver la película.

*We're going to watch the movie.*

Vamos a ver a la profesora.

*We're going to see the teacher.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

When the direct object is a person or people, do not forget to precede it with the “personal *a*.”

✗ Germán llama su papá.

✗ Vamos a ver la profesora.

Several common transitive verbs are translated into English using a verb followed by a preposition (see page 215). These verbs are normally not followed by a preposition in Spanish. However, when the direct object is a person or people, the “personal *a*” is required.

buscar *look for*  
escuchar *listen to*

esperar *wait for*  
mirar *look at*

Estoy buscando un libro interesante.

*I'm looking for an interesting book.*

Estoy buscando a mi hijo.

*I'm looking for my son.*

Roberto escucha la música.

*Roberto listens to the music.*

Roberto escucha a la profesora.

*Roberto listens to the teacher.*

Esperamos el autobús.

*We're waiting for the bus.*

Esperamos a los niños.

*We're waiting for the children.*

Las chicas miran los zapatos.

*The girls are looking at the shoes.*

Las chicas miran a los chicos.

*The girls are looking at the boys.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Estoy buscando por un libro.

✗ Roberto escucha a la música.

✗ Estoy buscando para mi hijo.

✗ Las chicas miran a los zapatos.

✗ Esperamos por el autobús.

**PATTERN 2** (subject) + direct object pronoun + verb  
(+ adverb or prepositional phrase)

Germán lo llamó dos veces.	<i>Germán called it (the number) two times.</i>
Germán lo llamó anoche.	<i>Germán called him (his father) last night.</i>
Vamos a verla.	<i>We're going to see it (the movie).</i>
Vamos a verla.	<i>We're going to see her (the teacher).</i>

**AVOID THE** *Blunder*

Do not use *a* + object pronoun (*a él, a ella, a mí, a nosotros*) for direct objects that refer to people. Use the direct object pronoun instead, and place it before the verb.

✗ Germán llama a él.

✗ Vamos a ver a ella.

## “Exchange” Verbs

Certain transitive verbs have both a direct and an indirect object. These verbs indicate an exchange of something (the direct object) from the subject to another person (the indirect object). Contrary to English usage, the indirect object pronoun must always appear before the conjugated verb in Spanish, even if it is also otherwise named. Typical “exchange” verbs follow.

dar	<i>give</i>	decir (i)	<i>tell</i>
entregar	<i>hand to, deliver</i>	contar (ue)	<i>tell, relate</i>
mostrar (ue)	<i>show</i>	enviar	<i>send</i>
demonstrar (ue)	<i>demonstrate</i>	mandar	<i>send</i>
enseñar	<i>teach, show</i>	pedir (i, i)	<i>ask for</i>

**PATTERN 1** (subject) + indirect object pronoun + verb  
(+ direct object noun (+ *a* + indirect object))

Miguel me da el dinero (a mí).	<i>Miguel gives me the money.</i>
Norman te muestra las fotos (a ti).	<i>Norman shows you the pictures.</i>

**PATTERN 2** (subject) + indirect object pronoun  
(+ direct object pronoun + verb (+ *a* + indirect object))

Miguel me lo da (a mí).	<i>Miguel gives it to me.</i>
Norman te las muestra (a ti).	<i>Norman shows them to you.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not leave out the indirect object pronoun before the verb.

- ✗ Miguel da el dinero a mí.
- ✗ Miguel lo da a mí.
- ✗ Norman muestra las fotos a ti.
- ✗ Norman las muestra a ti.

## Verbs of Feeling

Certain verbs require an indirect object pronoun but do not have a direct object (see pages 220–223). Typical verbs of this type follow.

encantar	<i>enchant</i>	gustar	<i>please, appeal to</i>
faltar	<i>lack</i>	molestar	<i>bother</i>
fascinar	<i>fascinate</i>		

**PATTERN** (A + noun/pronoun) + indirect object pronoun  
+ verb + subject

A mí me falta el tiempo.	<i>I don't have time. (Time is lacking to me.)</i>
A Alejandro le fascina la película.	<i>The movie fascinates Alejandro.</i>
¿Te gustan mis zapatos nuevos?	<i>Do you like my new shoes? (Do my new shoes appeal to you?)</i>
A él le molestan los mosquitos.	<i>Mosquitoes annoy him.</i>

In English, when the subject is not stated, it is replaced by a pronoun. In Spanish, the subject pronoun (*él, ella, ellos*) may be used if the subject is a person or people. If the subject is a thing, no pronoun is used.

A Alejandro le fascina Ana.	<i>Ana fascinates Alejandro.</i>
A Alejandro le fascina (ella).	<i>She fascinates Alejandro.</i>
A Alejandro le fascina la película.	<i>The movie fascinates Alejandro.</i>
A Alejandro le fascina.	<i>It fascinates Alejandro.</i>
¿Te gustan mis zapatos?	<i>Do you like my shoes?</i>
¿Te gustan?	<i>Do you like them? (Do they appeal to you?)</i>
A él le molestan los mosquitos.	<i>Mosquitoes bother him.</i>
A él le molestan.	<i>They bother him.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use direct object pronouns with these verbs to translate “it” or “them.” Keep in mind that it is the subject (“it” or “they”) that “sends the feeling” to the indirect object.

✗ A él le molestan los.

✗ ¿Te los gustan?

The subjects of sentences of this type often occur after the verb, whereas in English the usual position of the subject is before the verb.

Me gustan los zapatos rojos.

*The red shoes appeal to me.*

Le molesta el tráfico.

*Traffic bothers him.*

In English, an article is not used with plural and noncount nouns when they are used in a general sense. In Spanish, an article must be used before a noun subject, whether it is singular, plural, or noncount.

Me gusta el chocolate.

*I like chocolate. (Chocolate appeals to me.)*

Me gustan los chocolates.

*I like chocolates. (Chocolates appeal to me.)*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not leave out the article before the subject.

✗ Me gusta chocolate.

✗ Me gustan chocolates.

## Verbs Indicating Advice or Control

Certain verbs that indicate advice or control over the actions of others are preceded by an indirect object pronoun and followed by a clause in the subjunctive (see pages 167–168 and 188–189).

**PATTERN** subject clause + indirect object pronoun + verb  
(+ *a* + noun/pronoun) + *que* + subjunctive clause

La maestra les aconseja a los  
estudiantes que estudien.

*The teacher advises the students  
to study.*

Los padres le prohíben al chico  
que vea la televisión.

*The parents don't allow the child  
to watch television.*

## Verbs Indicating Unplanned Occurrences

Certain verbs indicate unplanned occurrences (see pages 224–225). Typical verbs of this type follow.

acabársele    *end, run out of*  
 caérsele      *fall*  
 olvidársele   *forget*

perdérsele (ie)   *lose*  
 quedársele      *remain*  
 rompérsele      *break*

(A mí) se me olvidó el libro.

*I forgot my book. (The book forgot itself, and it is affecting me.)*

A Pedro se le perdió la llave.

*Pedro lost his key. (The key lost itself, and it is affecting Pedro.)*

A Jorge se le quedaron los cuadernos en el coche.

*Jorge left the notebooks in the car. (The notebooks stayed in the car, and it is affecting Jorge.)*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use a possessive adjective before the noun with these verbs.

✗ Se me olvidó mi libro.

✗ Se le perdió su llave.

✗ Se le quedaron sus cuadernos.

## Exercise

**A** *Underline the main verb in each of the following sentences, then indicate which of the following is the appropriate category for the verb. (Hint: There are three verbs in each category.)*

- a. Intransitive verbs (with no object)
  - b. Verbs with a reflexive pronoun only
  - c. Verbs with a direct object (noun or pronoun) only
  - d. Verbs that indicate an exchange, with both an indirect object pronoun and a direct object
  - e. Verbs that indicate a person's feelings, with an indirect object pronoun
  - f. Verbs that indicate advice or control over another person's actions, with an indirect object pronoun and a subjunctive clause
  - g. Verbs that indicate unplanned occurrences, with reflexive and indirect object pronouns
1. ¿A qué hora sales? \_\_\_\_\_
  2. Me levanto temprano. \_\_\_\_\_
  3. Los chicos caminan en el parque. \_\_\_\_\_
  4. Sara llama a su mamá. \_\_\_\_\_
  5. Ella me cuenta sus ideas. \_\_\_\_\_
  6. Marcos se queja mucho. \_\_\_\_\_
  7. La profesora nos las envía. \_\_\_\_\_
  8. Se le pierden las llaves. \_\_\_\_\_
  9. Le encantan las chicas. \_\_\_\_\_
  10. Se lo da a su jefe. \_\_\_\_\_
  11. Se me olvida el nombre. \_\_\_\_\_
  12. Mi amigo me visita los sábados. \_\_\_\_\_
  13. Les dice que trabajen. \_\_\_\_\_
  14. Se nos acaba la gasolina. \_\_\_\_\_
  15. Les fascina el teatro. \_\_\_\_\_
  16. Los jugadores se lastiman mucho. \_\_\_\_\_
  17. Me gusta mucho el cuento. \_\_\_\_\_
  18. Te aconsejo que estudies. \_\_\_\_\_
  19. Me sugiere que escriba más. \_\_\_\_\_
  20. Te quiero mucho. \_\_\_\_\_
  21. Todos vamos en el coche. \_\_\_\_\_

# VERBS

## the indicative mood

The indicative mood is used to indicate that the action or condition stated by the verb is an objective fact.

# VERBS

## the present tense

### Tense Formation

Stem (infinitive minus -ar/-er/-ir) + endings

### Tense Endings

#### **-ar** VERBS

yo	-o	nosotros(-as)	-amos
tú	-as	vosotros(-as)	-áis
usted/él/ella	-a		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-an		

#### **-er** VERBS

yo	-o	nosotros(-as)	-emos
tú	-es	vosotros(-as)	-éis
usted/él/ella	-e		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-en		

#### **-ir** VERBS

yo	-o	nosotros(-as)	-imos
tú	-es	vosotros(-as)	-ís
usted/él/ella	-e		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-en		

#### VERBS THAT END IN **-uir**

<b>huir</b>		<b>construir</b>	
huyo	huimos	construyo	construimos
huyes	huís	construyes	construís
huye		construye	
huyen		construyen	

## Verbs with Irregular *yo* Forms

<b>dar</b>	doy	<b>decir</b>	digo	<b>poner</b>	pongo
<b>estar</b>	estoy	<b>hacer</b>	hago	<b>tener</b>	tengo
<b>ir</b>	voy	<b>oír</b>	oigo	<b>venir</b>	vengo
		<b>traer</b>	traigo	<b>salir</b>	salgo

Also, verbs that end in *-cer*, for example:

<b>conocer</b>	conozco
<b>parecer</b>	parezco

Also, verbs that end in *-ger/-gír*, for example:

<b>dirigir</b>	dirijo
<b>recoger</b>	recojo

## Stem-changing Verb Patterns

With these verbs, the last vowel in the stem is replaced by another vowel or vowels in the forms for *yo*, *tú*, *usted/él/ella*, and *ustedes/ellos/ellas*. The change is normally indicated in a dictionary by an annotation after the infinitive. The stem does not change in the forms for *nosotros(-as)* and *vosotros(-as)*. An example is given below for each stem-changing pattern.

### **-ar VERBS**

<b>e &gt; ie</b>		<b>o &gt; ue</b>		<b>u &gt; ue</b>	
<b>pensar (ie)</b>		<b>almorzar (ue)</b>		<b>jugar (ue)</b>	
pienso	pensamos	almuerzo	almorzamos	juego	jugamos
piensas	pensáis	almuerzas	almorzáis	juegas	jugáis
piensa		almuerza		juega	
piensan		almuerzan		juegan	

### **-er VERBS**

<b>e &gt; ie</b>		<b>e &gt; ie</b>		<b>o &gt; ue</b>	
<b>perder (ie)</b>		<b>tener (ie)</b>		<b>poder (ue)</b>	
pierdo	perdemos	tengo	tenemos	puedo	podemos
pierdes	perdéis	tienes	tenéis	puedes	podéis
pierde		tiene		puede	
pierden		tienen		pueden	

### **-ir VERBS**

<b>e &gt; ie</b>		<b>e &gt; ie</b>		<b>o &gt; ue</b>	
<b>sentir (ie, i)</b>		<b>venir (ie, i)</b>		<b>dormir (ue, u)</b>	
siento	sentimos	vengo	venimos	duermo	dormimos
sientes	sentís	vienes	venís	duermes	dormís
siente		viene		duerme	
sienten		vienen		duermen	

<b>e &gt; i</b>		<b>e &gt; i</b>	
<b>pedir</b> (i, i)		<b>decir</b> (i, i)	
pido	pedimos	digo	decimos
pides	pedís	dices	decís
pide		dice	
piden		dicen	

## Gerunds

### -ar VERBS

No stem change

	<b>hablar</b>	<b>pensar</b>	<b>almorzar</b>	<b>jugar</b>
Stem + -ando	hablando	pensando	almorzando	jugando

### -er VERBS

No stem change

	<b>comer</b>	<b>perder</b>	<b>volver</b>
Stem + -iendo	comiendo	perdiendo	volviendo
	<b>leer</b>	<b>creer</b>	<b>caer</b>
Stem ending in vowel + -yendo	leyendo	creyendo	cayendo

### -ir VERBS

Stem change as indicated below

	<b>abrir</b>	<b>partir</b>	<b>vivir</b>
Stem + -iendo	abriendo	partiendo	viviendo
	<b>construir</b>	<b>oír</b>	
Stem ending in vowel + -yendo	construyendo	oyendo	

All -ir verbs that have stem changes in the present tense have stem changes in the gerund. These changes are indicated by the second annotation after the infinitive.

<b>e &gt; i</b>	<b>sentir</b> (ie, i)	<b>venir</b> (ie, i)
	sintiendo	viniendo
<b>o &gt; u</b>	<b>dormir</b> (ue, u)	<b>morir</b> (ue, u)
	durmiendo	muriendo
<b>e &gt; i</b>	<b>servir</b> (i, i)	<b>decir</b> (i, i)
	sirviendo	diciendo

Review the forms on the preceding pages.

Spanish tenses express a different range of meanings than similarly named English tenses.

## Uses of the Present Tense

The present tense is used with certain time expressions.

ahora	<i>now</i>	esta semana	<i>this week</i>
en este momento	<i>at the moment</i>	este mes	<i>this month</i>
actualmente	<i>currently</i>	este semestre	<i>this semester</i>
hoy	<i>today</i>	este año	<i>this year</i>
esta mañana	<i>this morning</i>	estos días	<i>these days</i>
esta tarde	<i>this afternoon</i>		
esta noche	<i>tonight</i>		

## Stating Facts

The Spanish present tense, like the present tense in English, is used to state facts about the present.

Soy responsable.	<i>I'm responsible.</i>
Tenemos los boletos.	<i>We have the tickets.</i>
Perú está en Sudamérica.	<i>Peru is in South America.</i>
Viven en Nueva York.	<i>They live in New York.</i>

## Describing Usual Action

The Spanish present tense, like the present tense in English, is used to describe usual action.

Trabajo a las nueve los lunes.	<i>I work at nine o'clock on Mondays.</i>
Come después de las clases.	<i>She eats after school.</i>
Vamos a la playa en el verano.	<i>We go to the beach in the summer.</i>
Llevan sus paraguas cuando llueve.	<i>They take their umbrellas when it rains.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Be sure to use the correct verb ending to correspond with the subject of the sentence. When the subject is not stated, the conjugated ending of the verb acts as the subject of the sentence.

## Describing Action in Progress

The Spanish present tense, unlike the present tense in English, can be used to describe action in progress, that is, action that has begun but has not finished.

A progressive construction, formed by conjugating *estar* in the present tense and adding a verb in the gerund form (ending in *-ndo*), can be used as an alternative; this is comparable to the English present progressive. (Review the gerund forms on page 113.)

**ENGLISH PATTERN** “be” + “\_\_\_\_\_ing”

**SPANISH PATTERN** present tense of *estar*  
+ \_\_\_\_\_*ando* OR \_\_\_\_\_*iendo/yendo*

¿Qué haces?	}	<i>What are you doing?</i>
¿Qué estás haciendo?		
Trabajo ahora.	}	<i>I'm working.</i>
Estoy trabajando.		
¿Adónde van?*		<i>Where are you all going?</i>
Come en este momento.	}	<i>She's eating.</i>
Está comiendo.		
Llevan sus paraguas.	}	<i>They're carrying their umbrellas.</i>
Están llevando sus paraguas.		

\*The progressive form of *ir* (*yendo*) is not used in this construction.

AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ ¿Adónde estás yendo?

The gerund is also used after a conjugated form of the verbs *andar*, *ir*, and *seguir*.

Mi prima anda diciendo mentiras.	<i>My cousin goes around telling lies.</i>
El chico va cantando por la calle.	<i>The boy goes down the street singing.</i>
Las chicas siguen bailando.	<i>The girls keep on dancing.</i>

The Spanish present tense, unlike the present tense in English, is used to tell how long a current action has been taking place.

**ENGLISH PATTERNS** “have/has” + past participle + “for”  
+ period of time  
“have/has” + “been \_\_\_\_\_ing” + “for”  
+ period of time

**SPANISH PATTERN 1** present tense of *llevar* + period of time + gerund

Llevo dos años trabajando aquí.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ have worked here for two} \\ \text{years.} \\ I \text{ have been working here for} \\ \text{two years.} \end{array} \right.$

**SPANISH PATTERN 2** *hace* + period of time + *que*  
+ present tense / present progressive tense

Hace dos años que trabajo aquí.  
Hace dos años que estoy  
trabajando aquí.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ have worked here for two} \\ \text{years.} \\ I \text{ have been working here for} \\ \text{two years.} \end{array} \right.$

**SPANISH PATTERN 3** present tense / present progressive tense  
+ *desde hace* + period of time

Trabajo aquí desde hace dos años.  
Estoy trabajando aquí desde hace  
dos años.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ have worked here for two} \\ \text{years.} \\ I \text{ have been working here for} \\ \text{two years (since two years} \\ \text{ago).} \end{array} \right.$

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the word-for-word equivalent of the English present perfect tense to tell how long an action has been taking place.

✗ He trabajado aquí por dos años.  
✗ He estado trabajando aquí por dos años.

The present tense is used to indicate how long it has been since the last time an action occurred.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** “haven’t/hasn’t” + past participle + “for”  
+ period of time

**SPANISH PATTERN** present tense of *llevar* + period of time  
+ *sin* + infinitive

Llevo tres años sin ver a mi mejor amigo.	<i>I haven't seen my best friend for three years.</i>
Lleva dos meses sin fumar.	<i>He hasn't smoked in two months.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ No he visto a mi amigo por tres años.

✗ No ha fumado en dos meses.

The Spanish present tense, unlike the present tense in English, is used to state when an action began.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** “have/has” + past participle + “since”  
+ time activity began

**SPANISH PATTERN** present tense + *desde* + time activity began

Trabajo aquí desde enero de 2003.	} {	<i>I have worked here since</i>
Estoy trabajando aquí desde enero de 2003.		<i>January of 2003.</i>
		<i>I have been working here since</i>
		<i>January of 2003.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the word-for-word equivalent of the English present perfect tense when stating when an action began.

✗ He trabajado aquí desde enero de 2003.

✗ He estado trabajando aquí desde enero de 2003.

The Spanish present tense, unlike the present tense in English, is used to state that an action is taking place for the first, second, third, etc. time.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** “the first/second/tenth time” + “have/has”  
+ past participle

**SPANISH PATTERN** *la primera/segunda/décima vez* + *que*  
+ present tense

Esta es la primera vez que estoy en México.	<i>This is the first time I have (ever) been in Mexico.</i>
Es la segunda vez que come en nuestra casa.	<i>It's the second time he has eaten at our house.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the word-for-word equivalent of the English present perfect tense when stating the number of times an action has taken place.

✗ *Esta es la primera vez que he estado en México.*

✗ *Es la segunda vez que ha comido en nuestra casa.*

## Describing Future Action

The Spanish present tense, like the present tense in English, is used to state the time of a scheduled event.

El avión sale a las cinco y media.

*The plane leaves at 5:30.*

La película empieza a las ocho.

*The movie starts at eight.*

The Spanish present tense, unlike the present tense in English, is used to make a request.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** future tense + question mark

**SPANISH PATTERN** question mark + present tense + question mark

¿Me ayudas?

*Will you help me?*

¿Le traes un vaso de agua?

*Will you bring him a glass  
of water?*

The Spanish present tense is used to make an offer.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** “can” + basic verb + question mark

**SPANISH PATTERN** question mark + present tense + question mark

¿Te ayudo?

*Can I help you?*

¿Le traigo un vaso de agua?

*Can I bring him a glass of water?*

The Spanish present tense, unlike the present tense in English, is used to make a commitment or promise.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** “will” + basic verb

**SPANISH PATTERN** present tense

Te llamo esta noche.

*I'll call you tonight.*

Sí, me caso contigo en diciembre.

*Yes, I'll marry you in December.*

The present tense of *ir* + *a* + infinitive, like the English “be going to” + basic verb, is used to state a future plan. In English, the progressive—“be” + verb in “-ing” form—can be used as an alternative.

**ENGLISH PATTERNS** “be going to” + basic verb  
 “be + \_\_\_ing”

**SPANISH PATTERN** *ir* + *a* + infinitive form of verb

Voy a cenar con él mañana.	{	<i>I'm going to have dinner with him tomorrow.</i>
		<i>I'm having dinner with him tomorrow.</i>
Sí, nos vamos a casar el año próximo.	{	<i>Yes, we're going to get married next year.</i>
		<i>Yes, we're getting married next year.</i>

### AVOID THE

### *Blunder*

Do not use the progressive form as you would in English to state a future plan.

✗ *Estoy cenando con él mañana.*

✗ *Sí, nos estamos casando el año próximo.*

## Describing Conditional Action

As in English clauses introduced by “if,” the present tense is used in Spanish after the word *si* to express conditional future action.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** “if” + present tense + future clause

**SPANISH PATTERN** *si* + present tense + future clause

Si no llueve, voy a la playa.	<i>If it doesn't rain, I'm going to the beach.</i>
-------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------

Si llegas tarde, no podrás ir.	<i>If you are late, you won't be able to go.</i>
--------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

## Describing Past Action

The present tense of the verb *acabar* + *de* + infinitive is used to express recently completed action. This is expressed in English by the present perfect tense or the past tense with “just.” (See pages 123–124 for an alternative way to express this meaning in Spanish.)

**ENGLISH PATTERNS** “have/has just” + past participle  
 “just” + past tense

**SPANISH PATTERN** present tense of *acabar* + *de* + infinitive

Acabo de comer.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ have just eaten.} \\ I \text{ just ate.} \end{array} \right.$

Acaban de llegar.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} They \text{ have just arrived.} \\ They \text{ just arrived.} \end{array} \right.$

In English, the present tense is often used to tell jokes or relate the events of a movie or play but not to write formal history. In Spanish the present tense can be used, both formally and informally, to narrate the past.

(En la película) la mujer y su esposo tienen una discusión y luego la mujer sale de la casa y empieza a llorar.	(In the movie) the woman and her husband have an argument, and then she leaves the house and starts to cry.
Cristóbal Colón descubre el Nuevo Mundo en 1492 y lo reclama para España.	Christopher Columbus discovered the new world in 1492 and claimed it for Spain.

The present tense is used in Spanish to express action that almost happened, but in fact didn't. English uses the past tense in this situation.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** "almost" + past tense

**SPANISH PATTERN** *por poco/casi* + present tense

Por poco me caigo.	<i>I almost fell.</i>
Casi se muere.	<i>He almost died.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use a past tense in Spanish with *por poco* or *casi*.

- ✗ Por poco me caí.
- ✗ Casi se murió.

■ For additional Spanish equivalents of the English present tense, see the sections on the present subjunctive (pages 161–176) and reported speech (pages 200–203).

## Exercises

**A** Circle the correct verb form to complete the following sentences.

1. ¿Qué **hace** | **compra** | **hacen** | **compras** los chicos ahora?
2. Mi amigo está **leyendo** | **lees** | **compras** | **lee** el libro.
3. Ana, Beatriz y yo **tener** | **tengo** | **tienen** | **tenemos** clase los lunes a las dos.
4. Si tú **estudies** | **estudian** | **estudias** | **estudien**, vas a aprobar el curso.
5. No hablo bien porque hace un año que no **hablo** | **he estudiado** | **han estudiado** | **hemos hablado** español.
6. Mi primo **ha estado** | **está** | **estás** | **hemos estado** aquí desde el viernes pasado.
7. En el verano voy a **estar** | **estoy** | **ir** | **vamos** a Costa Rica.
8. Mañana **estamos estudiando** | **voy a estudiar** | **me están visitando** | **estoy saliendo**.
9. Ayer, al caminar por la calle, mi amigo casi **me caigo** | **se cayó** | **se cae** | **caigo**.
10. Esta es la primera vez que mi amiga **cantamos** | **bailan** | **canta en público** | **ha cantado en público**.

**B** Express the following in Spanish.

1. They're building a new house.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. We have lived in this city for ten years.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. This is the first time I've ever eaten mole.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. She has just read that novel. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Can we take you home? \_\_\_\_\_
6. They almost had an accident. \_\_\_\_\_
7. If you call me, I'll help you. \_\_\_\_\_
8. We're leaving at six, and the movie starts at seven.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Are you going out with your friends tomorrow night?  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Will you help me? \_\_\_\_\_

# VERBS

## the preterite perfect tense

### Tense Formation

Present tense of *haber* + past participle

### The Present Tense of *haber*

yo	he	nosotros(-as)	hemos
tú	has	vosotros(-as)	habéis
usted/él/ella	ha		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	han		

### Past Participle Formation

Verb stem (infinitive minus -ar/-er/-ir) +	-ar verbs	-er verbs	-ir verbs
	-ado	-ido	-ido
	<b>hablar</b>	<b>comer</b>	<b>vivir</b>
	hablado	comido	vivido

### IRREGULAR PARTICIPLES

<b>abrir</b>	abierto	<b>poner</b>	puesto
<b>cubrir</b>	cubierto	<b>oponer</b>	opuesto
<b>descubrir</b>	descubierto	<b>proponer</b>	propuesto
<b>decir</b>	dicho	<b>ver</b>	visto
<b>predecir</b>	predicho	<b>prever</b>	previsto
<b>escribir</b>	escrito	<b>volver</b>	vuelto
<b>describir</b>	descrito	<b>devolver</b>	devuelto
<b>prescribir</b>	prescrito	<b>revolver</b>	revuelto
<b>hacer</b>	hecho	<b>resolver</b>	resuelto
<b>morir</b>	muerto	<b>romper</b>	roto

Review the forms on the preceding page.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Be sure to learn the irregular past participle forms.

~~X~~ abrido

~~X~~ escibido

~~X~~ hacido

~~X~~ ponido

~~X~~ rompido

It is easy to make the mistake of thinking that this tense is equivalent to the English present perfect (“have” + past participle), because the formations are similar. In some cases, in fact, the uses are equivalent. In many cases, however, the uses are quite different.

## Uses of the Past Tenses

The past tenses are used with certain time expressions.

ayer	<i>yesterday</i>
anoche	<i>last night</i>
anteayer	<i>the day before yesterday</i>
la semana pasada	<i>last week</i>
el mes pasado	<i>last month</i>
el año pasado	<i>last year</i>
hace dos semanas	<i>two weeks ago</i>
hace tres meses	<i>three months ago</i>
hace cinco años	<i>five years ago</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not confuse “last” with “ago.”

~~X~~ dos semanas pasadas

~~X~~ tres meses pasados

## Uses of the Preterite Perfect Tense

### Describing Recent Action

The Spanish preterite perfect tense, like the present perfect tense in English, is used to express action that has been recently completed.

<b>ENGLISH PATTERNS</b>	subject + “have/has just” + past participle subject + “just” + past tense
<b>SPANISH PATTERN</b>	(subject) + present tense of <i>haber</i> + participle
He hablado con Juan.	<i>I have just talked to Juan.</i> <i>I just talked to Juan.</i>
Hemos comido.	<i>We have just eaten.</i> <i>We just ate.</i>
Mi perro ha muerto.	<i>My dog has just died.</i> <i>My dog just died.</i>
Sus amigos han llegado.	<i>Your friends have just arrived.</i> <i>Your friends just arrived.</i>

This usage is more common in Spain than in Latin America, where the present tense of *acabar* + *de* + infinitive is more often used for this purpose (see pages 119–120).

In English, the word “just” is important in conveying the sense of recent action. In Spanish, an equivalent word is not necessary. Also note that in American English, it is common to use the past tense for this purpose.

### Expressing Time of Action

In Spanish, the time of a recent action is often stated with the preterite perfect tense. In English, time is stated with the past tense—never with the present perfect tense.

He hablado con Juan a las tres.	<i>I talked to Juan at three o'clock.</i>
Hemos comido en la tarde.	<i>We ate in the afternoon.</i>
Mi perro ha muerto anoche.	<i>My dog died last night.</i>
Sus amigos han llegado hace poco.	<i>Your friends arrived a short time ago.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

When translating from Spanish to English, do not use the present perfect if the time of action is stated. Use the past tense instead.

- ✗ *My dog has died last night.*
- ✗ *Your friends have arrived a few minutes ago.*

### Expressing “Already” and “Not Yet”

The Spanish preterite perfect tense, like the English present perfect tense, is used to express action that has already occurred or that has not

yet occurred. Note that the markers *ya* and *todavía* are necessary to convey this meaning in Spanish, but “already” and “yet” are optional in conveying this meaning in English.

Ya he hablado con Juan.	<i>I've (already) talked to Juan.</i>
Ya hemos comido.	<i>We have (already) eaten.</i>
No he escrito el trabajo todavía.	<i>I haven't written the paper (yet).</i>
Mis amigos no han llegado todavía.	<i>My friends haven't arrived (yet).</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

If you expect or hope that the action will occur, you must include the marker *todavía*.

Don't omit *todavía* if you plan to write the paper.

✗ No he escrito el trabajo.

Don't omit *todavía* if you expect your friends to arrive.

✗ No han llegado mis amigos.

## Expressing the Frequency of an Action

The Spanish preterite perfect tense, like the English present perfect tense, is used to express the number of times an action has been performed.

He hablado dos veces con Juan.	<i>I have talked to Juan twice.</i>
Hemos comido muchas veces en este lugar.	<i>We have eaten at this place many times.</i>

Unlike the English present perfect tense, the Spanish preterite perfect tense is not used to express activity that is occurring now for the first, second, third, etc. time (see page 117).

**ENGLISH PATTERN** “the first time (that)” + subject + “have/has”  
+ past participle

**SPANISH PATTERN** *la primera vez que* + (subject) + present tense

Esta es la primera vez que comemos en este lugar.	<i>This is the first time we have eaten at this place.</i>
---------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Esta es la primera vez que hemos comido en este lugar.

✗ Es la segunda vez que he estado en este país.

The Spanish preterite perfect tense, unlike the English present perfect tense, is not used to express how long an activity has been taking place.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** subject + “have/has” + “been \_\_\_\_ing”

**SPANISH PATTERNS** (subject) + present tense  
(subject) + present progressive tense

Hace diez minutos que hablo con Juan.	} <i>I've been talking to Juan for 10 minutes.</i>
Hace diez minutos que estoy hablando con Juan.	

Hace seis meses que estoy en este país.	<i>I've been in this country for six months.</i>
-----------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Don't use the preterite perfect tense unless you mean that the action is completed: “I talked to John for 10 minutes.”

**X** He estado hablando con Juan por diez minutos.

## Exercises

**A** Change the verbs in the following sentences to the preterite perfect tense as an alternative to *acabar de*.

EXAMPLE Acabamos de ver esa película. → Hemos visto esa película.

1. Mis padres acaban de comer. \_\_\_\_\_
2. ¿Qué acabas de hacer? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Acabo de terminar con mis exámenes. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Ana acaba de recibir un mensaje. \_\_\_\_\_

**B** Express the following in Spanish.

1. They just arrived. \_\_\_\_\_
2. We have already written the letters. \_\_\_\_\_
3. He hasn't sent his application yet. \_\_\_\_\_
4. She opened the window a few minutes ago.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. How many times have you all seen that movie?  
\_\_\_\_\_

# VERBS

## the preterite tense

### Tense Formation

Stem (infinitive minus -ar/-er/-ir) + endings

### Pattern 1 Verbs

#### Tense Endings

##### **-ar** VERBS

yo	-é	nosotros(-as)	-amos
tú	-aste	vosotros(-as)	-asteis
usted/él/ella	-ó		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-aron		

##### **-er** AND **-ir** VERBS

yo	-í	nosotros(-as)	-imos
tú	-iste	vosotros(-as)	-isteis
usted/él/ella	-ió		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-ieron		

### Spelling Changes in *yo* Forms

Verbs that end in -car	-qué
Verbs that end in -gar	-gué
Verbs that end in -guar	-güé
Verbs that end in -zar	-cé

### The Preterite Tense of *dar*

*Dar* is an -ar verb with -er/-ir endings in the preterite.

di	dimos
diste	disteis
dio	
dieron	

## Stem-changing Verb Patterns

### **-ar VERBS**

No stem change

### **-er VERBS**

No stem change

### **-ir VERBS**

Second stem change in third-person singular and plural

**o > u**

**dormir** (ue, u)

dormí                dormimos

dormiste          dormisteis

durmió

durmieron

## Pattern 2 Verbs

The following verbs have irregular stems in the preterite and a different set of conjugated endings.

### Irregular Preterite Stems

INFINITIVE	STEM	1 SG. FORM	INFINITIVE	STEM	1 SG. FORM
<b>andar</b>	anduv-	anduve	<b>hacer</b>	hic-	hice
<b>tener</b>	tuv-	tuve	<b>querer</b>	quis-	quise
<b>estar</b>	estuv-	estuve	<b>venir</b>	vin-	vine
<b>poder</b>	pud-	pude	<b>decir</b>	dij-	dije*
<b>poner</b>	pus-	puse	<b>traer</b>	traj-	traje*
<b>saber</b>	sup-	supe			
<b>haber</b>	hub-	hube			

### Tense Endings

yo	-e	nosotros(-as)	-imos
tú	-iste	vosotros(-as)	-isteis
usted/él/ella	-o		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-ieron/-eron*		

\*The third-person plural ends in *-eron* after *j*.

### The Preterite Tense of *ir* and *ser*

fui	fuimos
fuiste	fuisteis
fue	
fueron	

Review the forms in the chart on the preceding pages.

Review the time expressions used with past tenses on page 123.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Note that pattern 2 verbs do not have an accent mark in their endings.

~~X~~ *tuvé*                      ~~X~~ *hizó*                      ~~X~~ *pudé*

Note automatic spelling changes in the *yo* forms of certain verbs ending in *-car*, *-gar*, *-zar*.

~~X~~ *sacé*                      ~~X~~ *jugé*                      ~~X~~ *almorzé*

Note that there is no stem change in the preterite of *-ar* and *-er* verbs.

~~X~~ *piensé*                      ~~X~~ *juegó*                      ~~X~~ *almuercé*                      ~~X~~ *pierdió*

Note the third-person stem change in *-ir* stem-changing verbs.

~~X~~ *sentió*                      ~~X~~ *dormió*                      ~~X~~ *servieron*

Note that pattern 2 verbs whose stems end in *j* drop the *i* after the *j*.

~~X~~ *trajieron*                      ~~X~~ *dijieron*

## Uses of the Preterite Tense

### Describing Terminated Actions

The preterite tense in Spanish is used to describe actions that began and terminated in the past, without giving details about other simultaneous or interrupting actions.

*Estuve en clase (ayer).*

*I was in class (yesterday).*

*Fuimos a la fiesta (el viernes).*

*We went to the party (on Friday).*

*No comió nada (anoche).*

*He didn't eat anything (last night).*

*Aprendieron mucho (el año pasado).*

*They learned a lot (last year).*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the imperfect tense unless you intend to tell what happened while you were in class.

~~X~~ *Estaba en clase ayer.*

## Describing Actions Simultaneously Begun and Terminated

The Spanish preterite tense is used to describe actions that began and terminated at the same time.

Abrí la puerta.	<i>I opened the door.</i>
Salimos a las ocho.	<i>We left at eight o'clock.</i>
Estornudó.	<i>She sneezed.</i>
Empezaron a escribir.	<i>They started to write.</i>

This kind of action is often accompanied by the following types of expressions.

de repente	<i>suddenly</i>
de pronto	<i>suddenly</i>
a las tres y media	<i>at 3:30</i>

## Describing Constant Past Action

The preterite tense is often used with *siempre* to emphasize that an action or feeling was constant during an entire period of time; it is used with *nunca* to emphasize that an action did not occur during an entire period of time.

Siempre lo supo.	<i>He always knew it.</i>
Flora nunca estuvo de acuerdo conmigo.	<i>Flora never agreed with me.</i>

## Narrating

The preterite tense is used in combination with the imperfect tense to narrate a story or an event. For details and examples, see pages 135–137.

## Exercises

**A** Write accent marks where necessary in the following preterite forms.

- |             |            |           |             |
|-------------|------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. juegue   | 7. estuvo  | 13. pudo  | 19. escribi |
| 2. almuerzo | 8. estudie | 14. oiste | 20. visito  |
| 3. fuimos   | 9. volvio  | 15. leyo  | 21. lei     |
| 4. tuve     | 10. dormi  | 16. dio   | 22. fui     |
| 5. corrio   | 11. hizo   | 17. vi    | 23. sintio  |
| 6. hicieron | 12. comi   | 18. busco | 24. supe    |

**B** Rewrite each of the following sentences, changing the verb from the present tense to the preterite tense.

1. Yo siempre pago las cuentas.

---

2. Jorge baila bien.

---

3. Vamos al cine el sábado.

---

4. No hacemos nada el jueves.

---

5. ¿Adónde vas?

---

6. Nuestro equipo juega bien.

---

7. Los niños duermen toda la noche.

---

8. A Beatriz no le gusta la película.

---

9. Me da mucho gusto conocerlo.

---

10. Está muy cansado.

---

# VERBS

## the imperfect tense

### Tense Formation

Stem (infinitive minus -ar/-er/-ir) + endings

### Tense Endings

#### -ar VERBS

yo	-aba	nosotros(-as)	-ábamos
tú	-abas	vosotros(-as)	-abais
usted/él/ella	-aba		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-aban		

#### -er AND -ir VERBS

yo	-ía	nosotros(-as)	-íamos
tú	-ías	vosotros(-as)	-íais
usted/él/ella	-ía		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-ían		

### The Imperfect Tense of Irregular Verbs

ser		ir		ver	
era	éramos	iba	íbamos	veía	veíamos
eras	erais	ibas	ibais	veías	veíais
era		iba		veía	
eran		iban		veían	

### Formation of the Imperfect Progressive Tense

Imperfect tense of *estar* + gerund

estaba	estábamos	} + hablando/comiendo/escribiendo
estabas	estabais	
estaba		
estaban		

Review the forms in the chart on the preceding page.

Review the time expressions used with past tenses on page 123.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Make sure you use accent marks where appropriate.

✗ *estabamos*

✗ *hablabamos*

✗ *comia*

✗ *escribia*

✗ *veian*

✗ *leias*

## Uses of the Imperfect Tense

### Describing the Past

The Spanish imperfect tense is used to describe a past period of time—the way things were in the past.

Cuando yo tenía 10 años, era  
pequeña y muy tímida.

Tenía una amiga que vivía cerca  
de mi casa.

Había tres escuelas en la ciudad.

Teníamos mucho tiempo libre.

Nuestra casa era muy bonita.

Mis abuelos vivían en el campo.

*When I was 10 years old, I was  
little and very shy.*

*I had a friend who lived near  
my house.*

*There were three schools in the  
city.*

*We had a lot of free time.*

*Our house was really pretty.*

*My grandparents lived in the  
country.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the preterite tense to describe a past period of time.

✗ *Nuestra casa fue muy bonita.*

✗ *Mis abuelos vivieron en el campo.*

When describing a past period of time, activities that occurred on a regular basis are expressed with the imperfect tense. In English, this can be expressed in three different ways.

Hacía mis tareas en la tarde.

*I (always) did my assignments in  
the afternoon.*

*I (always) used to do my assignments  
in the afternoon.*

*I would (always) do my assignments  
in the afternoon.*

Jugábamos en la calle.

{ *We (always) played in the street.*  
*We (always) used to play in the street.*  
*We would (always) play in the street.*

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Rather than translate word for word from English, consider the purpose of your remarks. If you are describing activities that took place on a regular basis, use the imperfect tense in Spanish.

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Do not use the imperfect progressive tense if you are describing activities that took place on a regular basis.

- ✗ Estaba haciendo mis tareas todos los días.
- ✗ Estábamos jugando en la calle cada tarde.
- ✗ Se estaba preocupando todas las noches.

## Describing Simultaneous Past Actions

The imperfect or the imperfect progressive tense is used to express an action that was in progress at the same time that another action was in progress. In English, this type of action can be expressed in the past tense or the past progressive.

Mientras José leía el periódico,  
 Juana veía la televisión.  
 Cuando estábamos jugando,  
 nuestros padres estaban hablando.

*While José read the newspaper,  
 Juana watched TV.  
 When we were playing, our  
 parents were talking.*

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Do not use the preterite tense to express two simultaneous past actions.

- ✗ Mientras José leyó el periódico, Juana vio la televisión.
- ✗ Cuando jugamos, nuestros padres hablaron.

## Narrating

■ In a narrative, the imperfect or imperfect progressive tense is used to describe an action that had started, but not ended, when another action (expressed in the preterite) began (see pages 129–130). In English, the past progressive tense is used for this purpose.

Pepe leía el periódico cuando llamó Marta.	}	<i>Pepe was reading the newspaper when Marta called.</i>
Pepe estaba leyendo el periódico cuando llamó Marta.		
Jugábamos en el jardín cuando Ana se cayó.	}	<i>We were playing in the yard when Ana fell down.</i>
Estábamos jugando en el jardín cuando Ana se cayó.		

■ The Spanish imperfect tense is used to describe a condition or state that had started, but not ended, when the preterite action occurred. In English, verbs that describe states or conditions are usually expressed in the past tense, not the past progressive, even though they represent “being in the middle of” a state or condition.

### COMMON VERBS DESCRIBING AN ONGOING STATE OR CONDITION IN THE PAST

INFINITIVE	3SG. IMPERFECT	ENGLISH PAST TENSE
comprender	comprendía	<i>understood</i>
contener	contenía	<i>contained</i>
creer	creía	<i>believed</i>
encantar	encantaba	<i>loved</i>
existir	existía	<i>existed</i>
gustar	gustaba	<i>liked</i>
necesitar	necesitaba	<i>needed</i>
odiar	odiaba	<i>hated</i>
oler	olía	<i>beard</i>
olvidar	olvidaba	<i>smelled (intransitive)*</i>
		<i>forgot</i>

continued on next page

\*As an intransitive verb, *oler* refers to the state of something, not to the conscious act of smelling (*oler*; transitive).

#### INTRANSITIVE

El cuarto olía mal.

*The room smelled bad.*

#### TRANSITIVE

Quería oler tu perfume.

*I wanted to smell your perfume.*

**COMMON VERBS DESCRIBING AN ONGOING STATE OR CONDITION IN THE PAST** (continued)

INFINITIVE	3SG. IMPERFECT	ENGLISH PAST TENSE
parecer	parecía	<i>appeared, seemed</i>
pensar	pensaba	<i>thought</i>
poseer	poseía	<i>owned</i>
preferir	prefería	<i>preferred</i>
querer	quería	<i>wanted</i>
recordar	recordaba	<i>remembered</i>
saber	sabía	<i>knew</i>
saber	sabía	<i>tasted (intransitive)*</i>
ser/estar	era/estaba	<i>was</i>
tener	tenía	<i>had</i>
ver	veía	<i>saw</i>

\*As an intransitive verb, *saber* refers to the state of something, not to the conscious act of tasting (*probar*, transitive).

**INTRANSITIVE**

La carne sabía rica. *The meat tasted delicious.*

**TRANSITIVE**

Probamos la carne. *We tasted the meat.*

While the Spanish imperfect tense is used to describe ongoing states or feelings in the past, the English past tense (rather than the past progressive) is usually used for this purpose.

Quería seguir durmiendo. *I wanted to keep on sleeping.*  
(NOT *was wanting*)

Tenía tres coches cuando lo conocí. *He had three cars when I met him.*  
(NOT *was having*)

Yo no recordaba su nombre en ese momento. *I didn't remember his name at the time.*  
(NOT *wasn't remembering*)

**AVOID THE *Blunder***

Do not use the preterite to express ongoing feelings or conditions.

- ✗ Quise seguir durmiendo.
- ✗ Tuvo tres coches cuando lo conocí.
- ✗ No recordé su nombre en ese momento.

## The Imperfect vs. the Preterite

Certain Spanish verbs have different English translations, depending on whether they express an already-started (imperfect) action or condition or a newly initiated or terminated (preterite) action or condition.

Cuando llegué a esta ciudad, conocía a dos personas.	<i>When I arrived in this city, I (already) knew two people.</i>
Cuando llegué a esta ciudad, conocí a dos personas.	<i>When I arrived in this city, I met two people.</i>
La mujer tenía dos niños.	<i>The woman (already) had two children.</i>
La mujer tuvo un niño.	<i>The woman gave birth to a child.</i>
Sabía que él estaba casado.	<i>She knew he was married.</i>
Supo que él estaba casado.	<i>She found out he was married.</i>
Ella estaba aquí a las ocho.	<i>She was (already) here at eight.</i>
Ella estuvo aquí a las ocho.	<i>She got here at eight o'clock.</i>
Cuando Carlos salió de la fiesta, quería ir a su casa.	<i>When Carlos left the party, he wanted to go home.</i>
Cuando Carlos salió de la fiesta, quiso ir a su casa.	<i>When Carlos left the party, he tried to go home (but was unable to).</i>
Cuando salió de la fiesta, no quería ir a su casa.	<i>When he left the party, he didn't want to go home.</i>
Cuando salió de la fiesta, no quiso ir a su casa.	<i>When he left the party, he refused to go home.</i>

## Expressing "Could" and "Had to"

Both the imperfect and the preterite of *poder* may be translated as "could," and both the imperfect and the preterite of *tener que* may be translated as "had to." The imperfect is used to describe a situation before its resolution. The preterite refers to a situation after its resolution.

Pedro llamó a su hijo porque no podía arreglar su computadora.	<i>Pedro called his son because he couldn't fix his computer.</i>
Pedro compró una computadora nueva porque su hijo no pudo arreglar la otra.	<i>Pedro bought a new computer because his son couldn't fix the other one.</i>
Eran las diez de la noche. Ana quería ir a una fiesta pero no podía porque tenía que estudiar.	<i>It was 10 P.M. Ana wanted to go to a party, but she couldn't because she had to study.</i>
Ana no fue a la fiesta anoche. No pudo ir porque tuvo que estudiar.	<i>Ana didn't go to the party last night. She couldn't go because she had to study.</i>

## Expressing Past Detail

When telling what happened in the past, use the imperfect if you intend to describe the situation in further detail. Use the preterite if you don't intend to say any more about it.

Ayer estaba en la casa de mi  
amigo cuando empezó a nevar.  
Ayer estuve en la casa de mi  
amigo por dos horas. Luego  
fui a mi clase.

*Yesterday I was at my friend's  
house when it started to snow.  
Yesterday I was at my friend's  
house for two hours. After that  
I went to my class.*

Mi papá leía el periódico y vio  
una noticia que le sorprendió.

*My dad was reading the  
newspaper and saw an item  
that surprised him.*

Anoche mi papá llegó a casa  
a las ocho, leyó el periódico  
y salió de nuevo.

*Last night my dad got home at  
8 o'clock, read the newspaper,  
and then went out again.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Ayer estaba en la casa de mi amigo y luego fui a mi clase.
- ✗ Mi papá leía el periódico y luego salió de la sala.
- ✗ Anoche mi papá llegaba a casa a las ocho, leía el periódico y salía de nuevo.

## Exercises

**A** Rewrite the sentences below, changing the verbs from the present tense to the imperfect tense to describe activities that regularly occurred during a period of time in the past.

1. Soy pequeña y un poco seria.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Tengo un perro y me gusta jugar con él.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Voy al cine con mis amigas todos los miércoles.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Mi familia y yo comemos en la casa de mi abuela los domingos por la tarde.  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. Escribo mis tareas en la tarde después de las clases.

6. Mis hermanas y yo ayudamos en la casa.

7. Mis amigos van a la playa en el verano y a veces yo los acompaño.

8. La actividad que me gusta más es leer.

**B** Fill in the blanks by writing the correct form of the verb in parentheses, using the imperfect tense or the preterite tense, as appropriate.

1. Mientras mi mamá \_\_\_\_\_ (cocinar), mi papá  
\_\_\_\_\_ (ver) las noticias en la televisión.

2. Anoche, cuando yo \_\_\_\_\_ (entrar) en la casa, mis hermanos  
\_\_\_\_\_ (jugar) en la sala.

3. Nosotros \_\_\_\_\_ (estar) estudiando cuando de repente se  
\_\_\_\_\_ (apagar) la luz.

4. Cuando tú me \_\_\_\_\_ (llamar) ayer, yo  
\_\_\_\_\_ (estar) en la biblioteca.

5. El viernes pasado Juan y yo estábamos en un club. No me sentía bien. Por eso  
le dije que \_\_\_\_\_ (querer, yo) ir a casa.

6. Juan me respondió que no \_\_\_\_\_ (poder, él) llevarme a casa  
todavía porque \_\_\_\_\_ (tener que, él) esperar a unos amigos.  
Por eso, \_\_\_\_\_ (ir, yo) a casa en un taxi.

# VERBS

## the pluperfect tense

### Tense Formation

Imperfect tense of *haber* + past participle

### The Imperfect Tense of *haber*

yo	había	nosotros(-as)	habíamos
tú	habías	vosotros(-as)	habíais
usted/él/ella	había		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	habían		

### Past Participle Formation

	-ar verbs	-er verbs	-ir verbs
Verb stem (infinitive minus -ar/-er/-ir) +	-ado	-ido	-ido
	<b>hablar</b>	<b>comer</b>	<b>vivir</b>
	hablado	comido	vivido

### IRREGULAR PARTICIPLES

<b>abrir</b>	abierto	<b>poner</b>	puesto
<b>cubrir</b>	cubierto	<b>oponer</b>	opuesto
<b>descubrir</b>	descubierto	<b>proponer</b>	propuesto
<b>decir</b>	dicho	<b>ver</b>	visto
<b>predecir</b>	predicho	<b>prever</b>	previsto
<b>escribir</b>	escrito	<b>volver</b>	vuelto
<b>describir</b>	descrito	<b>devolver</b>	devuelto
<b>prescribir</b>	prescrito	<b>revolver</b>	revuelto
<b>hacer</b>	hecho	<b>resolver</b>	resuelto
<b>morir</b>	muerto	<b>romper</b>	roto

Review the forms in the chart on the preceding page.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Remember to use accent marks in all forms of the imperfect of *haber*.

Be sure to learn the irregular past participle forms.

✗ *habia* volvido

✗ *habiamos* resoldido

✗ *habian* descubierto

## Uses of the Pluperfect Tense

### Describing Pre-past Action

The pluperfect tense in Spanish, like the past perfect tense in English, is used to describe actions that terminated before other past actions began.

María llegó a casa muy cansada.

Había trabajado nueve horas seguidas.

Juan no aprobó el examen porque no había estudiado.

*María got home exhausted.*

*She had worked nine hours straight.*

*Juan didn't pass the test because he hadn't studied.*

### Expressing "Already" and "Not Yet"

The Spanish pluperfect, like the past perfect in English, is used to tell what had already happened or had not yet happened. (See *ya, todavía* on pages 124–125.)

Le ofrecí el periódico, pero ya lo había leído.

Eran las dos de la madrugada y mi hermana todavía no había aparecido.

*I offered him the newspaper, but he had already read it.*

*It was 2 A.M. and my sister still hadn't shown up.*

### Reporting What Was Said

The Spanish pluperfect, like the past perfect in English, is used to report what someone said about a past action (see pages 200–203).

Sara dijo que su hermana no había vuelto a la casa.

Mis amigos me dijeron que me habían llamado.

*Sara said that her sister hadn't returned home.*

*My friends told me that they had called me.*

## Describing the Frequency of an Action

The Spanish pluperfect, like the English past perfect, is used to express the number of times an action had been performed.

Había hablado dos veces con Juan. *I had talked to Juan twice.*

Habíamos comido muchas veces en este lugar. *We had eaten at this place many times.*

Unlike the English past perfect, the Spanish pluperfect is not used to express activity that was occurring for the first, second, third, etc. time.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** “the first time (that)” + subject + “had”  
+ past participle

**SPANISH PATTERN** *la primera vez que* + (subject) + imperfect tense

Fue la primera vez que comíamos en ese lugar. *That was the first time we had eaten at that place.*

Era la segunda vez que estaba en ese país. *It was the second time I had been in that country.*

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ Fue la primera vez que habíamos comido en ese lugar.

✗ Era la segunda vez que había estado en ese país.

## Exercise

**A** Use the pluperfect tense to complete the sentences below.

1. Javier leyó el periódico antes de ir a la oficina.

Cuando Javier llegó a la oficina, ya sabía las noticias porque \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Comí a las doce. A la una, Mario me invitó a comer.

Cuando Mario me invitó a comer, le dije que no, porque \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Margarita no estudió para el examen. Margarita suspendió el examen ayer.

Margarita suspendió el examen ayer porque \_\_\_\_\_.

# VERBS

## the future tense

### Tense Formation

Infinitive + endings

### Tense Endings

yo	-é	nosotros(-as)	-emos
tú	-ás	vosotros(-as)	-éis
usted/él/ella	-á		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-án		

### Irregular Future-tense Stems

#### STEMS THAT DROP *e* FROM THE INFINITIVE

INFINITIVE	FUTURE STEM	1SG. FUTURE
<b>haber</b>	habr-	habré
<b>poder</b>	podr-	podré
<b>querer</b>	querr-	querré
<b>saber</b>	sabr-	sabré
<b>caber</b>	cabr-	cabré

#### STEMS THAT REPLACE *e* OR *i* WITH *d*

INFINITIVE	FUTURE STEM	1SG. FUTURE
<b>poner</b>	pondr-	pondré
<b>salir</b>	saldr-	saldré
<b>tener</b>	tendr-	tendré
<b>valer</b>	valdr-	valdré
<b>venir</b>	vendr-	vendré

#### OTHER IRREGULAR STEMS

INFINITIVE	FUTURE STEM	1SG. FUTURE
<b>decir</b>	dir-	diré
<b>hacer</b>	har-	haré

Review the forms on the preceding page.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use an accent mark in the *nosotros* form of the future tense.

✗ hablarémos      ✗ harémos      ✗ vendrémos

Be sure to learn the future stems of irregular verbs.

✗ teneré      ✗ querearán  
✗ ponerá      ✗ veniremos

## Uses of the Future Tense

The future tense is used with certain time expressions.

mañana	<i>tomorrow</i>
pasado mañana	<i>the day after tomorrow</i>
la próxima semana	<i>next week</i>
el próximo mes	<i>next month</i>
el próximo año	<i>next year</i>
pronto	<i>soon</i>
dentro de dos días	<i>in two days</i>
algún día	<i>some day</i>
nunca	<i>never</i>

## Making a Prediction

The Spanish future tense is used to predict the future.

Mi hijo será médico.	<i>My son will be a doctor.</i>
Usted tendrá buena suerte.	<i>You will have good luck.</i>
Todos viajaremos a la luna.	<i>We will all travel to the moon.</i>
Algún día me graduaré.	<i>Some day I'll graduate.</i>

## Stating a Probable Action

The Spanish future tense is used to indicate probability.

Lloverá en la tarde.	<i>It will probably rain this afternoon.</i>
Los muchachos llegarán tarde.	<i>The boys will probably be late.</i>
Te llamará esta noche.	<i>He'll probably call you tonight.</i>
Iré al centro la próxima semana.	<i>I'll probably go downtown next week.</i>

## Stating Conjecture

The Spanish future tense is used to indicate conjecture about a present state or situation.

Estarás cansada.

Serán las seis.

Estarán enojados.

Estarán llegando ahora.

*You must be tired.*

*It must be about 6 o'clock.*

*They're probably mad.*

*They must be arriving about now.*

## Expressing "I wonder . . ."

The future tense is used in a question to indicate speculation about a present action.

¿Dónde estará mi hermano?

¿Qué hora será?

*I wonder where my brother is.*

*I wonder what time it is.*

### ALTERNATIVE CONSTRUCTION FOR EXPRESSING FUTURE ACTIONS

In Spanish, as in English, plans for the near future are usually expressed with a "going to" expression. The present tense of *ir* + *a* + infinitive is used.

Vamos a comprar una casa nueva.     *We're going to buy a new house.*

The future tense in Spanish is *not* used to ask or offer favors. These and other uses of the English "will" should be expressed in the present tense in Spanish (see page 118).

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not assume that the future tense is the exact equivalent of the English future tense with "will." Many uses of the English "will" are better expressed in Spanish in the present tense.

## Clauses After the Future Tense

### Expressing Intended or Expected Action

Certain expressions follow a present or future tense verb to indicate action intended or expected in the future. These expressions are followed by a clause with the verb in the present subjunctive (see pages 170–171).

cuando	<i>when (as soon as)</i>	hasta que	<i>until</i>
en cuanto	<i>as soon as</i>	antes que	<i>before</i>
tan pronto como	<i>as soon as</i>	después que	<i>after</i>
mientras	<i>when/while (at the same time as)</i>		

**ENGLISH PATTERN** subject + future verb + time expression  
+ present indicative verb

**SPANISH PATTERN** (subject) + future verb + time expression  
+ present subjunctive verb

Te sentirás mejor cuando salgas del hospital.	<i>You'll feel better when you leave the hospital.</i>
Lo llamaré en cuanto llegue a casa.	<i>I'll call him as soon as I get home.</i>
Ella estará bien tan pronto como reciba una carta.	<i>She'll be okay as soon as she gets a letter.</i>
Comeremos antes que regresen los otros.	<i>We'll eat before the others get back.</i>
Estudiaré después que termine este programa.	<i>I'll study after this program is over.</i>
Viviremos en esta casa hasta que se vayan nuestros hijos.	<i>We'll live in this house until our children leave.</i>
Nos divertiremos mientras estén ustedes en la ciudad.	<i>We'll have a good time when you all are in town.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

When these Spanish expressions appear in clauses after a verb in the future tense, they are followed by a subjunctive verb, not a verb in the indicative.

- |                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| ✗ cuando sales           | ✗ después que termina |
| ✗ en cuanto llego        | ✗ hasta que se van    |
| ✗ tan pronto como recibe | ✗ mientras están      |
| ✗ antes que regresan     |                       |

## Expressing Conditional Future Action

Certain expressions indicate conditions on which future action depends. These expressions introduce a clause with the verb in the present subjunctive (see pages 172–173).

con tal (de) que	<i>provided that, as long as</i>
siempre y cuando	<i>provided that, as long as</i>
sin que	<i>without (something happening/ someone knowing)</i>
a menos que	<i>unless</i>
en caso (de) que	<i>if it should happen that, in case</i>

**ENGLISH PATTERN** subject + future verb + conditional marker  
+ present indicative verb

**SPANISH PATTERN** (subject) + future verb + conditional marker  
+ present subjunctive verb

Le prestaré el dinero con tal (de) que me lo devuelva.	<i>I'll lend him the money as long as he returns it.</i>
Haremos una fiesta siempre y cuando los niños se porten bien.	<i>We'll have a party provided the children behave.</i>
Trabajaré sin que mi familia lo sepa.	<i>I'll work without my family knowing about it.</i>
Viajará este verano a menos que tenga que trabajar.	<i>He will travel this summer unless he has to work.</i>
Llevará su licencia en caso (de) que quiera manejar.	<i>He'll take his license in case he wants to drive.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the present indicative tense after these expressions when they appear in clauses after a verb in the future tense.

- ✗ con tal de que me lo devuelve
- ✗ siempre y cuando se portan bien
- ✗ sin que mi familia lo sabe
- ✗ a menos que tengo que trabajar
- ✗ en caso que quiere manejar

Both the conditional markers *si* “if” and *por si acaso* “just in case” are followed by a verb in the present indicative, not the subjunctive.

Haremos una fiesta si los niños se portan bien.	<i>We'll have a party if the children behave.</i>
Viajará este verano si no tiene que trabajar.	<i>He'll travel this summer if he doesn't have to work.</i>
Llevará su licencia por si acaso quiere manejar.	<i>He'll take his license just in case he wants to drive.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ si los niños se porten bien
- ✗ si no tenga que trabajar

## Expressing the Purpose of Future Action

Certain conjunctions indicate the purpose of future action. These expressions are followed by a clause with the verb in the present subjunctive.

para que	<i>so that (expected result)</i>
a fin de que	<i>so that (hoped-for result)</i>

Mi papá me manda dinero para que pueda ir a visitarlo.  
 Nos vamos a acostar temprano esta noche a fin de que nos podamos despertar temprano mañana.

*My father sends me money so I can go visit him.  
 We're going to bed early tonight so we can wake up early tomorrow.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the present indicative tense after the expressions *para que* and *a fin de que*.

**X** para que puede ir      **X** a fin de que puedo comprarlo

## Exercises

**A** Fill in the blanks with the future tense of the verb in parentheses.

1. Muy pronto \_\_\_\_\_ (tener, yo) un coche nuevo.
2. Tú \_\_\_\_\_ (encontrar) un tesoro.
3. Su espíritu \_\_\_\_\_ (vivir).
4. Ella no \_\_\_\_\_ (venir) a tiempo.

**B** Complete the following sentences by writing the appropriate form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Voy a llamarlo cuando \_\_\_\_\_ (regresar) de las vacaciones.
2. Ella se graduará siempre y cuando \_\_\_\_\_ (estudiar) mucho.
3. Haremos una fiesta mientras \_\_\_\_\_ (estar, ustedes) aquí en diciembre.
4. Te vas a enfermar si no \_\_\_\_\_ (comer) más.
5. No descansaré hasta que \_\_\_\_\_ (tener) el dinero para el viaje.

# VERBS

## the future perfect tense

### Tense Formation

Future tense of *haber* + past participle

### The Future Tense of *haber*

yo	habré	nosotros(-as)	habremos
tú	habrás	vosotros(-as)	habréis
usted/él/ella	habrá		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	habrán		

### Past Participle Formation

Verb stem (infinitive minus -ar/-er/-ir) +	-ar verbs	-er verbs	-ir verbs
	-ado	-ido	-ido
	<b>hablar</b>	<b>comer</b>	<b>vivir</b>
	hablado	comido	vivido

### IRREGULAR PARTICIPLES

<b>abrir</b>	abierto	<b>poner</b>	puesto
<b>cubrir</b>	cubierto	<b>oponer</b>	opuesto
<b>descubrir</b>	descubierto	<b>proponer</b>	propuesto
<b>decir</b>	dicho	<b>ver</b>	visto
<b>predecir</b>	predicho	<b>prever</b>	previsto
<b>escribir</b>	escrito	<b>volver</b>	vuelto
<b>describir</b>	descrito	<b>devolver</b>	devuelto
<b>prescribir</b>	prescrito	<b>revolver</b>	revuelto
<b>hacer</b>	hecho	<b>resolver</b>	resuelto
<b>morir</b>	muerto	<b>romper</b>	roto

Review the forms on the preceding page.

Review the time expressions used with future tenses on page 144.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Note that all forms of *haber* in the future tense have an accent mark except the *nosotros* form.

Be sure to learn the irregular past participle forms.

~~X~~ habre vido

~~X~~ habrémos hecho

~~X~~ habran escrito

## Uses of the Future Perfect Tense

### Predicting Termination of Future Action

The future perfect is used to predict action that will have terminated by a certain future time.

En una semana ya se habrá casado.

*In a week he will have already gotten married.*

En julio ya me habré graduado.

*In July I will have already graduated.*

### Stating Conjecture About Past Action

The future perfect is used to indicate conjecture about past action.

Habrás trabajado mucho.  
Nos habrán visto.

*You must have worked hard.  
They must have seen us.*

## Exercise

**A** Predict what will have happened by the year 2030 by filling in the blanks.

En el año 2030:

1. Los científicos \_\_\_\_\_ descubierto la cura del cáncer.
2. Alguien \_\_\_\_\_ viajado a Marte.
3. Nosotros \_\_\_\_\_ aprendido mucho sobre el medio ambiente.
4. Yo \_\_\_\_\_

# VERBS

## the conditional

The simple conditional expresses what someone would do if the facts or circumstances were different. It can also be used to express probability or conjecture about the past.

The conditional perfect expresses what someone would have done if the facts or circumstances had been different. It can also be used to express probability or conjecture about what had occurred before another past event.

# VERBS

## the simple conditional

### Formation

Infinitive + endings

### Endings

yo	-ía	nosotros(-as)	-íamos
tú	-ías	vosotros(-as)	-íais
usted/él/ella	-ía		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-ían		

### Irregular Conditional Stems

#### STEMS THAT DROP *e* FROM THE INFINITIVE

INFINITIVE	CONDITIONAL STEM	1 SG. CONDITIONAL
<b>haber</b>	habr-	habría
<b>poder</b>	podr-	podría
<b>querer</b>	querr-	querría
<b>saber</b>	sabr-	sabría

#### STEMS THAT REPLACE *e* OR *i* WITH *d*

INFINITIVE	CONDITIONAL STEM	1 SG. CONDITIONAL
<b>poner</b>	pondr-	pondría
<b>salir</b>	saldr-	saldría
<b>tener</b>	tendr-	tendría
<b>venir</b>	vendr-	vendría

#### OTHER IRREGULAR STEMS

INFINITIVE	CONDITIONAL STEM	1 SG. CONDITIONAL
<b>decir</b>	dir-	diría
<b>hacer</b>	har-	haría

Review the forms in the chart on the preceding page.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Make sure you keep the infinitive ending before adding *-ía*.

~~X~~ comía      ~~X~~ escribía

Be sure to learn the irregular conditional stems.

~~X~~ querería      ~~X~~ podería      ~~X~~ tenería

## Uses of the Conditional

### Speculating About the Past

The conditional in Spanish is used in a question to indicate speculation about a past situation.

¿Qué hora sería?

*I wonder what time it was.*

*(What time would it have been?)*

¿Dónde estarían mis amigos?

*I wonder where my friends were.*

*(Where would my friends have been?)*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not try to translate “I wonder.” Use the conditional in a question instead.

### Indicating Probability About Past Action

The conditional is used to indicate the probability of a past situation.

Serían las dos y media.

*It must have been about 2:30.*

Estarían en el centro.

*They were probably downtown.*

Tendría hambre.

*He must have been hungry.*

Mario sabría la verdad.

*Mario probably knew the truth.*

### Expressing Conditional Action

The conditional is used in connection with *si* and the imperfect subjunctive (see page 195) to express conjecture.

—¿Qué haría usted si fuera el jefe?

*“What would you do if you were the boss?”*

—Yo sería más organizado.

*“I would be more organized.”*

—¿Adónde irían ustedes si  
tuvieran vacaciones?

*“Where would you all go if you  
had time off?”*

—Iríamos a Chile.

*“We would go to Chile.”*

—¿Qué comprarías si tuvieras  
más dinero?

*“What would you buy if you had  
more money?”*

—Compraría un coche nuevo.

*“I would buy a new car.”*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use a past tense in the indicative after a conditional followed by *si*, as you would in English. Use the imperfect subjunctive instead.

✗ ¿Adónde irían ustedes si tenían vacaciones?

✗ ¿Qué comprarías si tenías más dinero?

Do not use an accent mark on *si* in these constructions.

✗ ¿Qué haría sí fuera el jefe?

## Exercise

**A** Use the simple conditional to express the following in Spanish.

1. You must have been cold.

---

2. She was probably sick.

---

3. If I were you, I wouldn't go out.

---

4. If I had more money, I would buy a house.

---

5. What would you do?

---

# VERBS

## the conditional perfect

### Formation

Conditional of *haber* + past participle

### The Conditional of *haber*

yo	habría	nosotros(-as)	habríamos
tú	habrías	vosotros(-as)	habríais
usted/él/ella	habría		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	habrían		

### Past Participle Formation

Verb stem (infinitive minus -ar/-er/-ir) +	-ar verbs	-er verbs	-ir verbs
	-ado	-ido	-ido
	<b>hablar</b>	<b>comer</b>	<b>vivir</b>
	hablado	comido	vivido

### IRREGULAR PARTICIPLES

<b>abrir</b>	abierto	<b>poner</b>	puesto
<b>cubrir</b>	cubierto	<b>oponer</b>	opuesto
<b>descubrir</b>	descubierto	<b>proponer</b>	propuesto
<b>decir</b>	dicho	<b>ver</b>	visto
<b>predecir</b>	predicho	<b>prever</b>	previsto
<b>escribir</b>	escrito	<b>volver</b>	vuelto
<b>describir</b>	descrito	<b>devolver</b>	devuelto
<b>prescribir</b>	prescrito	<b>revolver</b>	revuelto
<b>hacer</b>	hecho	<b>resolver</b>	resuelto
<b>morir</b>	muerto	<b>romper</b>	roto

Review the forms in the chart on the preceding page.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Note that the conditional stem of *haber* drops the *e* from the infinitive.

✗ *habería*

✗ *haberían*

✗ *haberíamos*

Be sure to learn the irregular past participle forms.

✗ *habría decidido*

✗ *habría hecho*

✗ *habría morido*

## Uses of the Conditional Perfect

### Expressing “I wonder . . .”

The conditional perfect in Spanish is used in a question to indicate speculation about an action completed in the past.

¿Qué habrían hecho?

*I wonder what they would have done.*

¿Qué habría dicho tu papá?

*I wonder what your father would have said.*

### Indicating Probability

The conditional perfect is used to indicate the probability of a past action.

Ellos habrían luchado.

*They would have struggled.*

Mi papá habría dicho la verdad.

*My dad would have told the truth.*

### Expressing Conjecture

The conditional perfect is used in connection with *si* and the pluperfect subjunctive (see page 198) to express conjecture about the past.

—¿Qué habrías hecho si hubieras sido el jefe?

*“What would you have done if you had been the boss?”*

—Habría sido más organizado.

*“I would have been more organized.”*

—¿Adónde habrían ido si hubieran tenido más tiempo?

*“Where would you all have gone if you had had more time?”*

—Habríamos ido a la Argentina también.

*“We would have gone to Argentina as well.”*

The conditional perfect can also be used after the expression *de + haber* + past participle to express conjecture about the past.

De haberlo conocido antes,  
te lo habría presentado.

*If I had known him before,  
I would have introduced him  
to you.*

De haber oído ese rumor, se lo  
habría dicho.

*If I had heard that rumor,  
I would have told him.*

## Exercise

**A** Use the conditional perfect to express the following in Spanish.

1. I wonder what we would have done.

---

2. If I had had time, I would have called you.

---

3. If your brother had been there, you wouldn't have done that.

---

4. If we had known the truth, we wouldn't have worked here.

---

# VERBS

## the subjunctive mood

### Expressions That Signal Use of the Subjunctive

#### ■ Lack of knowledge or existence

no existir	<i>not exist</i>
no haber nada/nadie que	<i>not be anything/anybody that</i>
no saber nada que	<i>not know anything that</i>
no conocer a nadie que	<i>not know anybody who</i>

#### ■ Desire, need, or search for the unknown

buscar algo / a alguien que	<i>look for something/somebody that</i>
necesitar algo / a alguien que	<i>need something/somebody that</i>
querer algo / a alguien que	<i>want something/somebody that</i>

#### ■ Desire for action by others

querer que alguien	<i>want somebody to</i>
preferir que alguien	<i>prefer that somebody</i>
esperar que alguien	<i>hope that somebody</i>
desear que alguien	<i>desire that somebody</i>
ojalá que	<i>hope that</i>

#### ■ Attempt to control the actions of others

pedirle a alguien que	<i>ask somebody to</i>
rogarle a alguien que	<i>beg somebody to</i>
suplicarle a alguien que	<i>beg somebody to</i>
implorarlo a alguien que	<i>implore somebody to</i>
recomendarle a alguien que	<i>recommend to somebody that</i>
aconsejarle a alguien que	<i>advise somebody to</i>
sugerirle a alguien que	<i>suggest to somebody that</i>
exigirle a alguien que	<i>demand that somebody</i>
mandarle a alguien que	<i>command somebody to</i>
ordenarle a alguien que	<i>order somebody to</i>
decirle a alguien que	<i>tell somebody to</i>
prohibirle a alguien que	<i>prohibit somebody from</i>
impedirle a alguien que	<i>stop somebody from</i>

**■ Declaration of feeling**

ser bueno que	<i>be good that</i>
ser maravilloso que	<i>be wonderful that</i>
ser fantástico que	<i>be fantastic that</i>
ser sorprendente que	<i>be surprising that</i>
ser malo que	<i>be bad that</i>
ser horrible que	<i>be horrible that</i>
ser una lástima que	<i>be a shame that</i>
alegrarse de que	<i>be glad that</i>
estar contento de que	<i>be happy that</i>
sentir que	<i>be sorry that</i>
lamentar que	<i>regret that</i>

**■ Doubt**

dudar que	<i>doubt that</i>
no creer que	<i>not believe that</i>
no estar seguro (de) que	<i>not be sure that</i>
no es seguro que	<i>it's not certain that</i>
no es cierto que	<i>it's not true that</i>
ser posible que	<i>be possible that</i>
ser imposible que	<i>be impossible that</i>
ser probable que	<i>be probable that</i>
ser improbable que	<i>be improbable that</i>
tal vez	<i>maybe</i>
quizá/quizás	<i>perhaps</i>
acaso	<i>perhaps</i>

**■ Later action**

cuando	<i>when</i>
mientras	<i>while</i>
en cuanto	<i>as soon as</i>
tan pronto como	<i>as soon as</i>
antes que	<i>before</i>
después que	<i>after</i>
hasta que	<i>until</i>

**■ Conditional action**

siempre y cuando	<i>as long as</i>
con tal (de) que	<i>providing</i>
a menos que	<i>unless</i>
en caso (de) que	<i>in case</i>

**■ Avoidance of interference**

sin que	<i>without</i>
---------	----------------

■ **Purpose of action**

para que	<i>so that</i>
a fin de que	<i>so that</i>
por que	<i>so that</i>

■ **Wish**

ojalá (que)*	<i>wish (that)</i>
--------------	--------------------

\*This triggers use of the imperfect subjunctive.

---

In Spanish, verbs are expressed in the subjunctive mood according to set patterns when the subject feels some emotion, uncertainty, or desire about the action or situation. The subject's feelings are expressed with an indicative verb in a beginning clause that triggers use of the subjunctive in the clause that follows.

Review the expressions that trigger use of the subjunctive in the chart above.

# VERBS

## the present subjunctive

### Formation

Stem (yo form of the present indicative tense minus o/oy) + endings

EXAMPLES	hablar	pensar	comer	volver	decir	escribir	pedir	tener
	hablo	pienso	como	vuelvo	digo	escribo	pido	tengo
	habl-	piens-	com-	vuelv-	dig-	escrib-	pid-	teng-

### Endings

#### **-ar** VERBS

yo	-e	nosotros(-as)	-emos
tú	-es	vosotros(-as)	-éis
usted/él/ella	-e		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-en		

#### **-er** AND **-ir** VERBS

yo	-a	nosotros(-as)	-amos
tú	-as	vosotros(-as)	-áis
usted/él/ella	-a		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-an		

### Stem Changes

**-Ar** and **-er** stem-changing verbs do not change stems in the *nosotros* and *vosotros* forms. **-Ir** stem-changing verbs have a stem change (the second one indicated in parentheses) in the *nosotros* and *vosotros* forms.

INFINITIVE	<i>nosotros</i> FORM	<i>vosotros</i> FORM
<b>arrepentir</b> (ie, i)	arrepintamos	arrepintáis
<b>divertir</b> (ie, i)	divirtamos	divirtáis
<b>sentir</b> (ie, i)	sintamos	sintáis
<b>pedir</b> (i, i)	pidamos	pidáis
<b>servir</b> (i, i)	sirvamos	sirváis
<b>dormir</b> (ue, u)	durmamos	durmáis
<b>morir</b> (ue, u)	muramos	muráis

## Automatic Spelling Changes in Conjugations

### VERBS THAT END IN **-car**

yo	-que	nosotros(-as)	-quemos
tú	-ques	vosotros(-as)	-quéis
usted/él/ella	-que		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-quen		

### VERBS THAT END IN **-gar**

yo	-gue	nosotros(-as)	-guemos
tú	-gues	vosotros(-as)	-guéis
usted/él/ella	-gue		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-guen		

### VERBS THAT END IN **-guar**

yo	-güe	nosotros(-as)	-güemos
tú	-gües	vosotros(-as)	-güéis
usted/él/ella	-güe		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-güen		

### VERBS THAT END IN **-zar**

yo	-ce	nosotros(-as)	-cemos
tú	-ces	vosotros(-as)	-ceis
usted/él/ella	-ce		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-cen		

### VERBS THAT END IN **-ger** OR **-gir**

yo	-ja	nosotros(-as)	-jamos
tú	-jas	vosotros(-as)	-jáis
usted/él/ella	-ja		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-jan		

## Verbs That Are Irregular in the Present Subjunctive

<b>ser</b>		<b>ver</b>		<b>saber</b>	
sea	seamos	vea	veamos	sepa	sepamos
seas	seáis	veas	veáis	sepas	sepáis
sea		vea		sepa	
sean		vean		sepan	
<b>ir</b>		<b>haber</b>			
vaya	vayamos	haya	hayamos		
vayas	vayáis	hayas	hayáis		
vaya		haya			
vayan		hayan			

## Commands

### Affirmative Commands

	<b>usted</b>	<b>ustedes</b>	<b>nosotros</b>	<b>tú</b>	<b>vosotros</b>
	SUBJUNCTIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE		INFINITIVE
INFINITIVE	<i>Ud.</i> FORM	<i>Uds.</i> FORM	<i>nosotros</i> FORM	INDICATIVE <i>Ud.</i> FORM	MINUS <i>r</i> PLUS <i>d</i>
hablar	hable	hablen	hablemos	habla	hablad
comer	coma	coman	comamos	come	comed
escribir	escriba	escriban	escribamos	escribe	escribid

Object pronouns are attached to the end of affirmative commands.

comer	cómalo	cómanlo	comámoslo	cómelo	comedlo
sentarse	siéntese	siéntense	sentémonos*	siéntate	sentados
dar	déselo	dénsele	démoselo*	dásele	dádselo

\*Drop the s from -mos when it is followed by *nos* or *se*.

### IRREGULAR FORMS OF AFFIRMATIVE *tú* COMMANDS

<b>hacer</b>	haz
<b>ir</b>	ve
<b>poner</b>	pon
<b>salir</b>	sal
<b>tener</b>	ten
<b>venir</b>	ven

### Negative Commands

	<b>usted</b>	<b>ustedes</b>	<b>nosotros</b>	<b>tú</b>	<b>vosotros</b>
	<i>no</i> +	<i>no</i> +	<i>no</i> +	<i>no</i> +	<i>no</i> +
	SUBJUNCTIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
INFINITIVE	<i>Ud.</i> FORM	<i>Uds.</i> FORM	<i>nosotros</i> FORM	<i>tu</i> FORM	<i>vosotros</i> FORM
hablar	no hable	no hablen	no hablemos	no hables	no habléis
comer	no coma	no coman	no comamos	no comas	no comáis
escribir	no escriba	no escriban	no escribamos	no escribas	no escribáis

Object pronouns are placed between *no* and the verb.

comer	no lo coma	no lo coman	no lo comamos	no lo comas	no lo comáis
sentarse	no se siente	no se sienten	no nos sentemos	no te sientes	no os sentéis
dar	no se lo dé	no se lo den	no se lo demos	no se lo des	no se lo deis

Review the forms in the charts on the preceding pages.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Be sure to use the *yo* form of the present indicative tense to determine the correct subjunctive stem.

~~X~~ *tena*

~~X~~ *haca*

~~X~~ *pona*

Be sure to make stem changes in *-ar* and *-er* verbs.

~~X~~ *pense*

~~X~~ *volva*

~~X~~ *perda*

Do not make stem changes in the *nosotros* and *vosotros* forms of *-ar* and *-er* verbs.

~~X~~ *piensem*

~~X~~ *vuelvam*

~~X~~ *pierda*

Be sure to make stem changes in the *nosotros* and *vosotros* forms of *-ir* verbs.

~~X~~ *dormam*

~~X~~ *divertam*

~~X~~ *servam*

Be aware of automatic spelling changes.

~~X~~ *almuerze*

~~X~~ *busce*

~~X~~ *juege*

~~X~~ *averigue*

~~X~~ *recoga*

~~X~~ *tinga*

## Uses of the Present Subjunctive

When the verb that triggers subjunctive use is in the present or future tense, the verb in the clause that follows is in the present subjunctive.

### Expressing What Seems Not to Exist

The present subjunctive in Spanish is used to express that somebody or something doesn't exist, at least in the opinion of the speaker.

No hay ningún trabajo que me interese.

*There is no job that interests me.*

No veo nada que me guste.

*I don't see anything I like.*

No hay nadie que me comprenda.

*There is nobody who understands me.*

No existe nadie que cocine mejor.

*There's nobody who cooks better.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

~~X~~ No hay nada que me gusta.

~~X~~ No hay nadie que me comprende.

~~X~~ No conozco a nadie que vive aquí.

## Expressing Desired Characteristics

The present subjunctive is used to describe the characteristics desired in someone or something, but the actual person or object sought is as yet unknown.

### INDICATIVE

Busco a mi amigo que habla español.

*I'm looking for my friend who speaks Spanish.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE

Busco un amigo que hable español.

*I'm looking for a (possible) friend who speaks Spanish.*

### INDICATIVE

Nuestros amigos tienen una casa que tiene piscina.

*Our friends have a house that has a swimming pool.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE

Nosotros queremos una casa que tenga piscina.

*We want (to find) a house that has a swimming pool.*

### INDICATIVE

Germán tiene un puesto que le paga bien.

*Germán has a job that pays him well.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE

Germán necesita un puesto que le pague bien.

*Germán needs (to find) a job that pays him well.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Use the indicative if you can picture the actual person or item in question. Use the subjunctive if you only have an idea about what the wished-for person or item should be like.

✗ Busco un asistente que habla español.

✗ Germán quiere un puesto que le paga bien.

■ The “personal *a*,” indicating that the direct object is a person, is not used when the person is as yet unknown.

### INDICATIVE

Necesito a mi novio, quien me comprende.

*I need my boyfriend, who understands me.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE

Necesito un novio que me comprenda.

*I need (to find) a boyfriend who understands me.*

Nevertheless, the “personal *a*” is used before *alguien* and *nadie* when they are direct objects, even if they are unknown.

Busco a alguien que me pueda  
ayudar.  
No he encontrado a nadie que  
sepa hacer esto.

*I'm looking for somebody who  
can help me.  
I haven't found anybody who  
knows how to do this.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Busco mi amiga Susana.
- ✗ Busco alguien.
- ✗ No busco nadie.

## Expressing Desire for Action

The subjunctive is used when the subject expresses a desire for action by another person or other people.

Quiero que estudies.  
María prefiere que te vayas.  
Esperamos que no lleguen tarde.  
Mis padres prefieren que trabaje  
con ellos.  
Ojalá que no llueva.

*I want you to study.  
María would like you to leave.  
We hope they don't arrive late.  
My parents prefer that I work with  
them.  
I hope it doesn't rain. (May God  
grant that it not rain.)  
I hope we will be able to see each  
other this summer. (May God  
grant that we see each other  
this summer.)*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not translate the English construction word for word.

- ✗ Quiero tú estudiar.
- ✗ Esperamos que no llegan tarde.
- ✗ Ojalá que no llueve.

When the action of the second verb is to be performed by the subject of the first verb, an infinitive construction is used instead of the subjunctive.

#### INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT

Quiero estudiar.

*I want to study.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS

Quiero que estudies.

*I want you to study.*

**INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT**

Preferimos comer aquí.

*We prefer to eat here.***SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS**

Preferimos que coma aquí.

*We prefer that he eat here.***INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT**

(Ella) espera ser médico.

*She hopes to be a doctor.***SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS**

(Ella) espera que (él) sea médico.

*She hopes he will be a doctor.***INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT**

Espero poder ir a la fiesta.

*I hope I can go to the party.***SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS**

Espero que puedas ir a la fiesta.

*I hope you can go to the party.***AVOID THE *Blunder*****X** Ella espera que (ella misma) pueda ser médico.**X** Preferimos que (él) come aquí.**Expressing Attempt to Control an Action**

The present subjunctive is used to indicate an attempt to control the actions of others.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** subject + verb + direct object + infinitive

**SPANISH PATTERN** (subject) + indirect object + verb + *que*  
+ subjunctive verb

The subject has one of several different intentions:

- To make a request

Te pido que me acompañes.

*I'm asking you to go with me.*

Les ruego que me dejen ir.

*I beg you all to let me go.*

Me suplica que lo perdone.

*He begs me to forgive him.*

Le implora que tenga paciencia.

*He begs her to be patient.*

- To give advice

El consejero me recomienda  
que estudie un idioma.*The counselor recommends that  
I study a language.*

Yo te sugiero que vayas a casa.

*I suggest that you go home.*El médico le aconseja que pierda  
peso.*The doctor advises her to lose  
weight.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the infinitive to indicate requests or to give advice.

✗ Pido a ti acompañarme.

✗ Sugiero a ti ir a casa.

### ■ To make a demand

El jefe nos exige que trabajemos.

*The boss demands that we work.*

La maestra le manda a él que se siente.

*The teacher orders him to sit down.*

El oficial les ordena a ellos que marchen.

*The officer orders them to march.*

Mi madre me dice que la ayude.

*My mother tells me to help her.*

This construction is an alternative to the infinitive construction described on pages 99–100. Both patterns are correct.

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not leave out the indirect object pronoun.

✗ El jefe exige que trabajemos.

✗ La maestra manda a él que se siente.

✗ El oficial ordena a ellos que marchen.

### ■ To prohibit an action

Sus padres les prohíben que se casen.

*Their parents forbid them to marry.*

El guardia nos impide que entremos.

*The guard stops us from entering.*

This construction is an alternative to the infinitive construction described on pages 99–100. Both patterns are correct.

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not leave out the indirect object pronoun.

✗ Sus padres prohíben que se casen.

✗ El guardia impide que entremos.

## Expressing Feelings About a Fact

The subjunctive is used when there is an expression of personal feeling or emotion about a fact.

Es fantástico que estés aquí conmigo.	<i>It's fantastic that you're here with me.</i>
Es una lástima que te vayas.	<i>It's a shame that you're leaving.</i>
Me alegro mucho de que te sientas mejor.	<i>I'm so glad you feel better.</i>
Siento mucho que no te guste.	<i>I'm sorry you don't like it.</i>

When expressing emotion, if the second verb indicates an action performed by the subject of the first verb, an infinitive construction after a preposition is used instead of the subjunctive after *que* (see page 97).

### INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT

Estoy contenta de estar aquí.	<i>I'm glad I'm here.</i>
-------------------------------	---------------------------

### SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS

Estoy contenta que estés aquí.	<i>I'm glad you're here.</i>
--------------------------------	------------------------------

### INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT

Siento no poder visitarte.	<i>I'm sorry I can't visit you.</i>
----------------------------	-------------------------------------

### SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS

Siento que no puedas visitarme.	<i>I'm sorry you can't visit me.</i>
---------------------------------	--------------------------------------

## AVOID THE

## Blunder

✗ Estoy contenta que estoy aquí.

✗ Siento que no puedo visitarte.

## Expressing Doubt

The subjunctive is used when there is an expression of doubt, possibility, impossibility, probability, or improbability in the present or future.

### INDICATIVE

Creo que Julia viene mañana.	<i>I think Julia is coming tomorrow.</i>
------------------------------	------------------------------------------

### SUBJUNCTIVE

No creo que Julia venga mañana.	<i>I don't think Julia is coming tomorrow.</i>
---------------------------------	------------------------------------------------

### INDICATIVE

Estoy segura de que es Martín.	<i>I'm sure it's Martín.</i>
--------------------------------	------------------------------

### SUBJUNCTIVE

No estoy segura de que sea Martín.	<i>I'm not sure it's Martín.</i>
------------------------------------	----------------------------------

**INDICATIVE**

Es cierto que es su novio.

*It's certain that he's her boyfriend.***SUBJUNCTIVE**

Es imposible que sea su novio.

*It's not possible that he's her boyfriend.***INDICATIVE**

No hay duda de que es un buen curso.

*There's no doubt that it's a good course.***SUBJUNCTIVE**

Dudo que sea buen curso.

*I doubt it's a good course.***INDICATIVE**

Sé que está en su casa.

*I know she's at home.***SUBJUNCTIVE**

Tal vez/ Quizá(s) no esté en su casa.

*Maybe she's not at home.***AVOID THE***Blunder*

Use the indicative to indicate certainty, the subjunctive to indicate uncertainty.

✗ No creo que Julia viene mañana.

✗ Creo que Julia venga mañana.

## Expressing the Time of a Future Action

The subjunctive is used after certain expressions that indicate the time of future action.

- *cuando* and *mientras* when they refer to a future action

Te llamo/ Te voy a llamar/

*I'll call you when you're not busy.*

Te llamaré cuando no estés ocupada.

Te lo digo cuando llegues a casa.

*I'll tell you when you get home.*

Mis primos visitarán todos los museos mientras estén aquí.

*My cousins will go to all the museums while they're here.*

When *cuando* or *mientras* indicates simultaneous action, it is followed by a verb in the indicative.

Siempre me llamas cuando estoy ocupada.

*You always call me when I'm busy.*

En la mañana, mientras Claudio prepara el desayuno, Natalia lee el periódico.

*In the morning, while Claudio prepares breakfast, Natalia reads the newspaper.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Te lo digo cuando llegas a casa.
- ✗ Siempre me llamas cuando esté ocupada.

### ■ *en cuanto* and *tan pronto como*

Vamos a empezar en cuanto  
vengan los otros.

*We're going to start as soon as  
the others get here.*

Ella se casará tan pronto como  
se gradúe.

*She will get married as soon as  
she graduates.*

### ■ *antes que* and *después que*

Ricardo se graduará antes que  
su hermana empiece a estudiar.

*Ricardo will graduate before his  
sister begins her studies.*

Vamos de vacaciones después  
que Ricardo se gradúe.

*We're going on vacation after  
Ricardo graduates.*

When expressing “before” or “after,” if the second verb indicates action to be performed by the subject of the first verb, an infinitive construction after a preposition is used instead of the subjunctive after *que* (see page 97).

#### INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT (*antes de*)

Comeremos antes de irnos.

*We'll eat before we leave.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS (*antes que*)

Comeremos antes que se vaya él.

*We'll eat before he leaves.*

#### INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT (*después de*)

Ella va a lavar los platos después  
de comer.

*She's going to wash the dishes  
after she eats.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS (*después que*)

Ella va a lavar los platos después  
que comamos.

*She's going to wash the dishes  
after we eat.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Comeremos antes que nos vamos.
- ✗ Comeremos antes que se va él.

### ■ *basta que*

Margarita va a estudiar hasta que  
tenga su doctorado.

*Margarita is going to study until  
she gets her doctorate.*

## Expressing Conditions Required for the Occurrence of an Action

The subjunctive is used after certain expressions that indicate the conditions necessary for the occurrence of some other action.

- *siempre y cuando*

Nos pagarán siempre y cuando terminemos el trabajo.

*They'll pay us if and when we finish the job.*

- *siempre que*

El niño puede ver televisión siempre que haga sus tareas primero.

*The boy can watch television as long as he does his homework first.*

- *con tal (de) que*

Te enseño a tocar la guitarra con tal de que me ayudes con la computadora.

*I'll teach you to play the guitar provided you help me with the computer.*

When using *con tal*, if the second verb indicates action to be performed by the subject of the first verb, an infinitive construction is used after a preposition instead of the subjunctive after *que* (see page 97).

### INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT (*con tal de*)

Iré contigo con tal de no tener que volver sola.

*I'll go with you as long as I don't have to come back alone.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS (*con tal (de) que*)

Iré contigo con tal de que vuelvas conmigo.

*I'll go with you as long as you come back with me.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Nos pagarán siempre y cuando terminamos.
- ✗ El niño puede ver televisión siempre que hace sus tareas.
- ✗ Iré contigo con tal que no tengo que volver sola.

- *a menos que*

Te llamaré a menos que no funcione mi celular.

*I'll call you unless my cell phone doesn't work.*

- *en caso (de) que*

Llévate el paraguas en caso de que llueva.

*Take your umbrella in case it rains.*

Les voy a dar mi número en caso de que necesiten algo.	<i>I'm going to give you all my number in case you need anything.</i>
-----------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## Expressing Avoidance of Interference

The present subjunctive is used after *sin que* to indicate the avoidance of interference with the action of the first verb.

Voy a leer la novela en clase sin que la maestra se dé cuenta.	<i>I'm going to read the novel in class without the teacher noticing it.</i>
Ella va a salir con el chico sin que su madre lo sepa.	<i>She's going to go out with the guy without her mother knowing about it.</i>

When using *sin*, if the second verb indicates action performed by the subject of the first verb, an infinitive construction is used instead of the subjunctive (see page 97).

### INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT (*sin*)

Quiero practicar sin molestar a nadie.	<i>I want to practice without bothering anyone.</i>
-------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------

### SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS (*sin que*)

Quiero practicar sin que nadie me escuche.	<i>I want to practice without anybody listening to me.</i>
-----------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

## Expressing Purpose of Action

The present subjunctive is used after *para que* and *a fin de que* to indicate the purpose of the action of the first verb.

Felipe le va a mandar un boleto a su madre para que ella lo visite.	<i>Felipe is going to send a ticket to his mother so she can visit him.</i>
Te doy la dirección de mi amigo a fin de que puedas localizarlo cuando llegues.	<i>I'll give you my friend's address so that you can contact him when you arrive.</i>

When expressing purpose, if the second verb indicates action performed by the subject of the first verb, an infinitive construction is used instead of the subjunctive.

### INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT (*para*)

Su mamá trabaja para poder estudiar.	<i>His mother works so she can study.</i>
-----------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------

### SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS (*para que*)

Su mamá trabaja para que él pueda estudiar.	<i>His mother works so he can study.</i>
------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------

## AVOID THE

*Blunder*

- ✗ Su mamá trabaja para que (ella misma) pueda estudiar.
- ✗ Su mamá trabaja para que él puede estudiar.

**Commands**

The present subjunctive is used in the formation of some commands. Review the forms in the chart on page 163.

Object pronouns are attached to the end of affirmative commands. An accent mark must be added to the stressed syllable of the verb.

Cómalo.	<i>Eat it.</i>
Abríguese.	<i>Put your coat on. (Wrap yourself up.)</i>
Dígaselo.	<i>Tell it to him.</i>
Váyanse de aquí.	<i>Get out of here.</i>

## AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Do not attach object pronouns to the verb in negative commands.

- ✗ no cómalo
- ✗ no siéntense
- ✗ no déselo

Affirmative commands of the verbs *ir* and *irse* in the *nosotros* form use the indicative instead of the subjunctive.

Vamos al cine.	<i>Let's go to the movies.</i>
Vámonos.	<i>Let's go./Let's leave.</i>

As an alternative to the *nosotros* command for other verbs, *vamos a* plus the infinitive can be used.

Comamos.	}	<i>Let's eat.</i>
Vamos a comer.		
Sentémonos aquí.	}	<i>Let's sit here.</i>
Vamos a sentarnos aquí.		

Negative commands of the verbs *ir* and *irse* use the subjunctive.

No vayamos al cine.	<i>Let's not go to the movies.</i>
No nos vayamos.	<i>Let's not leave.</i>

## Exercises

**A** Write the appropriate form—infinite, indicative, or subjunctive—of the verb in parentheses.

1. Buscamos una casa que \_\_\_\_\_ (tener) cuatro dormitorios.
2. Conozco a una persona que \_\_\_\_\_ (hablar) cinco idiomas.
3. No hay ningún postre que le \_\_\_\_\_ (gustar) a él.
4. El profesor nos exige que \_\_\_\_\_ (escribir) en español.
5. Por favor, no me \_\_\_\_\_ (llamar, tú) por la mañana.
6. Voy a buscar trabajo tan pronto como \_\_\_\_\_ (llegar) a la ciudad.
7. Estoy segura que \_\_\_\_\_ (venir, ellos) mañana.
8. Jaime no cree que lo \_\_\_\_\_ (aceptar, ellos) en la universidad.
9. Esperamos \_\_\_\_\_ (ir) a la reunión.
10. Esperamos que \_\_\_\_\_ (ir, ustedes) a la reunión.

**B** Express the following in Spanish.

1. *There's nobody who cooks like my mother.*  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. *We're looking for a manager who speaks Spanish.*  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. *I hope you come to the party.*  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. *She advises you to work harder.*  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. *It's wonderful that you're here!*  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. *He doubts that I can do it.*  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. *I'll call you as soon as I know the news.*  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. *I'll pick you up unless I have to work.*

\_\_\_\_\_

9. *She goes out without his knowing it.*

\_\_\_\_\_

10. *They'll save money so they can travel.*

\_\_\_\_\_

**C** Write commands for the following situations.

1. Tell a child to come with you.

\_\_\_\_\_ (venir)

2. Tell someone you hardly know to please sit down.

\_\_\_\_\_ (sentarse)

3. Tell a group of people to stand up.

\_\_\_\_\_ (levantarse)

4. Suggest to your friends that you go to the movies.

\_\_\_\_\_ (ir)

**D** Now write the commands in Exercise C as negative commands.

1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_

# VERBS

## the preterite perfect subjunctive

### Formation

Present subjunctive of *haber* + past participle

### The Present Subjunctive of *haber*

yo	haya	nosotros(-as)	hayamos
tú	hayas	vosotros(-as)	hayáis
usted/él/ella	haya		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	hayan		

### Past Participle Formation

Verb stem (infinitive minus -ar/-er/-ir) +	-ar verbs	-er verbs	-ir verbs
	-ado	-ido	-ido
	<b>hablar</b>	<b>comer</b>	<b>vivir</b>
	hablado	comido	vivido

### IRREGULAR PARTICIPLES

<b>abrir</b>	abierto	<b>poner</b>	puesto
<b>cubrir</b>	cubierto	<b>oponer</b>	opuesto
<b>descubrir</b>	descubierto	<b>proponer</b>	propuesto
<b>decir</b>	dicho	<b>ver</b>	visto
<b>predecir</b>	predicho	<b>prever</b>	previsto
<b>escribir</b>	escrito	<b>volver</b>	vuelto
<b>describir</b>	descrito	<b>devolver</b>	devuelto
<b>prescribir</b>	prescrito	<b>revolver</b>	revuelto
<b>hacer</b>	hecho	<b>resolver</b>	resuelto
<b>morir</b>	muerto	<b>romper</b>	roto

Review the forms in the chart on the preceding page.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Note that the present subjunctive tense of *haber* is irregular. Be sure to learn the irregular past participle forms.

✗ que yo ha decido

✗ que él ha escibido

## Uses of the Preterite Perfect Subjunctive

The preterite perfect subjunctive is used to express present or future emotion, doubt, hope, and other feelings about what may or may not have occurred in the past. It follows a “subjunctive signal” that is expressed in the present or future tense.

### Expressing What Seems Not to Have Existed

The subjunctive is used to express what—at least for the speaker or writer—doesn’t exist. The preterite perfect subjunctive describes that person or thing according to something that may or may not have occurred in the past.

No veo a nadie que haya  
estudiado conmigo el año  
pasado.

*I don't see anybody who studied  
with me last year.*

No hay ninguna receta aquí que  
haya sido comprobada en la  
cocina.

*There isn't a single recipe here  
that's been kitchen-tested.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not forget the “personal *a*” before *nadie*.

✗ No veo nadie que haya estudiado conmigo.

✗ No conozco nadie que haya vivido aquí.

## Expressing Desired Characteristics Based on Experience

Contrary to English usage, the subjunctive is used in Spanish to refer to someone who is needed by the subject, but who is as yet unknown to him or her. The preterite perfect subjunctive describes what kind of person this could be by telling what he or she has already done.

Necesito a alguien que haya  
vivido en ese pueblo.

Busco un asistente que haya  
estudiado español.

Quiero un novio que haya  
empezado su carrera.

*I need someone who has lived  
in that town.*

*I'm looking for an assistant  
who has studied Spanish.*

*I want a boyfriend who has  
already started his career.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not forget the “personal *a*” before *alguien*.

✗ Necesito alguien que haya vivido allí.

Do not use an indicative form, as you would in English. Use the subjunctive instead.

✗ Busco un asistente que ha estudiado español.

✗ Quiero un novio que ha empezado su carrera.

## Expressing Other Desired Characteristics

The subjunctive in Spanish is also used to refer to something that is needed by the subject, but is as yet unknown to him or her. A passive construction in the preterite perfect subjunctive is used to describe what is desired according to what has been done to it.

Queremos un apartamento que  
haya sido pintado recientemente.

Busco los exámenes que no hayan  
sido corregidos.

*We want an apartment that has  
been painted recently.*

*I'm looking for the exams that  
haven't been corrected.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Queremos un apartamento que ha sido pintado.

✗ Busco los exámenes que no han sido corregidos.

## Expressing Hopes About a Past Event

The preterite perfect subjunctive is used when the subject indicates a hope or wish about a past event.

Esperamos que no hayan llegado  
tarde.

Ojalá que no haya llovido.

*We hope they didn't arrive late.*

*I hope it didn't rain.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use a past indicative tense, as you would in English.

✗ *Esperamos que no llegaron tarde.*

✗ *Ojalá que no llovió.*

## Expressing Present Feelings About the Past

The preterite perfect subjunctive is used when there is an expression of present feeling or emotion about a past occurrence.

Es fantástico que hayas estado  
aquí conmigo.

*It's fantastic that you were here  
with me.*

Es una lástima que se haya ido.

*It's a shame that he left.*

Me alegro que te hayas mejorado.

*I'm glad you got better.*

Siento mucho que no te haya  
gustado.

*I'm very sorry you didn't like it.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ *Es una lástima que se fue.*

✗ *Me alegro que te mejoraste.*

When the second verb expresses an action performed by the subject of the first verb, an infinitive construction (*haber* + past participle) is used instead of the subjunctive.

### ONE PERSON

Ella está contenta de haber  
estado aquí.

*She's glad she was here.*

### TWO DIFFERENT PEOPLE

Ella está contenta que hayas  
estado aquí.

*She's glad you were here.*

### ONE PERSON

Siento no haber podido visitarte.

*I'm sorry I couldn't visit you.*

### TWO DIFFERENT PEOPLE

Siento que no hayas podido  
visitarme.

*I'm sorry you couldn't visit me.*

## Expressing Present Doubt About Past Action

The preterite perfect subjunctive is used when there is a present expression of doubt, possibility, impossibility, probability, or improbability about what occurred in the past.

No creo que Julia haya ido a la fiesta.	<i>I don't think Julia went to the party.</i>
No estoy segura que haya sido Martín.	<i>I'm not sure it was Martín.</i>
Es imposible que haya ocurrido eso.	<i>It's not possible that that happened.</i>
Dudo que haya sido muy buen curso.	<i>I doubt that it was a very good course.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

When there is present doubt about a past occurrence, do not use a past indicative tense, as you would in English.

- ✗ No creo que Julia fue a la fiesta.
- ✗ No estoy segura que era Martín.

### Expressing Possibility of Occurrence

The preterite perfect subjunctive is used after the following expressions to indicate what may or may not have happened at some future time.

- *siempre y cuando*  
 Nos pagarán siempre y cuando hayamos terminado el trabajo.      *They'll pay us only when we have finished the job.*
- *con tal (de) que*  
 El abogado lo va a ayudar con tal que le haya dicho toda la verdad.      *The lawyer is going to help him provided he has told him the whole truth.*
- *a menos que*  
 Puedes ver la televisión después de cenar a menos que no hayas hecho tus tareas.      *You can watch television after dinner unless you haven't done your homework.*
- *en caso de que*  
 He hecho una sopa en caso de que no hayas comido.      *I made soup in case you haven't eaten.*
- *basta que*  
 Me quedará en la casa de mis padres hasta que haya encontrado trabajo.      *I'll stay at my parents' house until I have found a job.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the indicative with these expressions, as you would in English.

- ✗ Llámame cuando has solucionado el problema.
- ✗ Vamos a empezar en cuanto todos se han sentado.
- ✗ El abogado lo va a ayudar con tal que le ha dicho toda la verdad.
- ✗ Me quedará en la casa de mis padres hasta que he encontrado trabajo.

### Expressing Completion of Future Action

The preterite perfect subjunctive is used after *cuando*, *en cuanto*, and *tan pronto como* to indicate when future action will have been completed.

#### ■ *cuando*

Llámame cuando hayas  
solucionado el problema.  
Vamos a celebrar cuando ellas  
se hayan graduado.

*Call me when you have solved  
the problem.  
We'll celebrate when they have  
graduated.*

#### ■ *en cuanto*

Vamos a empezar en cuanto  
todos se hayan sentado.

*We're going to start as soon as  
everybody has sat down.*

#### ■ *tan pronto como*

Ella se casará tan pronto como  
su novio haya empezado  
a trabajar.

*She will get married as soon as  
her boyfriend has started  
to work.*

The preterite perfect subjunctive is used after the following expressions when the verb in the first clause expresses future action and the subject of the second clause is different from that of the first. When the action is to be performed by the subject of the first verb, there is no *que* and an infinitive construction (*haber* + past participle) is used instead.

#### INFINITIVE—ONE PERSON (*con tal de*)

Iré contigo al cine con tal de  
haber arreglado el coche.

*I'll go to the movies with you  
provided I have fixed the car.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE—TWO DIFFERENT PEOPLE (*con tal (de) que*)

Iré contigo al cine con tal que  
hayas arreglado el coche.

*I'll go to the movies with you  
provided you have fixed the car.*

**INFINITIVE—ONE PERSON (*antes de*)**

Ella lo sabrá antes de haber salido. *She'll find out before she has left.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE—TWO DIFFERENT PEOPLE (*antes que*)**

Lo sabremos antes que haya salido mi hermano. *We'll find out before my brother has left.*

**INFINITIVE—ONE PERSON (*después de*)**

Ella va a lavar los platos después de haber terminado de comer. *She's going to wash the dishes after she has finished eating.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE—TWO DIFFERENT PEOPLE (*después que*)**

Ella va a lavar los platos después que hayamos terminado de comer. *She's going to wash the dishes after we have finished eating.*

**AVOID THE****Blunder**

Use the infinitive when the subjects are the same. Use the subjunctive when they are different.

✗ Ella lo sabrá antes que ha salido.

✗ Lo sabremos antes que ha salido mi hermano.

**Exercise**

**A** Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Carmen busca una asistente que \_\_\_\_\_ (estudiar) español por más de dos años.
2. No hay nadie aquí que \_\_\_\_\_ (terminar) sus estudios.
3. Nos alegra que \_\_\_\_\_ (poder, tú) visitarnos la semana pasada.
4. Siento mucho no \_\_\_\_\_ (poder) atenderte ayer.
5. Iré de compras con tal que mi jefe me \_\_\_\_\_ (pagar).

# VERBS

## the imperfect subjunctive

### Formation

Stem (*ellos* form of the preterite minus *-ron*) + endings

INFINITIVE	3PL. PRETERITE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE STEM
<b>hablar</b>	hablaron	habla-
<b>comer</b>	comieron	comie-
<b>escribir</b>	escribieron	escribie-
<b>dormir</b>	durmieron	durmie-
<b>tener</b>	tuvieron	tuvie-
<b>ir</b>	fueron	fue-

### Endings

yo	-ra	nosotros(-as)	-ramos
tú	-ras	vosotros(-as)	-rais
usted/él/ella	-ra		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-ran		

### ALTERNATIVE ENDINGS

yo	-se	nosotros(-as)	-semos
tú	-ses	vosotros(-as)	-seis
usted/él/ella	-se		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	-sen		

### The Imperfect Subjunctive of Pattern 1 Verbs

#### **-ar VERBS**

##### **hablar**

hablara	habláramos	OR	hablase	hablásemos
hablaras	hablarais		hablases	habláseis
hablara			hablase	
hablaran			hablasen	

**-er VERBS****comer**

comiera	comiéramos	OR	comiese	comiésemos
comieras	comierais		comieses	comiesen
comiera			comiese	
comieran			comiesen	

**leer**

leyera	leyéramos	OR	leyese	leyésemos
leyeras	leyerais		leyeses	leyeseis
leyera			leyese	
leyeran			leyesen	

**-ir VERBS****escribir**

escribiera	escribiéramos	OR	escribiese	escribiésemos
escribieras	escribierais		escribieses	escribieseis
escribiera			escribiese	
escribieran			escribiesen	

**-ir STEM-CHANGING VERBS****dormir**

durmiera	durmiéramos	OR	durmiese	durmiésemos
durmieras	durmierais		durmieses	durmieseis
durmiera			durmiese	
durmieran			durmiesen	

**The Imperfect Subjunctive of Pattern 2 Verbs****tener**

tuviera	tuviéramos	OR	tuviese	tuviésemos
tuvieras	tuvierais		tuvieses	tuvieseis
tuviera			tuviese	
tuvieran			tuviesen	

**ir**

fuera	fuéramos	OR	fuese	fuésemos
fueras	fuerais		fueses	fueseis
fuera			fuese	
fuera			fuesen	

Review the forms in the charts on the preceding pages.

To form the imperfect subjunctive in Spanish, begin with the third-person plural form of the preterite indicative tense, delete the *-ron* ending, and add the endings *-ra*, *-ras*, etc.

Keep in mind the various irregularities in the formation of the preterite tense.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ *estara*
- ✗ *leera*
- ✗ *dormiera*
- ✗ *tenera*

Be sure to write an accent mark on the third-last syllable of *nosotros* forms.

- ✗ *trabajamos*
- ✗ *leyeramos*
- ✗ *vivieramos*

## Uses of the Imperfect Subjunctive

Review expressions that trigger the use of the subjunctive (see pages 158–160).

A subjunctive signal expressed in the imperfect or preterite tense is followed by a clause in the imperfect subjunctive that refers to a past action or situation.

### Expressing What Seemed Not to Exist

The imperfect subjunctive in Spanish is used to indicate that—for the speaker—something or someone did not exist.

No había ningún trabajo que me interesara.

No vi nada que me gustara.

No había nadie que me comprendiera.

No existía nadie que cocinara mejor.

*There was no job that interested me.*

*I didn't see anything I liked.*

*There was nobody who understood me.*

*There was nobody who cooked better.*

## Expressing Desired Characteristics

The imperfect subjunctive is used to describe the characteristics that were desired in someone or something, but the actual person or object sought was as yet unknown.

Buscaba/Busqué un asistente que hablara español.	<i>I was looking for/looked for an assistant who spoke Spanish.</i>
Queríamos una casa que tuviera piscina.	<i>We wanted a house that had a swimming pool.</i>
Germán necesitaba un trabajo que le pagara bien.	<i>Germán needed a job that paid him well.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use a past indicative tense in the second clause, as you would in English.

- ✗ Buscaba un asistente que hablaba español.
- ✗ Queríamos una casa que tenía piscina.

■ The “personal *a*,” indicating that the direct object is a person, is not used when the person was as yet unknown.

#### INDICATIVE

Necesitaba a mi novio, quien me comprendía.	<i>I needed my boyfriend, who understood me.</i>
---------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

Necesitaba un novio que me comprendiera.	<i>I needed (to find) a boyfriend who understood me.</i>
------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------

Nevertheless, the “personal *a*” is used before *alguien* and *nadie* when they are direct objects, even if they were unknown.

Buscaba a alguien que me pudiera ayudar.	<i>I was looking for somebody who could help me.</i>
No encontré a nadie que supiera hacer esto.	<i>I didn't find anybody who knew how to do this.</i>

## Expressing Desire for Action

The imperfect subjunctive is used when the subject expresses a past desire for action by another person or other people.

Yo quería que estudiaras.	<i>I wanted you to study.</i>
María prefería que te fueras.	<i>María wanted you to leave.</i>

Esperábamos que no llegaran tarde.

*We hoped they wouldn't arrive late.*

Mis padres preferían que trabajara con ellos.

*My parents preferred that I work with them.*

When the action of the second verb is to be performed by the subject of the first verb, an infinitive construction is used instead of the subjunctive.

**INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT**

Quería estudiar.

*I wanted to study.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS**

Quería que estudiaras.

*I wanted you to study.*

**INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT**

(Ella) esperaba ser médico.

*She hoped to be a doctor.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS**

(Ella) esperaba que (él) fuera médico.

*She hoped he would be a doctor.*

**AVOID THE**

*Blunder*

✗ (Yo) quería que yo estudiara.

✗ Yo quería que tú estudiar.

✗ Ella esperaba que él sería médico.

✗ Ella esperaba que (ella misma) fuera médico.

## Expressing Attempt to Control an Action

The imperfect subjunctive is used to indicate an attempt in the past to control the actions of others.

The subject has one of several different intentions:

■ To report a past request

Te pedí que me acompañaras.

*I asked you to go with me.*

Les rogaba que me dejaran ir.

*I begged you all to let me go.*

Me suplicaba que lo perdonara.

*He begged me to forgive him.*

Le imploró que tuviera paciencia.

*He begged her to be patient.*

■ To report past advice

El consejero me recomendó que estudiara un idioma.

*The counselor recommended that I study a language.*

Yo te sugerí que fueras a casa.

*I suggested that you go home.*

El médico le aconsejó que perdiera peso.

*The doctor advised her to lose weight.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the infinitive to indicate requests or to give advice.

✗ Pedí a ti acompañarme.

✗ Sugerí a ti ir a casa.

### ■ To report a past demand

El jefe nos exigió que trabajáramos. *The boss demanded that we work.*

La maestra le mandó que se sentara. *The teacher ordered him to sit down.*

El oficial les ordenó que marcharan. *The officer ordered them to march.*

Mi madre me dijo que la ayudara. *My mother told me to help her.*

This construction is an alternative to the infinitive construction described on page 99. Both patterns are correct.

### ■ To report a past prohibition

**ENGLISH PATTERN** subject + past-tense verb + direct object  
+ infinitive

**SPANISH PATTERN** subject + indirect object  
+ preterite or imperfect indicative verb  
+ *que* + verb in imperfect subjunctive

Sus padres les prohibieron que se casaran. *Their parents forbade them to marry.*

El guardia nos impedía que entráramos. *The guard stopped us from entering.*

This construction is an alternative to the infinitive construction described on page 99. Both patterns are correct.

## Expressing Past Feelings About Past Action

The imperfect subjunctive is used when there is an expression of past personal feeling or emotion about a fact.

Fue fantástico que estuvieras aquí conmigo. *It was fantastic that you were here with me.*

Fue una lástima que se mudara. *It was a shame that he moved away.*

Me alegraba mucho de que te sintieras mejor. *I was so glad you felt better.*

Sentía mucho que no te gustara. *I was sorry you didn't like it.*

When the second verb indicates an action performed by the subject of the first verb, an infinitive construction is used instead of the subjunctive.

**INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT**

Estaba contenta de estar allí.

*I was glad to be there.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS**

Estaba contenta que estuvieras allí.

*I was glad you were there.*

**INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT**

Sentía no poder visitarte.

*I was sorry I couldn't visit you.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS**

Sentía que no vinieras a visitarme.

*I was sorry you didn't come to visit me.*

**AVOID THE***Blunder*

✗ (Yo) estaba contenta que yo estuviera allí.

✗ Yo sentía que no pudiera visitarte.

## Expressing Past Doubt

The imperfect subjunctive is used to indicate doubt, possibility, impossibility, probability, or improbability in the past.

**INDICATIVE**

Creía que Julia venía mañana.

*I thought Julia was coming tomorrow.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

No creía que Julia viniera.

*I didn't think Julia was coming.*

**INDICATIVE**

Estaba segura de que era Martín.

*I was sure it was Martín.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

No estaba segura de que fuera Martín.

*I wasn't sure it was Martín.*

**INDICATIVE**

Fue cierto que era su novio.

*It was certain that he was her boyfriend.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

Fue imposible que fuera su novio.

*It wasn't possible that he was her boyfriend.*

**INDICATIVE**

No había duda de que fue un buen curso.

*There was no doubt that it was a good course.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

Dudaba que fuera buen curso.

*I doubted it was a good course.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Use the indicative to indicate certainty, the subjunctive to indicate uncertainty.

- ✗ Creía que Julia viniera mañana.
- ✗ Estaba segura que fuera Martín.
- ✗ No creía que Julia venía.
- ✗ No estaba segura de que fue Martín.

## Expressing the Time of a Later Action

The imperfect subjunctive is used after certain expressions that indicate the time of later action.

- *cuando* when it refers to later action

Te iba a llamar cuando no estuvieras ocupada.	<i>I was going to call you when you weren't busy.</i>
Se lo iba a decir cuando llegara a casa.	<i>I was going to tell him when he got home.</i>

When *cuando* indicates simultaneous action in the past, it is followed by a verb in the imperfect indicative.

Siempre me llamabas cuando estaba ocupada.	<i>You always called me when I was busy.</i>
Ella siempre me traía flores cuando venía a mi casa.	<i>She always brought me flowers when she came to my house.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Te iba a llamar cuando no estabas ocupada.
- ✗ Se lo iba a decir cuando llegaba a casa.
- ✗ Siempre me llamabas cuando estuviera ocupada.
- ✗ Ella siempre me traía flores cuando viniera a mi casa.

- *en cuanto* and *tan pronto como*

Íbamos a empezar en cuanto vinieran los otros.	<i>We were going to start as soon as the others got here.</i>
Ella se iba a casar tan pronto como se graduara.	<i>She was going to get married as soon as she graduated.</i>

■ *antes que* and *después que*

Ricardo se graduó antes que su  
hermana empezara a estudiar.  
Fuimos de vacaciones después  
que Ricardo se graduara.

*Ricardo graduated before his  
sister began her studies.  
We went on vacation after  
Ricardo graduated.*

When expressing “before” or “after,” if the second verb indicates action to be performed by the subject of the first verb, an infinitive construction is used instead of the subjunctive.

**INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT (*antes de*)**

Comimos antes de salir de casa. *We ate before we left home.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS (*antes que*)**

Comimos antes que se fuera  
mi hermano. *We ate before my brother left.*

**INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT (*después de*)**

Ella lavó los platos después  
de comer. *She washed the dishes after she  
ate.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS (*después que*)**

Ella lavó los platos después  
que comiéramos. *She washed the dishes after we  
ate.*

**AVOID THE *Blunder***

- ✗ Comimos antes que salimos de casa.
- ✗ Ella lavó los platos después que comió.
- ✗ Comimos antes que se fue mi hermano.
- ✗ Ella lavó los platos después que comimos.

■ *hasta que*

Ricardo estudió hasta que supiera  
todos los datos importantes.

*Ricardo studied until he knew all  
the important facts.*

**Expressing Conditions Necessary for the Occurrence  
of an Action**

The imperfect subjunctive is used to indicate the conditions that were necessary for the occurrence of some other action.

■ *siempre y cuando*

Nos pagaban siempre y cuando  
termináramos el trabajo.

*They paid us if and when we  
finished the job.*

■ *con tal (de) que*

Le enseñaba a tocar la guitarra  
con tal de que me ayudara  
con la computadora.

*I taught him to play the guitar  
on the condition that he help  
me with the computer.*

When using *con tal*, if the second verb indicates action to be performed by the subject of the first verb, an infinitive construction is used instead of the subjunctive.

**INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT (*con tal de*)**

La ayudaba con su tarea con  
tal de repasar un poco las  
lecciones.

*He helped her with her homework  
so he could review the lessons  
a bit.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS (*con tal (de) que*)**

La ayudaba con su tarea con tal  
de que ella le prestara su coche.

*He helped her with her homework  
provided she would lend him  
her car.*

**INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT (*con tal de*)**

Trabajaba mucho con tal de  
ganar dinero.

*He worked a lot in order to earn  
money.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS (*con tal (de) que*)**

Trabajaba mucho con tal de que  
su hija pudiera estudiar.

*He worked a lot so that his  
daughter could study.*

**AVOID THE**

*Blunder*

✗ La ayudaba con su tarea con tal de que podía repasar  
las lecciones.

✗ Trabajaba mucho con tal de que podía ganar dinero.

■ *a menos que*

Siempre me llamaba a las ocho  
a menos que no funcionara  
su celular.

*He always called me at eight  
unless his cell phone wasn't  
working.*

■ *en caso (de) que*

Las chicas llevaron el paraguas  
en caso que lloviera.

*The girls took the umbrella in  
case it rained.*

Les di mi número en caso de  
que necesitaran algo.

*I gave them my number in case  
they needed something.*

## Expressing Past Avoidance of Interference

The imperfect subjunctive is used after *sin que* to indicate the avoidance of interference with an action in the past.

Iba a leer la novela en clase sin que la maestra se diera cuenta.	<i>I was going to read the novel in class without the teacher noticing it.</i>
Ella salió con el chico sin que su madre lo supiera.	<i>She went out with the guy without her mother finding out.</i>

When using *sin*, if the second verb indicates action performed by the subject of the first verb, an infinitive construction is used instead of the subjunctive.

### INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT (*sin*)

Quería practicar sin molestar a nadie.	<i>I wanted to practice without bothering anyone.</i>
----------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------

### SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS (*sin que*)

Quería practicar sin que nadie me molestara.	<i>I wanted to practice without being bothered by anyone.</i>
----------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

**X** Quería practicar sin molestando a nadie.

## Expressing Past Purpose

The imperfect subjunctive is used after *para que* and *a fin de que* to indicate the purpose of the action of the first verb, which is in a past tense.

Felipe le mandó un boleto a su madre para que ella lo visitara.	<i>Felipe sent his mother a ticket so she could visit him.</i>
Te di la dirección de mi amigo a fin de que pudieras localizarlo cuando llegaras.	<i>I gave you my friend's address so you could contact him when you arrived.</i>

When expressing purpose, if the second verb indicates action performed by the subject of the first verb, an infinitive construction is used instead of the subjunctive.

### INFINITIVE—SAME SUBJECT (*para*)

Su mamá trabajaba para poder estudiar.	<i>His mother worked so she could study.</i>
----------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------

### SUBJUNCTIVE—DIFFERENT SUBJECTS (*para que*)

Su mamá trabajaba para que él pudiera estudiar.	<i>His mother worked so he could study.</i>
-------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Su mamá trabajaba para que (ella misma) podía estudiar.
- ✗ Su mamá trabajaba para que él podía estudiar.

### Expressing What Appears to Be True

The imperfect subjunctive is used after *como si* to indicate an action or situation that appears to be true but isn't.

Ellos lo tratan como si fuera su hijo.	<i>They treat him as if he were their son.</i>
Habla de la actriz como si la conociera.	<i>He talks about the actress as if he knew her.</i>
La chica sonr�e como si no tuviera tantos problemas.	<i>The girl smiles as if she didn't have so many problems.</i>

### Expressing Wishes

The imperfect subjunctive is used after *ojal  (que)* to indicate a wish that something were true at the present time.

Ojal� que estuvieras aqu�.	<i>I wish you were here.</i>
Ojal� no lloviera tanto.	<i>I wish it didn't rain so much.</i>

### Expressing "If Only"

The imperfect subjunctive is used after *si* to express the notion "if something were true." A conditional clause, telling what would happen in such a case, usually accompanies this construction (see pages 153–154).

Si estuvieras aqu�, nos divertir�amos.	<i>If you were here, we would have fun.</i>
Si tuviera un coche, ir�a a la playa.	<i>If I had a car, I would go to the beach.</i>
Si pudieras viajar a Sudam�rica, �a qu� pa�s ir�as primero?	<i>If you could travel to South America, what country would you go to first?</i>
Si fueras rico, �qu� har�as con el dinero?	<i>If you were rich, what would you do with the money?</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Si podr as viajar...
- ✗ Si pod as viajar...
- ✗ Si eras rico...

## Expressing a Polite Request

The imperfect subjunctive of *querer* is used to make a polite request.

Quisiera hacerle una pregunta.  
Quisiéramos hablar con el  
médico.

*I would like to ask you a question.  
We would like to speak with the  
doctor.*

## Exercises

**A** Circle the most appropriate form of the verb in each of the following sentences.

1. Mi hermana quería encontrar un hombre que **tuviera** | **tenía** | **haya tenido** | **tiene** buen trabajo.
2. Les pedí que me **acompañaron** | **acompañaran** | **acompañaban** | **hayan acompañado** a casa.
3. El gerente le sugirió a Antonio que **solicitaba** | **solicitó** | **haya solicitado** | **solicitar** un puesto en la compañía.
4. Íbamos a salir en cuanto nuestro amigo nos **llame** | **llamaba** | **llamara** | **haya llamado** por teléfono.

**B** Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Sus padres preferían que ella \_\_\_\_\_ (estudiar) medicina.
2. Pablo fue al cine para \_\_\_\_\_ (ver) la nueva película cubana.
3. Guardé el periódico para que tú \_\_\_\_\_ (leer) el artículo sobre tu amigo.

**C** Write a sentence that indicates what would happen if the first sentence in each item below were true.

EXAMPLE No tengo dinero. (compro un coche)

Si tuviera dinero, compraría un coche.

1. No lo quiero. (me caso con él)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Él no me llama todas las noches. (no contesto el teléfono)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. No quieres tocar el piano. (practicar todos los días)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Mi papá no está aquí. (me ayuda)  
\_\_\_\_\_

# VERBS

## the pluperfect subjunctive

### Formation

Imperfect subjunctive of *haber* + past participle

### The Pluperfect Subjunctive of *haber*

yo	hubiera	nosotros(-as)	hubiéramos
tú	hubieras	vosotros(-as)	hubierais
usted/él/ella	hubiera		
ustedes/ellos/ellas	hubieran		

### Past Participle Formation

Verb stem (infinitive minus -ar/-er/-ir) +	-ar verbs	-er verbs	-ir verbs
	-ado	-ido	-ido
	<b>hablar</b>	<b>comer</b>	<b>vivir</b>
	hablado	comido	vivido

### IRREGULAR PARTICIPLES

<b>abrir</b>	abierto	<b>poner</b>	puesto
<b>cubrir</b>	cubierto	<b>oponer</b>	opuesto
<b>descubrir</b>	descubierto	<b>proponer</b>	propuesto
<b>decir</b>	dicho	<b>ver</b>	visto
<b>predecir</b>	predicho	<b>prever</b>	previsto
<b>escribir</b>	escrito	<b>volver</b>	vuelto
<b>describir</b>	descrito	<b>devolver</b>	devuelto
<b>prescribir</b>	prescrito	<b>revolver</b>	revuelto
<b>hacer</b>	hecho	<b>resolver</b>	resuelto
<b>morir</b>	muerto	<b>romper</b>	roto

Review the forms in the chart on the preceding page.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Be sure to learn the irregular past participle forms.

- ✗ hubiera oponido
- ✗ hubiéramos veído

## Uses of the Pluperfect Subjunctive

### Expressing “If Only” Concerning Past Action

The pluperfect subjunctive in Spanish is used to express “if something had been true” in the past. A clause with a verb in the conditional perfect, indicating what would have occurred in such a case, usually accompanies this construction. (See page 156.)

Si tú me hubieras llamado, yo te habría ayudado.	<i>If you had called me, I would have helped you.</i>
Si yo lo hubiera visto, lo habría saludado.	<i>If I had seen him, I would have said hello.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the pluperfect indicative tense, as you would in English.

- ✗ Si me habías llamado...
- ✗ Si lo había visto...

### Using the Pluperfect Subjunctive as an Alternative to the Conditional Perfect

The pluperfect subjunctive can be used as an alternative to the conditional perfect.

Si tú me hubieras llamado, yo te hubiera ayudado.	<i>If you had called me, I would have helped you.</i>
Si yo lo hubiera visto, lo hubiera saludado.	<i>If I had seen him, I would have said hello.</i>

## Expressing “Should Have”

The pluperfect subjunctive can be used to express “should have.”

¡Hubieras visto lo que pasó!

*You should have seen what happened!*

Uds. hubieran estado en clase hoy.

*You guys should have been in class today.*

## Exercise

**A** Change the following sentences to indicate what would have happened if the first part had been true.

1. No lo quería. (me casé con él)

---

2. Él no me llamaba todas las noches. (no contestaba el teléfono)

---

3. No quisiste tocar el piano. (practicabas todos los días)

---

4. Mi papá no estuvo aquí. (me ayudó)

---

# REPORTED SPEECH

Reported-speech expressions are used to relate someone's words without using a direct quote.

## Expressing "Say"

*Decir* without an indirect object usually means "to say." In Spanish, as in English, when reporting what someone "says," the tense used in the original statement is also used in the reported-speech expression. When reporting what someone "said," a past tense is used.

The indicative is used to report what someone says or said. The subjunctive is used to report what someone tells or told someone else to do.

TENSE OF ORIGINAL QUOTE	TENSE AFTER <i>dice que</i>	TENSE AFTER <i>dijo que</i>
<b>INDICATIVE</b>		
<b>PRESENT</b>	<b>PRESENT</b>	<b>IMPERFECT</b>
"Trabajo duro". <i>"I work hard."</i>	Dice que trabaja duro. <i>He says he works hard.</i>	Dijo que trabajaba duro. <i>He said he worked hard.</i>
"Voy a trabajar duro". <i>"I'm going to work hard."</i>	Dice que va a trabajar duro. <i>He says he's going to work hard.</i>	Dijo que iba a trabajar duro. <i>He said he was going to work hard.</i>
<b>FUTURE</b>	<b>FUTURE</b>	<b>CONDITIONAL</b>
"Trabajaré duro". <i>"I'll work hard."</i>	Dice que trabajará duro. <i>He says he will work hard.</i>	Dijo que trabajaría duro. <i>He said he would work hard.</i>
<b>PRETERITE PERFECT</b>	<b>PRETERITE PERFECT</b>	<b>PLUPERFECT</b>
"He trabajado duro". <i>"I worked hard."</i>	Dice que ha trabajado duro. <i>He says he has worked hard.</i>	Dijo que había trabajado duro. <i>He said he had worked hard.</i>

TENSE OF ORIGINAL QUOTE	TENSE AFTER <i>dice que</i>	TENSE AFTER <i>dijo que</i>
IMPERFECT "Trabajaba duro". "I worked hard."	IMPERFECT Dice que trabajaba duro. He says he worked hard.	IMPERFECT Dijo que trabajaba duro. He said he worked hard.
PRETERITE "Trabajé duro". "I worked hard."	PRETERITE Dice que trabajó duro. He says he worked hard.	PLUPERFECT Dijo que había trabajado duro. He said he had worked hard.
<b>COMMAND</b>		
IMPERATIVE "¡Trabaje duro!" "Work hard!"	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE Me dice que trabaje duro. He tells me to work hard.	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE Me dijo que trabajara duro. He told me to work hard.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

In English, "that" is optional in reported speech: "He says he worked hard./He says that he worked hard." In Spanish, *que* is not optional.

✗ Dice va a trabajar.

✗ Dijo trabajaba.

Remember that in Spanish, if the ending punctuation is a period or comma, it is placed after the quotation marks. In English it is enclosed within the quotation marks.

✗ "Trabajé duro."

## Expressing "Ask"

*Preguntar* and *pedir* are both translated as "ask" and are both used with an indirect object pronoun. They follow the same patterns of reported speech as *decir*.

■ *Preguntar* is used to ask a question and is followed by a verb in the indicative.

□ Questions seeking information are expressed by using *preguntar* + question words (*qué, quién, dónde, cuánto, cuándo, cómo, and por qué*). (See pages 231–253.)

Me pregunta qué voy a hacer.

Me preguntó qué iba a hacer.

He asks me what I'm going to do.

He asked me what I was going to do.

Les pregunto dónde viven.	<i>I ask them where they live.</i>
Les pregunté dónde vivían.	<i>I asked them where they lived.</i>
Le pregunta cuánto costó.	<i>He asks her how much it cost.</i>
Le preguntó cuánto había costado.	<i>He asked her how much it (bad) cost.</i>
Les preguntamos cuándo saldrán.	<i>We ask them when they'll leave.</i>
Les preguntamos cuándo saldrían.	<i>We asked them when they would leave.</i>
Me preguntan cómo lo hacía.	<i>They ask me how I did it.</i>
Me preguntaban cómo lo hacía.	<i>They asked me how I did it.</i>
Les pregunto por qué lo han hecho.	<i>I ask them why they did it.</i>
Les pregunté por qué lo habían hecho.	<i>I asked them why they had done it.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not forget the accent mark in the question word.

- ✗ Les pregunto donde viven.
- ✗ Me pregunta que voy a hacer.

- Yes-or-no questions are expressed by using *preguntar* + *si*.

Le pregunto si vive cerca.	<i>I ask him if he lives nearby.</i>
Le pregunté si vivía cerca.	<i>I asked him if he lived nearby.</i>
Me preguntan si hablo español.	<i>They ask me if I speak Spanish.</i>
Me preguntaron si hablaba español.	<i>They asked me if I spoke Spanish.</i>
Les pregunta si trabajarán allá.	<i>He asks them if they plan to work there.</i>
Les preguntó si trabajarían allá.	<i>He asked them if they would work there.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

When reporting what someone “asks,” use the same tense as in the original question. When reporting what someone “asked,” use a past tense.

- ✗ Le pregunté si vive cerca.
- ✗ Me preguntaron si hablo español.

■ *Pedir* is used to ask a favor and is followed by *que* + a verb in the subjunctive.

Me pide que lo acompañe.	<i>He asks me to go with him.</i>
Me pidió que lo acompañara.	<i>He asked me to go with him.</i>
Les pido que me disculpen.	<i>I ask them to forgive me.</i>
Les pedí que me disculparan.	<i>I asked them to forgive me.</i>
Les pide que la corrijan.	<i>She asks them to correct her.</i>
Les pidió que la corrigieran.	<i>She asked them to correct her.</i>
Nos piden que no hablemos.	<i>They ask us not to talk.</i>
Nos pidieron que no habláramos.	<i>They asked us not to talk.</i>

### AVOID THE

### *Blunder*

Do not confuse “ask a question” with “ask a favor.”

- ✗ Te pedí dónde vives.
- ✗ Me pregunta acompañarlo.
- ✗ Les pregunto disculparme.

## Exercise

**A** Change the following sentences from direct quotes to reported speech.

- PACO: “Quiero ir al cine”.  
 Paco dice que \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Paco dijo que \_\_\_\_\_.
- MARÍA: “Fuimos al cine ayer”.  
 María dice que \_\_\_\_\_.  
 María dijo que \_\_\_\_\_.
- PACO: “Por favor, María, ayúdame con la computadora”.  
 Paco le pide a María que \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Paco le pidió a María que \_\_\_\_\_.
- MARÍA: “¿Vas a estar en casa esta tarde?”  
 María le pregunta a Paco si \_\_\_\_\_.  
 María le preguntó a Paco si \_\_\_\_\_.

# SUBJECTS, OBJECTS, AND THEIR PRONOUNS

## Subject Pronouns

<i>I</i>	<i>yo</i>	<i>we</i>	<i>nosotros/nosotras</i>
<i>you</i>	<i>tú/usted</i>	<i>you all</i>	<i>vosotros/vosotras/ustedes</i>
<i>he</i>	<i>él</i>	<i>they</i>	<i>ellos/ellas</i>
<i>she</i>	<i>ella</i>		
<i>it</i>	<i>él/ella</i>		

## Object Pronouns

### AFTER PREPOSITIONS

<i>me</i>	<i>mí*</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>nosotros/nosotras</i>
<i>you</i>	<i>tí*/usted</i>	<i>you all</i>	<i>vosotros/vosotras/ustedes</i>
<i>him</i>	<i>él</i>	<i>them</i>	<i>ellos/ellas</i>
<i>her</i>	<i>ella</i>		
<i>it</i>	<i>él/ella</i>		

\*conmigo; contigo.

### REFLEXIVE

<i>me/myself</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>us/ourselves</i>	<i>nos</i>
<i>you/yourself</i>	<i>te/se</i>	<i>you/yourself</i>	<i>os/se</i>
<i>him/himself</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>them/themselves</i>	<i>se</i>
<i>her/herself</i>	<i>se</i>		
<i>it/itself</i>	<i>se</i>		

### DIRECT OBJECT

<i>me</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>nos</i>
<i>you</i>	<i>te/lo/la</i>	<i>you all</i>	<i>os/los/las</i>
<i>him</i>	<i>lo</i>	<i>them</i>	<i>los/las</i>
<i>her</i>	<i>la</i>		
<i>it</i>	<i>lo/la</i>		

### INDIRECT OBJECT

<i>me</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>nos</i>
<i>you</i>	<i>te/le</i>	<i>you all</i>	<i>os/les</i>
<i>him</i>	<i>le</i>	<i>them</i>	<i>les</i>
<i>her</i>	<i>le</i>		

Review the forms in the chart on the preceding page.

## Subjects

- Subjects can be nouns, pronouns, or infinitives.

In English and in Spanish, singular noun subjects, except for proper first names, are always preceded by an article or other determiner.

El libro está en la mesa.	<i>The book is on the table.</i>
La comida está lista.	<i>The meal is ready.</i>
María es simpática.	<i>María is nice.</i>
Mario está aquí.	<i>Mario is here.</i>

In Spanish, but not in English, names with a title are preceded by an article (see page 56).

El Sr. Gómez está aquí.	<i>Mr. Gómez is here.</i>
La señora Sánchez no está aquí.	<i>Mrs. Sánchez isn't here.</i>
La Dra. Campos es buena.	<i>Dr. Campos is good.</i>
La señorita Martínez es la jefa.	<i>Miss Martínez is the boss.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Sr. Gómez está aquí.
- ✗ Señora Sánchez no está aquí.

In English, plural and noncount noun subjects are not preceded by “the” when all members of the noun class are intended. In Spanish, noun subjects are always preceded by an article or other determiner (see pages 53–79).

**ENGLISH PATTERN** — + plural or noncount noun

**SPANISH PATTERN** *el/la* + noncount noun  
*los/las* + plural noun

La leche es buena fuente de calcio.	<i>Milk is a good source of calcium.</i>
El tiempo vuela.	<i>Time flies.</i>
Las ventanas son de vidrio.	<i>Windows are made of glass.</i>
Los hombres son todos iguales.	<i>Men are all alike.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Leche es buena fuente de calcio.
- ✗ Tiempo vuela.
- ✗ Ventanas son de vidrio.

The definite article *el* is optional before an infinitive subject (see page 100).

(El) vivir aquí es difícil.

*Living here is hard.*

(El) saber español lo ayudará.

*Knowing Spanish will help him.*

In Spanish, pronouns are used as subjects only for emphasis or clarification. The subject of the sentence is expressed in the conjugated ending of the verb (see individual verb tenses).

■ To determine the subject of a sentence, first find the conjugated ending of the verb, then match it with the corresponding noun or pronoun, which may be in a previous sentence.

**ENGLISH PATTERN** I/you/he/she/it/we/they + verb

**SPANISH PATTERN** (subject pronoun) + verb with subject ending

**NORMAL STATEMENT**

Voy a pagar la cuenta.

*I'm going to pay the bill.*

**STATEMENT WITH EMPHASIS ON THE SUBJECT**

Yo voy a pagar la cuenta.

*I (not you) am going to pay the bill.*

**NORMAL STATEMENT**

Viene mañana.

*She's coming tomorrow.*

**STATEMENT WITH EMPHASIS ON THE SUBJECT**

Ella viene mañana.

*She (not someone else) is coming tomorrow.*

**NORMAL STATEMENT**

La visitamos con frecuencia.

*We visit her often.*

**STATEMENT WITH EMPHASIS ON THE SUBJECT**

Nosotros la visitamos con frecuencia.

*We (others may not) visit her often.*

**AVOID THE Blunder**

Do not keep repeating subject pronouns. Once it is established who you are talking about, use the pronoun only for emphasis—the equivalent in English of underlining the word or saying it louder.

✗ Yo soy Ana. Yo soy de Nueva York y ahora yo vivo en Chicago. Yo trabajo en un restaurante.

✗ Elena es mi amiga. Ella vive muy cerca de mi casa y ella trabaja en la misma parte de la ciudad que yo.

- The Spanish subject is not necessarily at the beginning of a sentence.

<b>ENGLISH PATTERN</b>	subject + verb + object + adverb John      calls      me      every day.
<b>SPANISH PATTERN 1</b>	subject + object + verb + adverb <i>Juan      me      llama      todos los días.</i>
<b>SPANISH PATTERN 2</b>	object + verb + subject + adverb <i>Me      llama      Juan      todos los días.</i>
<b>SPANISH PATTERN 3</b>	adverb      + object + verb + subject <i>Todos los días      me      llama      Juan.</i>

## Objects

In English, object pronouns have only one form (“me,” “you,” “him,” “her,” “it,” “us,” “them”) and are used to replace direct objects, indirect objects, and objects that follow prepositions. In Spanish, each type of object pronoun has its own set of forms, as well as different usage patterns.

### Pronouns After Prepositions

In Spanish, the subject pronouns (except *yo* and *tú*) are used after prepositions.

Los regalos son para él.	<i>The presents are for him.</i>
Lo hicieron por ella.	<i>They did it because of her.</i>
Gracias a usted, estamos bien.	<i>Thanks to you, we're okay.</i>
¿Es la casa de ustedes?	<i>Is it your house?</i>
Fui al cine sin ellos.	<i>I went to the movies without them.</i>
Vamos con vosotros.	<i>We're going with you all.</i>

#### AVOID THE

## Blunder

Do not use direct object pronouns after prepositions.

- ✗ para lo
- ✗ para la
- ✗ de nos
- ✗ por los

The pronouns *mí* and *ti* are used for “me” and “you” after a preposition.

El regalo es para mí.  
Lo hicieron por ti.

*The present is for me.  
They did it because of you.*

### AVOID THE

## Blunder

Do not use other object pronouns after prepositions.

- ✗ de me
- ✗ por te
- ✗ de yo
- ✗ para tú

There is an accent mark in *mí* to distinguish it from the possessive *mi*; there is no accent mark in *ti*.

- ✗ para mi
- ✗ para tí

*Conmigo* and *contigo* are used instead of *con* + *mí* and *con* + *ti*.

¿Vienes conmigo?  
Quiero hablar contigo.

*Are you coming with me?  
I want to talk to you.*

*Consigo* is used when the object of the preposition is the same person as the subject *él*, *ella*, *usted*, or *ustedes*.

Marcos llevó la maleta consigo.  
¿Tiene usted los boletos consigo?  
Ella trae la comida consigo.  
Traigan sus pasaportes consigo.

*Marcos took the suitcase with him.  
Do you have the tickets with you?  
She's bringing the food with her.  
Bring your passports with you.*

### AVOID THE

## Blunder

Do not use *consigo* if the object of the preposition is a different person from the subject.

- ✗ Voy al cine consigo.
- ✗ ¿Vienes consigo?

## Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive pronouns indicate that the subject and the object are the same person or thing. They are placed before the conjugated verb.

Me miro en el espejo.  
Ella se cuida.

*I look at myself in the mirror.  
She takes care of herself.*

Los chicos se hieren.  
Nos servimos en estas fiestas.

*The kids hurt themselves.  
We serve ourselves at these parties.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not put the pronoun after the verb.

- ✗ Miro me.
- ✗ Ella cuida se.
- ✗ Los chicos hieren se.
- ✗ Servimos nos.

■ When an infinitive construction (see page 96) or gerund construction (see page 113) is used, the reflexive pronoun can be placed either before its corresponding conjugated verb or attached to the end of the infinitive or gerund.

#### INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

Me voy a mirar en el espejo.  
Voy a mirarme en el espejo. } *I'm going to look at myself in the mirror.*

#### GERUND CONSTRUCTION

Me estoy mirando en el espejo.  
Estoy mirándome en el espejo. } *I'm looking at myself in the mirror.*

#### INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

Ella se va a cuidar.  
Ella va a cuidarse. } *She's going to take care of herself.*

#### GERUND CONSTRUCTION

Ella se está cuidando.  
Ella está cuidándose. } *She's taking care of herself.*

#### INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

Los chicos se van a herir.  
Los chicos van a herirse. } *The kids are going to hurt themselves.*

#### GERUND CONSTRUCTION

Los chicos se están hiriendo.  
Los chicos están hiriéndose. } *The kids are hurting themselves.*

#### INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

Nos vamos a servir.  
Vamos a servirnos. } *We're going to serve ourselves.*

#### GERUND CONSTRUCTION

Nos estamos sirviendo.  
Estamos sirviéndonos. } *We're serving ourselves.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not forget to add an accent mark to the gerund if you have attached a reflexive pronoun.

✗ *mirandome*      ✗ *cuidandose*  
✗ *hiriendose*      ✗ *sirviendonos*

Do not add an accent mark to the gerund if it does not have a pronoun attached.

✗ *mirándo*      ✗ *cuidándo*  
✗ *hiriéndo*      ✗ *sirviéndo*

In affirmative commands (see page 163), the reflexive pronoun is attached to the end of the verb and an accent mark is added to the third-last syllable.

Siéntate aquí.	<i>Sit here.</i>
Cuidese.	<i>Take care of yourself.</i>
Levántense, por favor.	<i>Please stand up.</i>

In negative commands (see page 163), the reflexive pronoun is placed between the *no* and the verb.

No te sientes aquí.	<i>Don't sit here.</i>
No se pierda.	<i>Don't get lost.</i>
No se levanten.	<i>Don't get up.</i>

■ Reflexive pronouns used with plural verbs can also indicate reciprocal action.

Los chicos se hieren (el uno al otro).	<i>The kids hurt each other.</i>
Nos servimos (el uno al otro).	<i>We serve each other.</i>

*El uno al otro* can be used to distinguish the reciprocal meaning from the reflexive meaning.

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not try to translate the words “each other.” Use a plural reflexive pronoun (*nos* or *se*) (+ *el uno al otro*) to express this.

✗ *Los chicos hieren cada otro.*

■ Many reflexive expressions in Spanish have equivalents in English that are not expressed in reflexive terms. Following are some examples.

TRANSITIVE VERBS		REFLEXIVE VERBS	
VERB + DIRECT OBJECT NOUN OR PRONOUN		VERB + REFLEXIVE PRONOUN	
acostar (ue)	<i>put someone to bed</i>	acostarse (ue)	<i>lie down/ go to bed</i>
afeitar	<i>shave someone else</i>	afeitarse	<i>shave</i>
arreglar	<i>arrange something</i>	arreglarse	<i>freshen up</i>
bañar	<i>bathe someone else</i>	bañarse	<i>take a bath</i>
despertar (ie)	<i>wake someone up</i>	despertarse (ie)	<i>wake up</i>
divertir (ie, i)	<i>entertain someone</i>	divertirse (ie, i)	<i>have a good time</i>
levantar	<i>get someone up/ lift something</i>	levantarse	<i>get up</i>
llamar	<i>call someone</i>	llamarse	<i>be named</i>
preocupar	<i>worry someone</i>	preocuparse	<i>worry</i>
sentar (ie)	<i>seat someone</i>	sentarse (ie)	<i>sit down</i>
cansar	<i>tire someone out</i>	cansarse	<i>get tired</i>
emocionar	<i>excite someone</i>	emocionarse	<i>get excited</i>
enfadar	<i>make someone mad</i>	enfadarse	<i>get mad</i>
enfriar	<i>cool something</i>	enfriarse	<i>get cold</i>
enojar	<i>make someone mad</i>	enojarse	<i>get mad</i>
organizar	<i>organize something</i>	organizarse	<i>get organized</i>
vestir (i, i)	<i>dress someone else</i>	vestirse (i, i)	<i>get dressed</i>

Despertamos a los chicos  
a las nueve.

*We wake the kids up at nine.*

Nos despertamos a las ocho.

*We wake up at eight.*

El payaso divierte a los niños.  
Los niños se divierten en el  
parque.

*The clown entertains the children.  
The children have fun (entertain  
themselves) at the park.*

Su mamá lo llama todos los días.  
El niño se llama Nicolás.

*His mother calls him every day.  
The child's name is Nicolás.*

Mi prima me preocupa mucho.  
Me preocupo mucho por mi  
prima.

*My cousin worries me a lot.  
I worry a lot about my cousin.*

El oficial me enfadó.  
Me enfadé con el oficial.

*The officer made me mad.  
I got mad at the officer.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Note that in Spanish you do not say “I get dressed,” but rather “I dress myself.” Do not try to translate “up,” “down,” “get,” “take,” or “have” in this type of expression. Use the reflexive verb instead.

- ✗ Despertamos arriba a los niños.
- ✗ Los niños tienen diversión en el parque.
- ✗ Los niños tienen un buen tiempo en el parque.
- ✗ Conseguí enfadarme con el oficial.

In Spanish you can say *su nombre es* \_\_\_\_\_ or *mi nombre es* \_\_\_\_\_. To express the same meaning with *llamarse*, you must use the reflexive pattern.

- |                            |                                        |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| (Yo) me llamo John.        | (Nosotros) nos llamamos John y Sara.   |
| ¿(Tú) te llamas María?     | ¿(Vosotros) os llamáis María y Elena?  |
| ¿(Usted) se llama Eduardo? | ¿(Ustedes) se llaman Eduardo y Javier? |
| (Él) se llama José.        | (Ellos) se llaman José y Francisco.    |
| (Ella) se llama Margarita. | (Ellas) se llaman Margarita y Julia.   |

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Su llamo es Nicolás.
- ✗ Mi llamo es John.

■ A reflexive construction is used when indicating action to or on one's own body. Unlike English, Spanish uses a definite article rather than a possessive (see page 59).

- |                        |                                        |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Me lavo la cara.       | <i>I wash my face.</i>                 |
| Se lava los dientes.   | <i>She brushes (washes) her teeth.</i> |
| Nos pintamos las uñas. | <i>We polish our nails.</i>            |
| Se pintan el pelo.     | <i>They color their hair.</i>          |

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Lavo mi cara.
- ✗ Se lava sus dientes.
- ✗ Pintan su pelo.

■ Certain verbs have different meanings when used with reflexive pronouns. Following are some examples.

acordar (ue)	<i>decide</i>	acordarse (ue) de	<i>remember</i>
aprovechar de	<i>take advantage of an opportunity</i>	aprovecharse de	<i>take advantage of a person</i>
burlar	<i>evade</i>	burlarse de	<i>make fun of</i>
comer	<i>eat</i>	comerse	<i>eat up</i>
despedir (i, i)	<i>fire someone</i>	despedirse (i, i) de	<i>say good-bye to</i>
dormir (ue, u)	<i>sleep</i>	dormirse (ue, u)	<i>fall asleep</i>
negar (ie)	<i>deny</i>	negarse a (ie)	<i>refuse to</i>
ofrecer	<i>offer something to someone</i>	ofrecerse a/para	<i>offer to do something</i>
quedar	<i>result in, fit, agree</i>	quedarse	<i>remain</i>
sentir (ie, i)	<i>be sorry</i>	sentirse (ie, i)	<i>feel</i>

El jefe despidió a tres empleados.  
El jefe se despidió.

*The boss fired three employees.  
The boss said good-bye.*

Duermo ocho horas.  
Me duermo en el coche.

*I sleep eight hours.  
I fall asleep in the car.*

Ese vestido te queda bien.  
Mi hermana se queda aquí.

*That dress fits you well.  
My sister is staying here.*

Quedamos en vernos esta tarde.  
Nos quedamos con ustedes.

*We agreed to meet this afternoon.  
We're staying with you all.*

Siento no poder acompañarte.  
Me siento muy mal.

*I'm sorry I can't go with you.  
I feel really bad.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Be sure you know the different meanings indicated by a reflexive pronoun.

- ✗ Mi hermana queda aquí.
- ✗ Siento muy mal.

■ A few verbs that do not have a reflexive meaning must nevertheless be used with reflexive pronouns. Following are some examples.

arrepentirse (ie, i)	<i>regret</i>
obstinarse en	<i>stand firm on, insist on</i>
quedarse	<i>remain, stay</i>
quejarse	<i>complain</i>
reírse (i, i)	<i>laugh</i>

Me arrepiento de haberlo dicho.  
 Los profesores se obstinan en no  
 cambiar la fecha del examen.  
 Me quedo aquí contigo.  
 Los alumnos se quejan de la  
 comida.  
 Nos reímos mucho anoche.

*I regret having said that.*  
*The professors stand firm on not*  
*changing the date of the exam.*  
*I'm staying here with you.*  
*The students complain about*  
*the food.*  
*We laughed a lot last night.*

#### AVOID THE

## Blunder

Do not try to find a reflexive meaning in these verbs, but do always use reflexive pronouns with them.

- ✗ Arrepiento de haberlo dicho.
- ✗ Los alumnos quejan.
- ✗ Reímos.

## Direct Objects

A direct object can be a noun, a pronoun, or an infinitive (see page 99).

■ As in English, direct object nouns may follow the verb.

Compramos la casa.	<i>We bought the house.</i>
Juan perdió dinero.	<i>Juan lost money.</i>
Vi una película.	<i>I watched a movie.</i>
Ganaron el partido.	<i>They won the game.</i>

In contrast to English, direct object nouns may precede the verb in Spanish. This word order requires including a direct object pronoun as well as the direct object noun.

La casa la compramos ayer.	<i>We bought the house yesterday.</i>
El dinero lo perdió Juan.	<i>Juan lost the money.</i>
Esa película la vi anoche.	<i>I saw that movie last night.</i>
El partido lo ganaron los Tigres.	<i>The Tigers won the game.</i>

When the direct object is a person, the preposition *a* must precede the person's name or any other noun that refers to that person. This *a* has no English translation (see pages 261–262).

Miguel ayuda a María.  
Vimos a su hermano.  
Reconozco al Sr. García.  
Visitaron a sus amigos.

*Miguel helps María.  
We saw his brother.  
I recognize Mr. García.  
They visited their friends.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Miguel ayuda María.  
✗ Reconozco Sr. García.

✗ Reconozco el Sr. García.  
✗ Vimos su hermano.

Remember that *mirar* means “look at,” *buscar* means “look for,” and *esperar* means “wait for” (see page 104). No preposition is necessary unless the direct object is a person. The “personal *a*” is a signal that the direct object is a person. Compare the following sentences.

Carlos mira el coche.  
Carlos mira a su papá.  
Busco un apartamento.  
Busco a Pepe.  
Espera un cheque.  
Espera a su esposo.

*Carlos is looking at the car.  
Carlos is looking at his dad.  
I'm looking for an apartment.  
I'm looking for Pepe.  
She's waiting for a check.  
She's waiting for her husband.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Carlos mira su papá.  
✗ Busco por un apartamento.  
✗ Espera por un cheque.

■ In contrast to English, direct object pronouns are placed immediately before the conjugated verb in Spanish.

Alberto come la tortilla.  
La come.  
Luisa compra el periódico.  
Lo compra.  
Susana lee las novelas.  
Las lee.  
Marta ve los programas.  
Los ve.

*Alberto is eating the tortilla.  
He is eating it.  
Luisa buys the newspaper.  
She buys it.  
Susana reads the novels.  
She reads them.  
Marta watches the programs.  
She watches them.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Remember that each noun is either masculine or feminine. The “it” or “them” denoted by the direct object pronoun must reflect the gender of the noun it replaces.

- ✗ Alberto lo come. (la tortilla)
- ✗ Luisa la compra. (el periódico)
- ✗ Marta las ve. (los programas)
- ✗ Susana los lee. (las novelas)

Direct object pronouns that refer to people follow the same pattern.

Mi amigo me llama.	<i>My friend calls me.</i>
Te llamo mañana.	<i>I'll call you tomorrow.</i>
Mis padres nos ayudan.	<i>My parents help us.</i>
José invita a Elena.	<i>José invites Elena.</i>
José la invita.	<i>José invites her.</i>
Elena mira a Alfredo.	<i>Elena is looking at Alfredo.</i>
Elena lo mira.	<i>Elena is looking at him.</i>
Visitamos a nuestros abuelos.	<i>We're visiting our grandparents.</i>
Los visitamos.	<i>We're visiting them.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use a prepositional construction instead of the direct object pronoun.

- ✗ Mi amigo llama a mí.
- ✗ Llamo a ti.
- ✗ José invita a ella.
- ✗ Elena mira a él.
- ✗ Mis padres ayudan a nosotros.
- ✗ Visitamos a ellos.

In some parts of Spain, *le* and *les* are used as direct object pronouns in place of *lo*, *la*, *los*, and *las* when referring to people.

□ In constructions with infinitives or gerunds, direct object pronouns can be placed either before the conjugated verb or attached to the end of the infinitive or gerund (see pages 96 and 113).

Tengo que ayudar a mi hermano.	<i>I have to help my brother.</i>
Tengo que ayudarlo. }	
Lo tengo que ayudar. }	<i>I have to help him.</i>
Vamos a visitar a los abuelos.	<i>We're going to visit our grandparents.</i>
Vamos a visitarlos. }	
Los vamos a visitar. }	<i>We're going to visit them.</i>
Está esperando a Pablo.	<i>She's waiting for Pablo.</i>
Está esperándolo. }	
Lo está esperando. }	<i>She's waiting for him.</i>
Están buscando a las niñas.	<i>They're looking for the girls.</i>
Están buscándolas. }	
Las están buscando. }	<i>They're looking for them.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not forget to use an accent mark when you attach the object pronoun to the gerund. Do not use an accent mark if the pronoun is placed before the conjugated verb.

✗ *esperandolo*

✗ *esperándo*

□ In affirmative commands (see pages 163–164), the direct object pronoun is attached to the end of the verb and an accent mark is added to the third-last syllable.

Espérame aquí.	<i>Wait for me here.</i>
Búsquelo.	<i>Look for him.</i>
Mírenla.	<i>Look at her.</i>

□ In negative commands (see pages 163–164), the direct object pronoun is placed between the *no* and the verb. No accent mark is added.

¡No me hables!	<i>Don't talk to me!</i>
¡No lo llame usted!	<i>Don't call him!</i>
¡No lo lean ustedes!	<i>Don't read it!</i>
¡No lo hagamos!	<i>Let's not do it!</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ *¡No hábleme!*

✗ *¡No llámelo!*

## Indirect Objects

The use of indirect objects is determined by the kind of verb used. Four types of verbs require indirect object pronouns—even when the indirect object is stated in noun or pronoun form after *a*.

### VERBS THAT REQUIRE INDIRECT OBJECT PRONOUNS

■ Some verbs indicate a transfer of something (the direct object) from one person (the subject) to another (the indirect object). Following are some examples.

darle algo a alguien	<i>give something to somebody</i>
prestarle algo a alguien	<i>lend something to somebody</i>
comprarle algo a alguien	<i>buy something for somebody</i>
regalarle algo a alguien	<i>give a gift to somebody</i>
mandarle algo a alguien	<i>send something to somebody</i>
enviarle algo a alguien	<i>send something to somebody</i>
mostrarle algo a alguien	<i>show something to somebody</i>
demostrarle algo a alguien	<i>show something to somebody</i>
enseñarle algo a alguien	<i>teach something to somebody</i>
decirle algo a alguien	<i>tell something to somebody</i>
explicarle algo a alguien	<i>explain something to somebody</i>
creerle algo a alguien	<i>believe something of somebody</i> <i>(that he or she has said)</i>

Although the person who receives something may be indicated by *a* plus a noun or pronoun, this is optional. The indirect object pronoun, however, is always required with these verbs.

Le doy el dinero a Juan.	<i>I'm giving the money to Juan.</i>
Mi madre me manda los paquetes (a mí).	<i>My mother sends me the packages.</i>
A mis padres les mandó una tarjeta.	<i>He sent my parents a card.</i>
Nos enseña el baile (a nosotros).	<i>She teaches the dance to us.</i>
(A mí) me dijo la verdad.	<i>She told me the truth.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not leave out the indirect object pronoun that denotes the receiver, even when there is a prepositional phrase that tells who the receiver is.

- ✗ Mi madre manda los paquetes a mí.
- ✗ Doy el dinero a Juan.
- ✗ Enseña el baile a nosotros.
- ✗ Mandó una tarjeta a mis padres.
- ✗ Dijo la verdad a mí.

When the direct object is also expressed in pronoun form, it is placed between the indirect object pronoun and the conjugated verb.

María me muestra las manzanas.	<i>María is showing me the apples.</i>
María me las muestra.	<i>María is showing them to me.</i>
Él nos explicó la lección.	<i>He explained the lesson to us.</i>
Nos la explicó.	<i>He explained it to us.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ María me muestra las.
- ✗ María muestra me las.
- ✗ María las me muestra.
- ✗ María las muestra a mí.

When the indirect object pronoun *le* or *les* precedes a direct object pronoun, the indirect object pronoun changes to *se*.

María le muestra las manzanas a Pedro.	<i>María is showing the apples to Pedro.</i>
María se las muestra.	<i>María is showing them to him.</i>
Él les explicó la lección a ellos.	<i>He explained the lesson to them.</i>
Él se la explicó.	<i>He explained it to them.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ María le las muestra.
- ✗ María muestra le las.
- ✗ Él le la explicó.
- ✗ Él le explicó la.

Because *se* can refer to “you,” “him,” “her,” “you all,” and “them,” it is helpful to add *a usted, a él, a ella, a ustedes, or a ellos* for clarification.

Remember that both the indirect object pronoun and the *a + mí/ti/usted/él/ella/nosotros/vosotros/ustedes/ellos/ellas* constructions refer to the person who is the receiver of the direct object. The use of both objects in the same sentence is not considered redundant in Spanish, as it is in English.

Indirect and direct object pronouns may be attached to infinitives and gerunds (see pages 209 and 216–217).

María va a mostrármelas.	}	<i>María is going to show them to me.</i>
María me las va a mostrar.		
Él va a explicárnosla.	}	<i>He is going to explain it to us.</i>
Él nos la va a explicar.		
María va a mostrárselas.	}	<i>María is going to show them to him.</i>
María se las va a mostrar.		
Él va a explicársela.	}	<i>He is going to explain it to them.</i>
Él se la va a explicar.		
María está mostrándoselas.	}	<i>María is showing them to him.</i>
María se las está mostrando.		
Él está explicándosela.	}	<i>He is explaining it to them.</i>
Él se la está explicando.		

### AVOID THE

### Blunder

Be sure to add an accent mark to the infinitive or gerund when two pronouns are attached.

- ✗ mostrarmelas
- ✗ mostrandoselas
- ✗ explicarnosla
- ✗ explicandosela

■ A number of verbs indicate a feeling imparted by the subject (a person or thing) to another person (the indirect object) (see page 106). There is no direct object in these constructions. Following are some examples.

parecerle _____ a alguien	<i>seem _____ to somebody</i>
caerle bien a alguien	<i>make a good impression on somebody</i>
interesarle a alguien	<i>interest somebody, be interesting to somebody</i>
importarle a alguien	<i>be important to somebody</i>
gustarle a alguien	<i>be pleasing to somebody, appeal to somebody, charm somebody</i>
fascinarle a alguien	<i>fascinate somebody, be fascinating to somebody</i>
encantar le a alguien	<i>be pleasing to somebody, appeal to somebody, charm somebody</i>
emocionarle a alguien	<i>excite somebody, be exciting to somebody</i>
caerle mal a alguien	<i>make a bad impression on somebody</i>
fastidiarle a alguien	<i>annoy somebody, be annoying to somebody</i>
molestarle a alguien	<i>bother somebody</i>
faltarle a alguien	<i>be lacking to somebody</i>
hacerle falta a alguien	<i>be lacking to somebody</i>

The English verbs “like,” “love,” “need,” and “care about” are often translated with verbs from the above list. In English, however, these verbs are expressed as feelings of the subject. In Spanish, the subject is a person or thing that “imparts” a feeling to another person (the indirect object).

**ENGLISH PATTERN**      subject + verb + direct object (noun or pronoun)  
 You            like       Alex/him.  
 I                like       the house / it.

**SPANISH PATTERN 1**    subject + indirect object + verb  
*Alex        te                            gusta.*  
 (Alex appeals to you.)  
*La casa    me                           gusta.*  
 (The house appeals to me.)

**SPANISH PATTERN 2**    indirect object + verb + subject  
*Tè                            gusta    Alex/él.*  
 (Alex/He appeals to you.)  
*Me                            gusta    la casa.*  
 (The house appeals to me.)

**SPANISH PATTERN 3**    indirect object + verb  
*Tè                            gusta. (He appeals to you.)*  
*Me                            gusta. (It appeals to me.)*

A José le gusta el chocolate.	<i>José likes chocolate.</i> (Chocolate appeals to José.)
A José le gustan las enchiladas.	<i>José likes enchiladas.</i> (Enchiladas appeal to José.)
A las chicas les encanta el cine.	<i>The girls love the cinema.</i> (The cinema enchants the girls.)
A las chicas les encantan las películas.	<i>The girls love the movies.</i> (Movies enchant the girls.)
(Tú) me importas.	<i>I care about you.</i> (You are important to me.)
Me importan todos mis amigos.	<i>I care about all my friends.</i> (All my friends are important to me.)
Nos falta el dinero.	<i>We need money.</i> (Money is lacking to us.)
Nos faltan los recursos.	<i>We need resources.</i> (Resources are lacking to us.)
Tu novio me cae muy bien.	<i>I like your boyfriend very much.</i> (Your boyfriend makes a very good impression on me.)
Tus amigos me caen bien.	<i>I like your friends.</i> (Your friends make a good impression on me.)

### AVOID THE

### Blunder

Do not try to translate English verbs of this type into Spanish. Rather, think about what feelings are being conveyed by the Spanish verbs. Make sure the subject and verb agree.

- ✗ Me gusto el chocolate.
- ✗ José le gusta las enchiladas.
- ✗ Nos faltamos los recursos.

The prepositional phrase *a* + noun or pronoun that indicates the person affected by the subject is optional. It is always the same person as the indirect object pronoun.

(A mí) me gusta el libro.	<i>I like the book.</i> (The book appeals to me.)
¿Qué te gusta (a ti)?	<i>What do you like?</i> (What appeals to you?)

Este libro le gusta mucho  
(a Juan /a él).

*Juan/He likes this book a lot.  
(This book appeals a lot to Juan/  
to him.)*

(A Luisa /A ella) no le gusta.

*Luisa/She doesn't like it.  
(It doesn't appeal to Luisa/to her.)*

(A nosotros) nos gusta la clase.

*We like the class.  
(The class appeals to us.)*

No les gusta la clase (a María  
y a Susana /a ellas).

*María and Susana/They don't like  
the class. (The class doesn't appeal  
to María and Susana/to them.)*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not forget the *a* before the noun or pronoun that indicates the person affected by the subject.

✗ Juan no le gusta este libro.

✗ Luisa no le gusta el libro.

Verbs of this type are always accompanied by indirect objects but do not have direct objects. The subjects “it” and “they” are expressed in the conjugation of the verb.

Me gusta el vestido.  
Le encantan esos zapatos.  
Me gusta.  
Le encantan.

*The dress appeals to me.  
Those shoes appeal to her.  
I like it. (It appeals to me.)  
She loves them. (They enchant her.)*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *lo*, *la*, *los*, or *las* with these verbs.

✗ Me lo gusta.

✗ Se los encantan.

✗ Te la gusta.

■ In constructions with verbs that express requests, demands, or suggestions, indirect object pronouns are used with *que* + the subjunctive (see pages 167–168 and 188–189).

Te pido que me prestes dinero.  
Le ruega que lo llame.  
Nos recomienda que estudiemos.  
Les sugerimos que trabajen.

*I'm asking you to lend me money.  
He begs her to call him.  
She recommends that we study.  
We suggest that they work.*

■ Certain verbs combine a reflexive *se* with an indirect object to indicate accidental occurrences. In these constructions, the subject is a thing that has an accidental occurrence (“loses itself,” “forgets itself,” “breaks itself”), and in doing so it affects a person (the indirect object) (see page 108). Following are some typical verbs of this type.

acabársele a alguien	<i>run out of</i>
caérsele a alguien	<i>drop</i>
descomponérsele a alguien	<i>break</i>
olvidársele a alguien	<i>forget</i>
perdérsele a alguien	<i>lose</i>
quebrársele a alguien	<i>break</i>
quedársele a alguien en algún lugar	<i>leave by mistake</i>
quemársele a alguien	<i>burn</i>
rompérsele a alguien	<i>break</i>

Se le cayó la taza.	<i>He dropped the cup. (The cup fell from him.)</i>
Se le cayeron las tazas.	<i>He dropped the cups. (The cups fell from him.)</i>
La computadora se nos descompuso.	<i>The computer broke down on us.</i>
Las máquinas se nos descompusieron.	<i>The machines broke down on us.</i>
Se le olvidó el libro.	<i>He forgot the book. (The book got forgotten by him.)</i>
Se le olvidaron los libros.	<i>He forgot the books. (The books got forgotten by him.)</i>
Se me perdió la llave.	<i>I lost my key. (The key got lost from me.)</i>
Se me perdieron las llaves.	<i>I lost my keys. (The keys got lost from me.)</i>
Se les quedó el libro en el coche.	<i>They left the book in the car. (The book got left in the car by them.)</i>
Se les quedaron los libros en el coche.	<i>They left the books in the car. (The books got left in the car by them.)</i>
Se le quemó el dedo.	<i>She burned her finger. (The finger got burned on her.)</i>
Se le quemaron los dedos.	<i>She burned her fingers. (The fingers got burned on her.)</i>

Se me rompió el brazo.

*I broke my arm.*

*(The arm got broken on me.)*

Se me rompieron los brazos.

*I broke my arms.*

*(The arms got broken on me.)*

When the action is done on purpose, the subject takes the responsibility for the action.

Quemé los documentos.

*I burned the documents.*

El hombre rompió el contrato.

*The man tore up the contract.*

La mujer olvidó su triste pasado.

*The woman forgot her sad past.*

Dejamos los libros en el coche.

*We left the books in the car.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not attribute the action of breaking, forgetting, losing, dropping, or similar accidental occurrences to the subject, unless he or she does it on purpose. Do not use possessive pronouns with these constructions.

✗ Quemé mi dedo.

✗ Rompió su brazo.

✗ Olvidamos nuestros libros.

### The Impersonal *se*

*Se* + a third-person singular verb is used to make a general observation that refers to everybody. This is often expressed in English with an impersonal “one,” “you,” “they,” or “people.”

Se siente en casa en ese hotel.

*One feels at home at that hotel.*

Se estudia más en la universidad.

*You study more in college.*

Se camina más rápido en la ciudad.

*People walk faster in the city.*

No se puede fumar en este edificio.

*You can't smoke in this building.*

*Se* + a third-person singular or plural verb + a noun can be used to make a passive statement, indicating a general custom. The verb is singular for a singular noun, plural for a plural noun. In English, “you,” referring to everybody in general, is often used for this purpose.

¿Dónde se compra el pan?

*Where do you buy bread?*

*(Where is bread bought?)*

Se compra el pan en la panadería.

*You buy bread at the bakery.*

*(Bread is bought at the bakery.)*

¿Dónde se puede comprar el pan?

*Where can you buy bread?*

Se puede comprar el pan en la panadería.

*You can buy bread at the bakery.*

¿Dónde se reparan los zapatos?

*Where do you get shoes repaired?*

*(Where are shoes repaired?)*

Se reparan los zapatos en la zapatería.

*They repair shoes at the shoe store.*

*(Shoes are repaired at the shoe store.)*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the personal pronoun to translate the English “you” unless you are talking about the habits of a particular person.

✗ Tú estudias más en la universidad.

✗ Usted compra el pan en la panadería.

✗ Tú no fumas en este edificio.

✗ Dónde compras el pan?

## The Pronoun *lo*

The pronoun *lo* has several uses (see page 86).

■ *Lo* can be used before the verbs *ser* and *estar* to refer to an adjective in a previous statement.

—Ella es bonita.

*“She’s pretty.”*

—Sí, lo es.

*“Yes, she is.”*

—¿Estás cansado?

*“Are you tired?”*

—Sí, lo estoy.

*“Yes, I am.”*

■ An adjective can be used as a subject by placing *lo* before it.

Lo bueno del curso es que es muy útil.

*The good thing about the course is that it’s very useful.*

Lo malo es que la clase es a las ocho.

*The bad thing is that the class is at 8 o’clock.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ la buena cosa es

✗ la mala parte es

- *Lo* can refer to a masculine singular direct object, whether it is a person or a thing (see page 204).

Compré el libro.	<i>I bought the book.</i>
Lo compré en la librería.	<i>I bought it at the bookstore.</i>
Vi a tu hermano.	<i>I saw your brother.</i>
Lo vi en el parque.	<i>I saw him in the park.</i>

- *Lo que* can refer to an object, an entire phrase, or an abstract idea.

Lo que ella compró no te importa.	<i>What she bought is none of your business.</i>
Lo que está haciendo es un secreto.	<i>What he's doing is a secret.</i>
Lo que él dice no es verdad.	<i>What he says isn't true.</i>
Lo que ustedes quieren es imposible.	<i>What you all want is impossible.</i>

- *Lo cual* can follow an entire clause, adding a comment about it.

Ella compró un coche de lujo, lo cual nos sorprendió a todos.	<i>She bought a luxury car, which surprised everybody.</i>
------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------

### ***el cual***

- *El cual/la cual/los cuales/las cuales* is used after prepositions to refer to a previously mentioned noun.

Me dio una cantidad de dinero, con el cual pagué mis estudios.	<i>He gave me some money, with which I paid for my education.</i>
Decidió comprar la casa, por la cual tuvo que pagar una fortuna.	<i>She decided to buy the house, for which she had to pay a fortune.</i>
Ella cuida a seis niños, cuatro de los cuales son de su hermana.	<i>She takes care of six children, four of whom are her sister's.</i>

### **AVOID THE *Blunder***

As in formal English, do not put a preposition at the end of the sentence. Place it before *el cual/la cual/los cuales/las cuales*.

✗ Compró la casa, que tenía que pagar una fortuna por.

## Exercises

**A** Circle the appropriate pronoun in the following sentences.

1. Voy al cine con **la** | **lo** | **-tigo** | **ti**.
2. Ricardo llevó la maleta con **-sigo** | **si** | **él** | **ella**.
3. El regalo es para **-tigo** | **usted** | **lo** | **la**.
4. Sara hizo mucho por **mí** | **tú** | **yo** | **te**.
5. Van a salir sin **lo** | **la** | **les** | **mí**.
6. Ella piensa mucho en **tú** | **ti** | **lo** | **la**.
7. Sé que mi papá lo hizo por **sigo** | **las** | **nos** | **nosotros**.
8. A ella le gusta salir con **lo** | **la** | **él** | **le**.

**B** Fill in the blanks with the appropriate reflexive pronoun.

1. Generalmente \_\_\_\_\_ acostamos a las once de la noche.
2. Los niños \_\_\_\_\_ levantan temprano.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ voy a lavar el pelo.
4. Ese chico \_\_\_\_\_ queja de todo.
5. Mi hermana está divirtiéndose \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Por favor, siéntate \_\_\_\_\_ aquí.

**C** Circle the word or group of words that best completes each sentence.

1. El estudiante **aprovechó** | **se aprovechó** de la beca.
2. Las chicas **quedaron** | **se quedaron** en salir juntas esta noche.
3. La niña **quedó** | **se quedó** toda la tarde sola en la casa.
4. No voy a la fiesta porque **siento** | **me siento** muy mal.
5. **Despedimos** | **Nos despedimos** a dos empleados.

**D** Rewrite each of the following sentences, changing the underlined direct object to a pronoun.

EXAMPLE Compramos el periódico todos los días.

Lo compramos todos los días.

1. Juan no llamó a María esta tarde.

2. Susana dejó las uvas en el mercado.

---

3. Queremos mucho a nuestros profesores.

---

**E** Fill in the blanks with the appropriate indirect object pronoun.

1. A mí \_\_\_\_\_ regaló una pulsera preciosa.

2. Sandra \_\_\_\_\_ mostró las fotos a sus amigas.

3. Arturo y José \_\_\_\_\_ demostraron las nuevas computadoras a nosotros.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ enseñaré la cámara a ti más tarde.

**F** Rewrite each of the following sentences, changing the underlined direct object to a pronoun.

EXAMPLE Le enseñaré la cámara a mi hermano mañana.

Se la enseñaré a mi hermano mañana.

1. Me va a enviar una carta la próxima semana.

---

2. Ángela les dará buenas noticias muy pronto.

---

3. ¿Te dijo Jorge el secreto?

---

**G** Express the following in Spanish.

EXAMPLE I like the red dress. I like it a lot.

Me gusta el vestido rojo. Me gusta mucho.

1. Victoria is interested in movies. She loves them.

---

2. Traffic annoys Roberto. It bothers him a lot.

---

3. Juan likes Inés. She fascinates him.

---

**H** Express the following in Spanish.

EXAMPLE *Pedro broke his arm.*

*A Pedro se le rompió el brazo.*

1. *Mario left the keys in the car.*

2. *We dropped the books.*

3. *They forgot their homework.*

**I** Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

1. En la clase se \_\_\_\_\_ (hablar) español.
2. En esa escuela se \_\_\_\_\_ (enseñar) varios idiomas.
3. En el mercado se \_\_\_\_\_ (vender) varias frutas.
4. En ese restaurante se \_\_\_\_\_ (servir) la cocina peruana.

**J** Fill in the blanks with the appropriate construction, using the English cues in parentheses.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ es que hemos terminado. (*The good thing*)
2. A pesar de \_\_\_\_\_ que fue, me gustó el curso.  
(*how difficult*)
3. Este vestido, por \_\_\_\_\_ pagué \$10, es el que me gusta más. (*which*)
4. Compré seis manzanas, cuatro \_\_\_\_\_ están podridas.  
(*of which*)

# ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS WITH ADVERBIAL FUNCTIONS

## Time Markers: To Answer *¿cuándo?*

### GENERAL

de noche	<i>at night</i>
de día	<i>during the day</i>
al amanecer	<i>at dawn</i>
al anochecer	<i>at dusk</i>
a las diez	<i>at 10 o'clock</i>
a eso de las diez	<i>around 10 o'clock</i>
a principios de	<i>at the beginning of</i>
a mediados de	<i>in the middle of</i>
a fines de	<i>at the end of</i>
al principio	<i>in the beginning/at the beginning</i>
al final	<i>in the end/at the end</i>
temprano	<i>early</i>
tarde	<i>late</i>

### PRESENT

ahora	<i>now</i>
en este momento	<i>at the moment</i>
hoy	<i>today</i>
esta mañana	<i>this morning</i>
esta tarde	<i>this afternoon</i>
esta noche	<i>tonight</i>
actualmente	<i>now</i>
estos días	<i>these days</i>
recientemente	<i>recently</i>

**PAST**

ayer	<i>yesterday</i>
anteayer	<i>the day before yesterday</i>
anoche	<i>last night</i>
hace unos minutos/días/años	<i>a few minutes/days/years ago</i>
hace unas horas/semanas	<i>a few hours/weeks ago</i>
la semana pasada	<i>last week</i>
el año pasado	<i>last year</i>
entonces, en aquel entonces	<i>back then</i>
en esos/aquellos días	<i>in those days</i>
en ese/aquel tiempo	<i>at that time</i>
a la una / a las dos	<i>at 1 o'clock / at 2 o'clock</i>
esta mañana	<i>this morning</i>
esta tarde	<i>this afternoon</i>
al día siguiente	<i>the next day</i>

**FUTURE**

mañana	<i>tomorrow</i>
pasado mañana	<i>the day after tomorrow</i>
el lunes / el martes	<i>on Monday / on Tuesday</i>
pronto	<i>soon</i>
más tarde	<i>later</i>
lo antes posible / lo más pronto posible	<i>as soon as possible</i>
después de + <i>infinitive</i>	<i>after (doing something)</i>
antes de + <i>infinitive</i>	<i>before (doing something)</i>
esta tarde	<i>this afternoon</i>
esta noche	<i>tonight</i>
antes que + <i>subjunctive</i>	<i>before (something happens)</i>
después que + <i>subjunctive</i>	<i>after (something happens)</i>
cuando _____	<i>when (something happens)</i>
en cuanto _____	} + <i>subjunctive</i> <i>as soon as (something happens)</i>
tan pronto _____	
como _____	

**Order of Occurrence Markers**

antes	<i>beforehand</i>
primero, en primer lugar	<i>first</i>
segundo, en segundo lugar	<i>second</i>
luego	<i>then</i>
después	<i>after that</i>
finalmente	<i>finally</i>

**Frequency Markers: To Answer *¿con qué frecuencia?***

nunca	<i>never, the whole time</i>
casi nunca	<i>almost never</i>
poco, pocas veces	<i>seldom</i>
con poca frecuencia	<i>not very often</i>
de vez en cuando	<i>every once in a while</i>
alguna que otra vez	<i>every so often</i>
a veces	<i>sometimes</i>
generalmente	<i>usually</i>
a menudo	<i>often</i>
frecuentemente	<i>frequently</i>
un día sí, otro no	<i>every other day</i>
mucho	<i>a lot</i>
con mucha frecuencia	<i>very often</i>
casi siempre	<i>almost always</i>
siempre	<i>always, the whole time</i>
todos los días	<i>every day</i>
los lunes / los martes	<i>on Mondays / on Tuesdays</i>
los fines de semana	<i>on weekends</i>
una vez a la semana	<i>once a week</i>
dos veces al mes	<i>twice a month</i>

**Place Markers: To Answer *¿dónde?*****ADVERBS**

aquí/acá	<i>here</i>
ahí	<i>there</i>
allí/allá	<i>over there</i>

**PREPOSITIONS**

en	<i>in/on/at</i>
sobre	<i>on</i>
entre	<i>between/among</i>

**ADVERBS**

arriba	<i>up there, on top</i>
abajo	<i>down there, below</i>
adentro	<i>inside</i>
afuera	<i>outside</i>
adelante	<i>ahead, forward</i>
detrás	<i>behind</i>
atrás	<i>back, in the back, behind, ago</i>
enfrente	<i>in front</i>
al lado	<i>on the side</i>
a la derecha	<i>on the right</i>
a la izquierda	<i>on the left</i>
todo derecho	<i>straight ahead</i>
alrededor	<i>all around</i>
cerca	<i>nearby</i>
lejos	<i>far away</i>
a lo lejos	<i>in the distance</i>

**PREPOSITIONS**

encima de	<i>on top of</i>
debajo de	<i>underneath (of)</i>
dentro de	<i>inside of</i>
fuera de	<i>outside of</i>
delante de	<i>ahead of</i>
detrás de	<i>behind</i>
atrás de	<i>behind</i>
enfrente de/ frente a	<i>across from/facing</i>
al lado de	<i>next to</i>
a la derecha de	<i>to the right of</i>
a la izquierda de	<i>to the left of</i>
alrededor de	<i>around</i>
cerca de	<i>near, close to</i>
lejos de	<i>far from</i>

**Direction Markers: To Answer ¿adónde?**

a	<i>to</i>
para	<i>toward</i>
hacia	<i>toward</i>
a través de	<i>across</i>
por	<i>through, by, along</i>
alrededor de	<i>around</i>
a la derecha	<i>to the right</i>
a la izquierda	<i>to the left</i>
adelante	<i>straight ahead</i>
recto	<i>straight ahead</i>
todo derecho	<i>straight ahead</i>

**Adverbs of Manner: To Answer ¿cómo?**

bien	<i>well</i>
mal	<i>badly</i>
(mucho) mejor	<i>(much) better</i>
(mucho) peor	<i>(much) worse</i>

**ADVERBS ENDING IN *-mente***FEMININE OR  
NEUTRAL FORM  
OF ADJECTIVE+ *-mente*

<i>lenta</i>	<i>lentamente</i>	<i>slowly</i>
<i>rápida</i>	<i>rápidamente</i>	<i>rapidly</i>
<i>dulce</i>	<i>dulcemente</i>	<i>sweetly</i>
<i>alegre</i>	<i>alegremente</i>	<i>joyously</i>
<i>feliz</i>	<i>felizmente</i>	<i>happily</i>
<i>fácil</i>	<i>fácilmente</i>	<i>easily</i>
<i>difícil</i>	<i>difícilmente</i>	<i>with difficulty</i>

**MASCULINE OR NEUTRAL FORM OF ADJECTIVE USED AS ADVERB**

<i>fuerte</i>	<i>strongly, tightly</i>	<i>despacio</i>	<i>slowly</i>
<i>alto</i>	<i>high, loud</i>	<i>lento</i>	<i>slowly</i>
<i>bajo</i>	<i>low</i>	<i>rápido</i>	<i>rapidly, fast</i>
<i>claro</i>	<i>clearly</i>	<i>hondo</i>	<i>deeply</i>
<i>barato</i>	<i>cheaply</i>	<i>justo</i>	<i>exactly, just</i>
<i>caro</i>	<i>expensively</i>	<i>seguro</i>	<i>definitely</i>
<i>derecho</i>	<i>straight</i>		
<i>recto</i>	<i>straight</i>		

**Adverbs of Degree: To Answer *¿cuánto?***

<i>nada</i>	<i>not at all</i>
<i>poco</i>	<i>hardly at all</i>
<i>un poco</i>	<i>slightly</i>
<i>algo</i>	<i>a bit</i>
<i>bastante</i>	<i>quite</i>
<i>bien</i>	<i>very</i>
<i>muy</i>	<i>very</i>
<i>tan</i>	<i>so</i>
<i>más que</i>	<i>more than</i>
<i>menos que</i>	<i>less than</i>
<i>demasiado</i>	<i>a lot, an extreme amount</i>

Review the forms in the charts on the preceding pages.

Adverbs give information about the time, place, direction, number of occasions, frequency, and manner of the action of verbs. They do not change in form. Often a longer expression or prepositional phrase functions as an adverb.

Adverbs can also modify the meaning of adjectives and other adverbs (see pages 89–90).

## Time Markers

Review the time markers on pages 231–232.

Time markers can be placed at the beginning of a sentence, after a verb, or at the end of a sentence.

■ *Actualmente* is a false cognate, or *falso amigo* (see pages 303–305). It means “at present,” “at this time,” “right now.” “Actually” is translated as *realmente* in Spanish.

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Do not use *actualmente* when you mean “actually.”

✗ *Actualmente, no es mi hermano.*

■ The English word “last” is expressed in different ways in Spanish.

anoche                      *last night*

■ When it means “the period before this one,” *pasado(-a)* is typically used.

el año pasado              *last year*

el viernes pasado        *last Friday*

la semana pasada        *last week*

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ *la noche pasada*        ✗ *el día pasado*

■ When it means “the final period,” *último(-a)* is used.

el último día              *the last day*

la última noche        *the last night*

la última semana de julio	<i>the last week of July</i>
las últimas semanas del verano	<i>the last weeks of summer</i>
los últimos días del año	<i>the last days of the year</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ el pasado día
- ✗ la pasada noche

■ The English word “next” is expressed in two different ways in Spanish.

- When it means “the period after this one,” *próximo(-a)* is used.

la próxima semana	<i>next week</i>
el próximo mes	<i>next month</i>
el próximo año	<i>next year</i>

- When it means “the period after that one,” *siguiente* is used.

el día siguiente	<i>the next (following) day</i>
el mes siguiente	<i>the next (following) month</i>
el año siguiente	<i>the next (following) year</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *próximo* to express “the next day” if the action has been completed. Use *siguiente* to express this meaning.

- ✗ Fuimos al cine el próximo día.

- *Hace* is used to express the English “ago” (see page 123).

hace media hora	<i>a half hour ago</i>
hace diez días	<i>10 days ago</i>
hace catorce años	<i>14 years ago</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ una media hora pasada
- ✗ diez días pasados

- The English word “time” is expressed in several ways in Spanish.
- To tell the current time, the pattern *es la una/son las dos* is used. To tell the time of an event or activity, the pattern *a la una/a las dos* is used (see page 261).

### AVOID THE

## Blunder

✗ El concierto son las ocho.

- The English adverb “again” can be expressed with *otra vez*, *de nuevo*, or *nuevamente*. It can also be expressed with the verb phrase *volver a* + infinitive.

Mañana nos vemos otra vez.

*Tomorrow we'll see each other again.*

Te vuelvo a llamar el viernes.

*I'll call you again on Friday.*

- *Tiempo* is used to express time as a commodity.

No tengo mucho tiempo.

*I don't have much time.*

No hay tiempo para hacerlo.

*There's no time to do it.*

El tiempo vuela.

*Time flies.*

Salud, dinero, amor y tiempo para gastarlos.

*Health, money, love—and time to enjoy them.*

- *Buen tiempo* means “good weather” in Spanish. To express “to have a good time,” *pasarlo bien* or *divertirse* is used (see page 308).

Lo pasé muy bien en la Argentina.

*I had a good time in Argentina.*

¿Lo pasaste bien?

*Did you have a good time?*

Nos divertimos mucho en la fiesta.

*We had a good time at the party.*

Espero que se diviertan.

*I hope you all have a good time.*

### AVOID THE

## Blunder

Don't confuse time with the weather!

✗ Tuve un buen tiempo en la Argentina.

✗ ¿Tuviste un buen tiempo?

- In English, the markers “before” and “after” are followed by indicative constructions. In Spanish, there are two different patterns.
- When the subject of the first verb is the same person who performs the action of the second verb, the second verb is in the infinitive form after the preposition *de*.

Quiero estudiar antes de salir.  
 Fueron a casa después de hacer el examen.  
 Voy a llamarte antes de hablar con ella.  
 Vamos a jugar cartas después de comer.

*I want to study before I go out.  
 They went home after they took the exam.  
 I'm going to call you before I talk to her.  
 We're going to play cards after we eat.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Quiero estudiar antes que hablo con ella.
- ✗ Fueron a casa después que hago el examen.

- When the subject of the first verb is a different person from the subject of the second verb, a subjunctive form is used after *antes que* or *después* (see page 171).

Quiero estudiar antes que regresen a casa los niños.  
 La profesora fue a casa después que hicieran el examen los estudiantes.  
 Voy a llamarte antes que salga mi esposo.  
 Vamos a comer después que hayan descansado un poco.

*I want to study before the children get home.  
 The teacher went home after the students took the exam.  
 I'm going to call you before my husband leaves.  
 We'll eat after you all have rested a bit.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the indicative after *antes que* or *después que*.

- ✗ Quiero estudiar antes que regresan los niños.
- ✗ Fue a casa después que hicieron el examen.
- ✗ Voy a llamarte antes que sale mi esposo.
- ✗ Vamos a comer después que han descansado.

## Frequency Markers

Review the frequency markers in the chart on page 233.

■ To tell the number of times an activity takes place, expressions such as *una vez*, *dos veces*, and *muchas veces* are used.

Estuve en México una vez.

*I was in Mexico once.*

Mi tío hizo el examen dos veces.

*My uncle took the test two times.*

Ella bailó con Juan muchas veces.

*She danced with Juan many times.*

Quiero ver la película otra vez.

*I want to see the movie again.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Estuve allí un tiempo.

✗ Comimos en ese restaurante muchos tiempos.

■ To modify a frequency expression, *más de* or *menos de* is used.

Mi tía come más de tres veces al día.

*My aunt eats more than three times a day.*

Voy al gimnasio menos de cuatro veces a la semana.

*I go to the gym less than four times a week.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *más que* before a number.

✗ Mi tía come más que tres veces al día.

✗ Tengo más que veinte dólares.

■ *A veces* is used to express “sometimes.”

A veces estudiamos hasta muy tarde.

*Sometimes we study until very late.*

Ellos me ayudan a veces.

*They help me sometimes.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ algunos tiempos

■ The adverbs *siempre* and *nunca* can be used with both the imperfect and the preterite tenses, with slightly different meanings.

When used with the imperfect, *siempre* and *nunca* emphasize the meaning of the imperfect tense. They stress the fact that the verb describes a past period of time, and that the action occurred over and over in a general way (see pages 133–134).

Mi hermana siempre ayudaba  
a mi mamá.

Siempre íbamos juntos al cine  
los sábados.

Su novio nunca se olvidaba  
de llamarla.

Nunca estábamos de acuerdo  
en nada.

*My sister would always help my  
mother.*

*We always used to go to the  
movies together on Saturdays.*

*Her boyfriend would never forget  
to call her.*

*We used to never agree on  
anything.*

When used with the preterite, *siempre* and *nunca* refer to a whole period of time that is now over and that the speaker chooses not to describe any further (see page 130).

Mi hermana siempre lo quiso.

Siempre supimos la verdad.

Nunca pude olvidarte.

Nunca tuviste tiempo para mí.

*My sister loved him the whole time.*

*We knew the truth all along.*

*I never managed to forget you.*

*You didn't (even once) have time  
for me.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not assume that *siempre*, like “always” in English, refers only to a description of habitual past action.

■ To express action that occurs regularly on certain days, no preposition is used in Spanish. Also note that all the days whose names end in -s have only one form and do not change in the plural; *sábado* and *domingo* are the only days that add -s in the plural.

Tenemos clases los lunes.

Salimos los viernes por la noche.

¿Qué haces los fines de semana?

No trabaja los sábados.

*We have classes on Mondays.*

*We go out on Friday nights.*

*What do you do on weekends?*

*She doesn't work on Saturdays.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ en los lunes

✗ en los fines de semana

## Place Markers

Review the place markers in the chart on pages 233–234.

- The preposition *en* can indicate “in a place,” “on a place,” or “at a place.”

Las cartas están en la caja.  
Los platos están en la mesa.  
Los niños están en la escuela.  
Comemos a menudo en este restaurante.

*The letters are in the box.  
The plates are on the table.  
The children are at school.  
We often eat at this restaurant.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Está al aeropuerto.
- ✗ Comemos al restaurante.
- ✗ Ella está a casa.

- The preposition *a* can indicate movement toward a place. When a verb that indicates movement toward a place (such as *ir*) is combined with another verb, *a* is used instead of *en* to indicate “in” or “at.”

Vamos al aeropuerto.  
Vamos a comer al restaurante.

*We're going to the airport.  
We're going to eat at the restaurant./  
We're going to the restaurant  
to eat.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Voy a comer en el restaurante.

- In many countries, *acá* is used instead of *aquí* when used with a verb of movement, such as *venir*. Likewise, *allá* is used instead of *allí* when used with a verb of movement, such as *ir*.

Estoy aquí.  
Juana está allí.  
Ven acá.  
Ve allá.

*I'm here.  
Juana is over there.  
Come here.  
Go over there.*

- Certain adverbs of place are different from their prepositional counterparts.

Mis cosas están arriba.  
Mis cosas están encima de las tuyas.

*My things are up there.  
My things are on top of yours.*

Las maletas están abajo.

*The suitcases are down there.*

Las maletas están debajo de los libros.

*The suitcases are underneath the books.*

El dinero está adentro.

*The money is inside.*

El dinero está dentro de la maleta.

*The money is inside the suitcase.*

El coche está afuera.

*The car is outside.*

El coche está fuera del garaje.

*The car is outside (of) the garage.*

Tenemos que seguir adelante.

*We have to go forward.*

Hay muchas personas delante de nosotros.

*There are a lot of people ahead of us.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ *adentro de la maleta*

✗ *afuera de la casa*

✗ *adelante de nosotros*

■ *Delante de* and *enfrente de* both mean “in front of,” but they do not express the same concept. *Delante de* expresses the concept “ahead of,” as in a row or line. *Enfrente de* expresses the concept “facing.”

Esta cola es muy larga y hay muchas personas delante de mí.

*This line is really long, and there are a lot of people in front of me.*

La maestra está enfrente de la clase.

*The teacher is in front of the class.*

*Enfrente* also translates into English as “across from.”

La casa enfrente de mi casa es blanca.

*The house across (the street) from mine is white.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *enfrente de* to indicate someone or something whose back is in front of you.

✗ *Él está enfrente de mí en la cola.*

■ Prepositional phrases that indicate place include the word *de* (*adentro de*, *enfrente de*), with three exceptions: *en*, *sobre*, and *entre*.

Los documentos están en la mesa.

*The documents are on the table.*

He puesto las fotos sobre la mesa.

*I put the photographs on the table.*

El libro pequeño está entre dos libros grandes.  
Encontramos sus papeles entre los de otras personas.

*The little book is between two big ones.  
We found your papers among those of other people.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ El libro está sobre de la mesa.
- ✗ El libro pequeño está entre de dos libros grandes.

## Adverbs of Manner

Adverbs of manner are formed by adding *-mente* to the feminine or neutral form of an adjective. If there is an accent mark in the adjective, it is retained in the adverb.

El chico corrió rápidamente.  
Ella pronunció cuidadosamente cada palabra.

*The boy ran fast.  
She pronounced each word carefully.*

■ When two or more adverbs of manner modify the same verb, *-mente* is omitted from all but the last one.

Ella leyó lenta y cuidadosamente cada palabra.

*She read each word slowly and carefully.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ lentamente y cuidadosamente

■ When *recientemente* directly precedes a past participle (see page 87), it is shortened to *recién*.

Llevaron al niño recién nacido a casa.  
Los recién casados están en Madrid.

*They took the newborn child home.  
The newlyweds are in Madrid.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ el niño recientemente nacido
- ✗ la mujer recientemente casada

- Several masculine adjectives are used as adverbs of manner.

alto	<i>high</i>	derecho	<i>straight</i>
bajo	<i>low</i>	despacio	<i>slowly</i>
barato	<i>cheaply</i>	hondo	<i>deeply</i>
caro	<i>dearly, expensively</i>	recto	<i>straight</i>

Tiró la pelota muy alto.

*He threw the ball very high.*

Canta bajo.

*He sings low.*

Me costó muy caro.

*It cost me dearly.*

Siga derecho.

*Continue straight ahead.*

Caminaron despacio.

*They walked slowly.*

Respire hondo.

*Breathe deeply.*

- Certain adverbs have two alternative forms: the masculine or neutral singular adjective form and the feminine or neutral singular adjective form + *-mente*.

claro/claramente	<i>clearly</i>
fuerte/fuertemente	<i>strongly, tightly</i>
justo/justamente	<i>exactly</i>
lento/lentamente	<i>slowly</i>
seguro/seguramente	<i>safely</i>

El profesor habló claro/claramente.

*The teacher spoke clearly.*

Sujétalo fuerte/fuertemente.

*Fasten it tightly.*

El chico corrió rápido/rápidamente.

*The boy ran fast.*

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Only certain adverbs have two alternative forms.

✗ altamente

✗ bajamente

✗ caramente

✗ baratamente

✗ hondamente

- Prepositional phrases are often used to express manner.

a ciegas

*blindly*

con calma

*calmly*

con cuidado

*carefully*

con esmero

*with care*

Tomó la decisión a ciegas.

*She made the decision blindly.*

Reportó las noticias con calma.

*He reported the news calmly.*

Ella pronunció cada palabra  
con cuidado.

*She pronounced each word  
carefully.*

Cocinó el plato con esmero.

*He prepared the dish with care.*

■ *Cada vez más* + an adverb of manner indicates steadily increasing intensity.

La chica corre cada vez más  
rápido.

*The girl runs faster and faster.*

Sus padres son cada vez más  
estrictos.

*His parents are getting stricter.*

## Adverbs of Degree

Review the adverbs of degree in the chart on page 235.

■ The adverbs *un poco*, *bastante*, *muy*, *bien*, and *demasiado* can modify adjectives (see pages 89–91), as well as adverbs of manner.

Es un poco tarde.

*It's a little late.*

Está bastante lejos de aquí.

*It's pretty far from here.*

Ella maneja muy lentamente.

*She drives very slowly.*

Ella maneja bien lentamente.

*She drives really slowly.*

Él corre demasiado rápido.

*He runs extremely fast.*

Él corre rapidísimo.

*He runs extremely fast.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

*Demasiado* is better translated as “extremely” rather than “too.” “Too” indicates a negative consequence, while *demasiado* does not.

✗ *Su casa está demasiado lejos.*  
(meaning you are not going to go there)

■ Unlike “very” in English, the adverb *muy* cannot stand alone in answer to a question. *Mucho* is used instead.

—¿Estás cansado? —Sí, mucho.

*“Are you tired?” “Yes, very.”*

—¿Es bonita? —Sí, mucho.

*“Is she pretty?” “Yes, very.”*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

—¿Estás cansado?

✗ —Sí, muy.

- To compare adverbs of manner, *tan* + adverb + *como* is used.

Ella cocina tan bien como  
su mamá.

*She cooks as well as her mother  
(does).*

Él canta tan dulcemente como  
su hermana.

*He sings as sweetly as his sister  
(does).*

To indicate “as much as,” *tanto como* is used.

Susana habla tanto como su  
mamá.

*Susana talks as much as her  
mother (does).*

Roberto come tanto como su  
papá.

*Roberto eats as much as his  
father (does).*

AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ tan bien que su mamá

✗ tanto que su papá

- To indicate “to what extent,” *lo* + adverb is used.

Es impresionante lo bien que canta.

*It's impressive how well she sings.*

Me preocupa lo rápido que maneja.

*It worries me how fast she drives.*

AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Es impresionante como bien canta.

✗ Me preocupa como rápido maneja.

- When an adverbial comparison is made that involves two different subjects and verbs, *más/menos* + adverb + *de lo que* is used between the two clauses.

Ella trabaja más duro de lo que  
piensas.

*She works harder than you think  
(she does).*

Su hijo maneja más rápido de lo  
que ella quiere.

*Her son drives faster than she  
wants (him to).*

The adverb *apenas* is used to indicate “hardly” or “just barely.”

Apenas tiene suficiente para comer.  
Apenas podía verlos.

*He hardly has enough to eat.  
I could barely see them.*

## Questions

Questions are always preceded by an upside-down question mark and followed by a standard question mark. The question mark immediately precedes the question, even if the question does not begin the sentence. In this case, the first word of the question is not capitalized.

A propósito, ¿va Roberto a la reunión?

Y tú, ¿qué vas a hacer?

*By the way, is Roberto going to the meeting?*

*What about you? What are you going to do?*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ A propósito, va Roberto a la reunión?

✗ ¿Y tú, qué vas a hacer?

✗ Y tú, ¿Qué vas a hacer?

Questions are formed in several ways in Spanish.

■ Yes-or-no questions are usually formed by reversing the order of the subject and the verb, using question marks at the beginning and at the end of the question, or using rising intonation at the end.

¿Estudia Jaime?

¿Eres (tú) de Lima?

¿Viven ustedes aquí?

¿Trabajan tus hermanos?

*Does Jaime study?*

*Are you from Lima?*

*Do you all live here?*

*Do your brothers work?*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

There is no equivalent of “do you?”/“does he?”/“are they?” in Spanish. Do not try to translate these expressions.

✗ Hace Jaime estudiar?

✗ Hacen ustedes vivir aquí?

□ When the answer is “yes,” it is expressed by *sí*. The following expressions may also be used.

Cómo no.

Por supuesto.

Claro.

*Yes, indeed.*

*Yes, (naturally).*

*Of course.*

To add another positive element, *también* may be used.

Sí, Jaime estudia, y yo también.  
Sí, soy de Lima, y mi papá  
también.

*Yes, Jaime studies, and so do I.  
Yes, I'm from Lima, and so is  
my dad.*

□ When the answer is “no,” it is expressed by *no*. The following expressions may also be used.

De ninguna manera.  
Todavía no.  
Hoy no.  
Ahora no.  
Mañana no.

*No way.  
Not yet.  
Not today.  
Not now.  
Not tomorrow.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

In a short negative answer, put the *no* after the adverb.

—¿Vas a comprarlo?

✗ —No hoy.

✗ —No ahora.

✗ —No mañana.

When a sentence contains a negative word in any position other than the first word in the sentence, the verb is preceded by *no*.

No tengo nada.  
No vamos a ninguna parte.  
No lo hace nunca.  
No conozco a nadie.  
No hay ningún libro en la mesa.

*I don't have anything.  
We're not going anywhere.  
He never does it.  
I don't know anybody.  
There's no book on the table./  
There are no books on the table.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Double negatives are correct in Spanish.

✗ Tengo nada.

✗ No hay un libro en la mesa.

In the examples below, the first *no* answers a question; the second *no* is used before the verb to make the sentence negative.

No, Jaime no estudia.  
No, no soy de Lima.

*No, Jaime doesn't study.  
No, I'm not from Lima.*

To add an additional negative element, *tampoco* may be used.

No, Jaime no estudia, ni yo tampoco.	<i>No, Jaime doesn't study, and neither do I.</i>
No, no soy de Lima, ni mi papá tampoco.	<i>No, I'm not from Lima, and neither is my dad.</i>

■ Many questions can be formed with interrogative words.

An accent mark is used over the stressed vowel of an interrogative word in a question.

¿Quién es?	<i>Who is he?</i>
¿De dónde es?	<i>Where is he from?</i>
¿Hasta cuándo te quedas?	<i>How long are you staying?</i>

□ Two interrogative words, *quién* and *cuánto*, can be either singular or plural.

If you are sure the answer is singular, or do not know if the answer is singular or plural, *quién* is used to ask “who.”

¿Quién es ese chico?	<i>Who is that boy?</i>
¿Con quién estás?	<i>Who are you with?</i>

If you are pretty sure the answer is plural, *quiénes* is used to ask “who.”

¿Quiénes son esos chicos?	<i>Who are those boys?</i>
¿Quiénes van a la fiesta?	<i>Who is going to the party?</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *quién* if you expect the answer to be plural.

✗ ¿Quién va a la fiesta/a la reunión?

*Cuánto* is used to express “how much.” *Cuántos* is used to express “how many.”

¿Cuánto cuestan estos zapatos?	<i>How much do these shoes cost?</i>
¿Cuántas personas vienen esta noche?	<i>How many people are coming tonight?</i>

□ Both *qué* and *cuál* can mean “what” and “which,” but they are not interchangeable.

*Qué* can ask for an identification or a definition.

¿Qué es esto?	<i>What's this?</i>
¿Qué es eso?	<i>What's that?</i>
¿Qué es un abrelatas?	<i>What's an “abrelatas”?</i>

*Qué* followed by a noun asks “which one.”

¿Qué vestido te gusta más?

*Which dress do you like best?*

¿Qué abrelatas vas a usar?

*Which can opener are you going to use?*

AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ ¿Cuál vestido te gusta más?

✗ ¿Cuál abrelatas vas a usar?

*Cuál* followed by a form of the verb *ser* asks “what” (which one of all the possibilities).

¿Cuál es su nombre?

*What's your name?*

¿Cuál es la fecha?

*What's the date?*

¿Cuál es su número de teléfono?

*What's your telephone number?*

*Cuál* + *de* + a plural noun asks “which” of two or more alternatives.

¿Cuál de los libros prefieres?

*Which book do you prefer?*

¿Cuál de las ideas te interesa más?

*Which idea interests you the most?*

AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ ¿Qué es su nombre?

✗ ¿Qué es su número de teléfono?

□ In Spanish, prepositions precede a question word. They never go at the end of a question.

¿De qué hablas?

*What are you talking about?*

¿De dónde son ellos?

*Where are they from?*

¿Para quién es el regalo?

*Who is the present for?*

¿Con quién vas?

*Who are you going with?*

¿De quién es este suéter?

*Whose sweater is this?*

¿A quién llamas?

*Who are you calling?*

*A dónde* is usually contracted to *adónde*.

¿Adónde van Uds.?

*Where are you all going?*

¿Adónde quieren ir?

*Where do they want to go?*

AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ ¿Qué hablas de?

✗ ¿Quién es el regalo para?

✗ ¿Dónde vas?

□ *Por qué* is used to ask “why.” It is two words, with an accent mark in *qué*. To answer “because,” *porque* is used. It is one word and does not have an accent mark.

—¿Por qué no está trabajando  
tu hermano hoy?

*“Why isn’t your brother working  
today?”*

—Porque está enfermo.

*“Because he’s sick.”*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ —¿Porque no trabaja?

✗ —Por que está enfermo.

■ Questions may be asked indirectly, following certain clauses. As in direct questions, the interrogative word has an accent mark.

José me preguntó qué hiciste  
con el dinero.

*José asked me what you did with  
the money.*

Dime a qué hora quieres venir.

*Tell me what time you want to  
come.*

Lack of knowledge can also be expressed with a question word within a sentence. An accent mark is used in the question word.

No sé cómo lo hace.

*I don’t know how he does it.*

Necesitamos saber adónde fue.

*We need to know where she went.*

When there is no direct or indirect question, *que*, *cuando*, *como*, and *donde* do not have accent marks.

Pedro me dijo que quería  
acompañarnos.

*Pedro told me (that) he wanted  
to go with us.*

Estoy contenta cuando estás aquí.

*I’m happy when you’re here.*

Corre como el viento.

*He runs like the wind.*

Vamos al restaurante donde  
comimos la semana pasada.

*Let’s go to the restaurant where  
we ate last week.*

## Exclamations

Exclamations are preceded by an upside-down exclamation point and followed by a standard exclamation point. The exclamatory word has an accent mark. The following patterns are used.

■ ¡Qué + noun + *más/tan* + adjective!

¡Qué niño más adorable!

*What an adorable child!*

¡Qué clase tan aburrida!

*What a boring class!*

- ¡Qué + adjective + noun!

¡Qué buena idea!  
¡Qué mala suerte!

*What a good idea!  
What bad luck!*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ ¡Qué un adorable niño!  
✗ ¡Qué una clase aburrida!

- ¡Qué + adjective/adverb + verb!

¡Qué bonita estás!  
¡Qué bien hablas español!  
¡Qué rápido corre!

*How pretty you look!  
How well you speak Spanish!  
How fast he runs!*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ ¡Cómo bonita estás!  
✗ ¡Cómo bien hablas!

- ¡Cómo + verb!

¡Cómo habla!  
¡Cómo corre!

*How she talks!/The way she talks!  
How he runs!/The way he runs!*

- ¡Cuánto + (object) + verb!

¡Cuánto te quiero!  
¡Cuánto gastas!

*I love you so much!  
You spend so much!*

- ¡(object) + verb + *tanto*!

¡Te quiero tanto!  
¡Gastas tanto!

*I love you so much!  
You spend so much!*

## Exercises

**A** Fill in the blanks with the Spanish equivalent of the English expression in parentheses.

1. Ella fue a Chile la semana \_\_\_\_\_ (last).
2. ¿Te llamó Santiago \_\_\_\_\_ (last night)?
3. La \_\_\_\_\_ (last) vez que lo vi fue  
\_\_\_\_\_ (two weeks ago).
4. Siempre nos divertimos durante las \_\_\_\_\_ (last) semanas del año.
5. Ramón vio dos películas el sábado y vio otras dos el día  
\_\_\_\_\_ (next).
6. Nos vamos a ver el \_\_\_\_\_ (next) viernes.
7. Tuvimos muy \_\_\_\_\_ (good weather).
8. Mi hijo vio esa película tres \_\_\_\_\_ (times).
9. ¿\_\_\_\_\_? (Did you have a good time?)
10. El \_\_\_\_\_ (time) es oro.
11. Por favor, toca esa canción \_\_\_\_\_ (again).
12. \_\_\_\_\_ (Sometimes) camina al trabajo y vuelve en el metro.

**B** Fill in the blanks with the infinitive or subjunctive form of the verb in parentheses, as appropriate.

1. El profesor fue a casa después de \_\_\_\_\_ (leer) los exámenes.
2. Ella va a pintar la sala antes que \_\_\_\_\_ (regresar) su esposo.
3. Vamos a descansar después que \_\_\_\_\_ (volver) los otros.
4. Ana siempre hace ejercicio antes de \_\_\_\_\_ (vestirse).

**C** Fill in the blanks with the appropriate Spanish expressions.

1. En mi oficina siempre nos reunimos \_\_\_\_\_ (on Mondays) a las diez de la mañana.
2. No voy a estar aquí \_\_\_\_\_ (on Monday), pues tengo una cita con el médico.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (The whole time) estuve de acuerdo contigo.

4. Su novio la llama \_\_\_\_\_ (*more than*) dos veces cada día.  
5. Siempre estudiamos \_\_\_\_\_ (*at*) la biblioteca.

**D** Circle the expression that best completes each sentence.

1. Hay tres personas **delante de** | **enfrente de** | **adelante** mí en la cola.  
2. Los niños están jugando **fuera** | **afuera**.  
3. Hay más de diez personas **dentro de** | **dentro** | **adentro** la casa.  
4. Entramos en el segundo piso y los cuartos de los niños están **debajo de** | **debajo** | **abajo**.

**E** Fill in the blanks with the appropriate Spanish adverbs.

1. Alejandra cantó \_\_\_\_\_ (*softly and sweetly*).  
2. Los \_\_\_\_\_ (*recently*) casados ya volvieron de su luna de miel.  
3. Ella recibió la noticia \_\_\_\_\_ (*calmly*).  
4. Yo corro \_\_\_\_\_ (*slowly*).

**F** Match each English expression in the left column with a Spanish expression in the right column.

- |                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| _____ 1. as much as          | a. tantos como           |
| _____ 2. more than you think | b. tanto como            |
| _____ 3. as well as          | c. tan bien como         |
| _____ 4. as many as          | d. lo bien que           |
| _____ 5. how well            | e. más de lo que piensas |

**G** Express each of the following questions in Spanish.

1. Where are you going?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. What are you all talking about?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Who are you going to the movies with?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. When are you all coming back?

\_\_\_\_\_

**H** Now write negative responses to the questions in Exercise G.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_

**I** Match each English expression in the left column with a Spanish expression in the right column.

- |                                                   |                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| _____ 1. <i>How talkative she is!</i>             | a. ¡Cómo habla!                 |
| _____ 2. <i>How does he speak?</i>                | b. No sabes lo mucho que habla. |
| _____ 3. <i>Because he talks so much.</i>         | c. ¡Habla tanto!                |
| _____ 4. <i>Why does he talk so much?</i>         | d. ¡Qué habladora es!           |
| _____ 5. <i>How he talks!</i>                     | e. ¿Por qué habla tanto?        |
| _____ 6. <i>She talks so much!</i>                | f. Porque habla tanto.          |
| _____ 7. <i>You don't know how much he talks.</i> | g. ¿Cómo habla?                 |

# OTHER PREPOSITIONS

a	to, for, indicator of personal direct object	entre	between/among
ante	before (in the presence of)	hacia	toward
bajo	under	hasta	until
con	with	para	destined for, for
contra	against	por	by, along, for
de	from, of	según	according to
salvo, excepto	except	sin	without
desde	since, from	sobre	over, about, on
en	in, on, at	tras	behind

---

Review the prepositions in the chart above.

## Form and Function of Prepositions

Prepositions are invariable in form. They often have no exact English equivalents.

■ When the prepositions *a* and *de* are used immediately before the masculine definite article *el*, the two words are contracted to *al* and *del*, unless the *el* is part of a proper name.

Vamos al mercado.  
Ya salieron del edificio.  
Eduardo va a El Salvador la próxima semana.

*We're going to the market.  
They already left the building.  
Eduardo is going to El Salvador next week.*

AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Vamos a el mercado.
- ✗ Ya salieron de el edificio.

- Pronouns that follow prepositions have several variations.
- In Spanish the subject pronouns *él, ella, usted, ustedes, ellos, ellas, nosotros*, and *vosotros* are used after prepositions, unlike English where the object pronouns (“him,” “her,” “you,” “you all,” “them,” and “us”) are used.

Voy con ella.

Lo hice por él.

El regalo es para nosotros.

La carta es de ellos.

*I'm going with her.*

*I did it because of him.*

*The present is for us.*

*The letter is from them.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the direct and indirect object pronouns *le, lo, la, les, los, las, nos*, and *os* after prepositions.

✗ Lo hice por lo.

✗ La carta es de los.

- The subject pronouns *yo* and *tú* are used after the prepositions *entre, según, salvo*, and *excepto*.

El asunto es entre tú y yo.

Según tú, todo el mundo está loco.

Todo el mundo salvo yo se va.

*The matter is between you and me.*

*According to you, everyone is crazy.*

*Everybody except me is leaving.*

- The object pronouns *mí* and *ti* are used after other prepositions.

Lo hizo por mí.

Tienes que ir sin mí.

El regalo es para ti.

Estoy pensando en ti.

*He did it because of me.*

*You have to go without me.*

*The present is for you.*

*I'm thinking about you.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

*Mí* after a preposition has an accent mark to distinguish it from the possessive *mi*. *Ti* does not have an accent mark.

✗ por mi

✗ para mi

✗ mí casa

✗ para tí

- When the preposition *con* is followed by the pronoun *mí, ti*, or *si* (“me,” “you,” “himself,” “herself,” “themselves”), *-go* is added to form one word. The accent mark in *mí* is dropped (see page 14).

Puedes ir conmigo.

No quiero hablar contigo.

*You can go with me.*

*I don't want to talk to you.*

Rubén trajo sus libros consigo.  
Los chicos se fueron, y se  
llevaron la pizza consigo.

*Rubén brought his books with him.  
The boys left and took the pizza  
with them.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *él, ella, ellos, or ellas* to express “himself, “herself,” or “themselves.”

✗ con mí

✗ con ti

✗ con sí

✗ con él

✗ con ella

✗ con ellos

✗ con ellas

- In Spanish, the preposition is usually repeated when there is more than one object.

El regalo es para ti y para Carlos.  
Lo hizo por mí y por ti.  
Estoy pensando en ti y en él.  
Vive lejos de mí y de mis  
hermanos.

*The present is for you and Carlos.  
He did it because of me and you.  
I'm thinking about you and him.  
She lives far away from me and  
my brothers.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ El regalo es para ti y Carlos.

✗ Lo hizo por mí y ti.

✗ Estoy pensando en ti y él.

✗ Vive lejos de mí y mis hermanos.

- A verb that directly follows a preposition is in the infinitive form (see page 97).

Voy a llamarlo antes de salir.  
Van al mercado a comprar pan.

*I'm going to call him before I leave.  
They're going to the market to  
buy bread.*

Vimos la película después de  
comer.

*We watched the movie after we  
ate.*

Come menos para perder peso.

*She eats less in order to lose weight.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Voy a llamarlo antes de yo salgo.

✗ Vimos la película después que comimos.

■ In Spanish, a sentence never ends with a preposition. In both direct and indirect questions the preposition goes before the interrogative word.

¿De qué se queja?	<i>What is she complaining about?</i>
¿En quién piensas?	<i>Who are you thinking about?</i>
¿Desde cuándo están aquí?	<i>How long have you been here?</i>
¿Hasta cuándo se queda?	<i>How long is he staying?</i>
No sé con quién fue.	<i>I don't know who he went with.</i>
Díganos de quién es esta carta.	<i>Tell us who this letter is from.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ ¿Qué se queja de?
- ✗ No sé quien fue con.
- ✗ ¿Quién piensas de?

■ Certain verb + preposition combinations in English are translated into Spanish using a verb without a preposition. The following verbs are some common examples (see page 104).

agradecer	<i>be grateful for</i>	escuchar	<i>listen to</i>
buscar	<i>look for</i>	llorar	<i>cry over</i>
esperar	<i>wait for</i>	mirar	<i>look at</i>
pagar	<i>pay for</i>	padecer	<i>suffer from</i>
pedir (i, i)	<i>ask for</i>		
votar	<i>vote for (something)</i>		
atender (ie)	<i>wait on, take care of</i>		
comentar	<i>comment on</i>		

Te agradezco tus consejos.	<i>I'm grateful for your advice.</i>
Estoy buscando mis lentes.	<i>I'm looking for my glasses.</i>
Espérame aquí.	<i>Wait for me here.</i>
Tenemos que pagar la luz.	<i>We have to pay for the electricity.</i>
Tienes que pedirle un cupón.	<i>You have to ask him for a coupon.</i>
¿Qué miras?	<i>What are you looking at?</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Estoy buscando para mis lentes.
- ✗ Tienes que pedirle por un cupón.
- ✗ Espera por mí aquí.
- ✗ ¿A qué miras?

## Usage of Common Prepositions

Individual prepositions have a variety of uses.

### **a**

The preposition *a* has specific uses and is sometimes required in set phrases.

■ *A* is used after *ir* and other verbs that indicate movement to another place.

Voy a la universidad.	<i>I'm going to the university.</i>
La chica corrió a la casa.	<i>The girl ran to the house.</i>
Nos mudamos a la ciudad.	<i>We moved to the city.</i>
Caminaron al mercado.	<i>They walked to the market.</i>

■ In only a few instances is *a* translated into English as “at” (see pages 272–273).

■ With the verb *ir* to indicate the activity intended.

Voy a estudiar a la universidad.	<i>I'm going to study at the university. (I'm going to the university to study.)</i>
Fueron a comer a un restaurante.	<i>They went to eat at a restaurant. (They went to a restaurant to eat.)</i>

■ With the verb *sentar* to indicate “facing.”

La familia estaba sentada a la mesa.	<i>The family was seated at the table.</i>
La mujer se sentaba a la ventana y miraba a la gente.	<i>The woman used to sit at the window and watch people.</i>

■ To ask for and to indicate the time of an event.

¿A qué hora es la reunión?	<i>(At) what time is the meeting?</i>
Es a las diez.	<i>It's at 10 o'clock.</i>
Es a mediodía.	<i>It's at noon.</i>

■ The personal “*a*” is used before a direct object noun that refers to a person or a pet (see page 215).

Llamo a mi mamá todos los días.	<i>I call my mother every day.</i>
Vio a su amiga en la tienda.	<i>He saw his friend at the store.</i>
¿Cuándo visitan a su abuela?	<i>When do you visit your grandmother?</i>
¿Encontró al señor Sánchez?	<i>Did you find Mr. Sánchez?</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not forget the *a*, even though it is not translated.

✗ Llamo mi mamá.      ✗ Vio su amiga.

The “personal *a*” is typically not used after the verb *tener*.

Tengo tres primos en California.	<i>I have three cousins in California.</i>
Tienen un hijo.	<i>They have one child.</i>

■ *A* is used before an indefinite pronoun that refers to an unidentified person.

—¿Conoces a alguien que hable italiano?	<i>“Do you know anyone who speaks Italian?”</i>
—No, no conozco a nadie aquí.	<i>“No, I don’t know anybody here.”</i>
—¿Ves a algún chico de nuestro colegio?	<i>“Do you see any boys from our school?”</i>
—No, no veo a ninguno.	<i>“No, I don’t see any (not a single one).”</i>

■ *A* is used with exchange-type verbs that indicate something taken from another person or something done to or for another person (see pages 105–106 and 218–219).

Raúl le compró un coche a ese tipo.	<i>Raúl bought a car from that guy.</i>
A mí me robaron la cartera.	<i>They stole my purse (from me).</i>
Ana le regaló una corbata a su hijo.	<i>Ana gave her son a necktie.</i>
Miguel le mandó la carta a Pedro.	<i>Miguel sent the letter to Pedro.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Robaron mi cartera de mí.  
✗ Ana regaló su hijo una corbata.

■ *A* is used before indirect object nouns and the pronouns that refer to them.

A mí me gustan las telenovelas.	<i>I like soap operas. (They appeal to me.)</i>
A Juan no le molesta el ruido.	<i>The noise doesn’t bother Juan.</i>
A nosotros no nos gusta el frío.	<i>We don’t like the cold. (It doesn’t please us.)</i>
Y a ti, ¿qué te interesa?	<i>And you, what are you interested in? (What is interesting to you?)</i>

■ *A* is used after certain verbs and is followed by another verb in the infinitive form (see page 97). Following are some common examples.

aprender a	<i>learn to</i>	invitar a	<i>invite to</i>
atreverse a	<i>dare to</i>	negarse a	<i>refuse to</i>
ayudar a	<i>help (do)</i>	obligar a	<i>make (someone) do</i>
comenzar a	<i>begin to</i>	ofrecerse a	<i>offer to</i>
decidirse a	<i>decide to</i>	oponerse a	<i>be opposed to</i>
detenerse a	<i>stop to</i>	ponerse a	<i>begin, set out to</i>
empezar a	<i>begin to</i>	resolverse a	<i>make up one's mind to</i>
enseñar a	<i>teach (to)</i>	volver a	<i>(do) again</i>

Aprendí a manejar el año pasado.	<i>I learned to drive last year.</i>
Se atrevió a decirme eso.	<i>He dared to tell me that.</i>
Empezó a llover.	<i>It started to rain.</i>
Volvió a llamarme.	<i>She called me again.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not forget the *a*, even though the English infinitive begins with “to.”

✗ Aprendí manejar.

✗ Empezó llover.

■ *A* is used after certain verbs and is followed by a noun.

acercarse a	<i>approach</i>	condenar a	<i>condemn to</i>
acostumbrarse a	<i>get used to</i>	dar a	<i>have a view of</i>
asistir a	<i>attend</i>	dirigirse a	<i>head toward</i>
asomarse a	<i>lean out of</i>	jugar a	<i>play</i>

La chica asiste a todas sus clases.	<i>The girl attends all her classes.</i>
Mi habitación da a la plaza.	<i>My room overlooks the plaza.</i>

### VERBS RELATED TO THE SENSES

oler a	<i>smell like</i>	saber a	<i>taste like</i>
parecerse a	<i>look like</i>	sonar a	<i>sound like</i>

La casa olía a humo.	<i>The house smelled like smoke.</i>
Ella se parece a su mamá.	<i>She looks like her mother.</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use a different preposition, and do not leave the preposition out.

✗ Asiste las clases.

✗ La casa olía como humo.

- *A* is used before certain nouns to indicate the manner in which something is done.

La blusa fue bordada a mano.

*The blouse was embroidered by hand.*

Escribe el trabajo a máquina.

*Type the paper.*

Invirtió en la empresa a ciegas.

*He invested in the firm blindly.*

Fue a la estación a pie.

*He went to the station on foot.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ bordar por mano

✗ ir en pie

✗ escribir por máquina

✗ lavar por mano

- *A* is used to express certain measurements.

El coche corre a 70 millas por hora.

*The car is going 70 miles an hour.*

Se venden las galletas a tres dólares la docena.

*The cookies are on sale for three dollars a dozen.*

- *A* is used to express that something happens a certain number of times in a given period of time.

Comemos tres veces al día.

*We eat three times a day.*

La llamo una vez a la semana.

*I call her once a week.*

Lo visita varias veces al año.

*She visits him several times a year.*

Van al cine una vez al mes.

*They go to the movies once a month.*

- *A* is used to express distance.

Su casa está a 50 kilómetros de la ciudad.

*Their house is 50 kilometers from the city.*

- *A* is used to express “style.”

Celebramos a la española.

*We celebrated Spanish style.*

Preparó los frijoles a la mexicana.

*She prepared the beans Mexican style.*

Vamos a cocinar las papas al estilo peruano.

*We're going to cook the potatoes Peruvian style.*

- *A* is used to indicate musical accompaniment.

Bailamos al son cubano.  
Marcharon al compás de los  
tambores.

*We danced to the Cuban beat.  
They marched to the beat of  
the drums.*

- *A* can be used to give an order or exhortation.

¡A trabajar!  
¡A comer!

*Get to work!/Let's get to work!  
Eat!/Let's eat!*

- *A* is used before *qué* to express "I'll bet."

¡A qué no sabes quién es ese  
chico!

*I'll bet you don't know who that  
boy is!*

- *A* is used in certain set phrases.

a base de	<i>based on</i>	a lo mejor	<i>most likely</i>
a caballo	<i>on horseback</i>	a menudo	<i>often</i>
a causa de	<i>because of</i>	a partir de	<i>beginning from</i>
a consecuencia de	<i>because of</i>		<i>(a time)</i>
a costa de	<i>at the expense of</i>	a pesar de	<i>in spite of</i>
a diferencia de	<i>compared to</i>	a propósito	<i>on purpose,</i>
a duras penas	<i>with difficulty</i>		<i>by the way</i>
a escondidas	<i>secretly</i>	a saber	<i>namely</i>
a eso de	<i>approximately</i>	a salvo	<i>unharméd</i>
a espaldas de	<i>behind (some-</i>	a solas	<i>all alone</i>
	<i>one's) back</i>	a tiempo	<i>on time</i>
a favor de	<i>in favor of</i>	a través de	<i>by means of</i>
a fin de cuentas	<i>after all</i>	a veces	<i>sometimes</i>
a gusto	<i>according to taste</i>	al contrario	<i>quite the opposite</i>
a la larga	<i>in the long run</i>	al principio	<i>at first</i>
a lo largo de	<i>along (a path)</i>	al revés	<i>backwards</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not attempt to find exact equivalents for English prepositions or to translate phrases word for word. The best way to learn to use prepositions is to learn whole phrases and to practice using them in context.

- |                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| ✗ en caballo           | ✗ porque de           |
| ✗ detrás de su espalda | ✗ en la corrida larga |
| ✗ en favor de          |                       |

**con**

The preposition *con* has specific uses and is sometimes required after certain verbs.

- *Con* is often used like “with” in English.

Ven conmigo.	<i>Come with me.</i>
Voy contigo.	<i>I'm going with you.</i>
Nos reunimos con los nuevos empleados.	<i>We met with the new employees.</i>

- *Con* can indicate a way of doing something.

Caminó al trabajo con dificultad.	<i>He walked to work with difficulty.</i>
Hay que tomar las cosas con calma.	<i>One must accept things calmly.</i>
Nos ayudó con mucho gusto.	<i>She helped us with pleasure.</i>

- Following are some common verbs that are followed by *con*.

acabar con	<i>finish off</i>	encontrarse con	<i>run into</i>
casarse con	<i>marry</i>	hablar con	<i>talk to</i>
coincidir con	<i>agree with</i>	meterse con	<i>challenge</i>
contar con	<i>count on</i>	poder con	<i>be able to deal with</i>
contentar con	<i>be satisfied with</i>	soñar con	<i>dream about</i>
cumplir con	<i>fulfill</i>		
dar con	<i>run into</i>		

Julia se casa con Martín muy pronto.	<i>Julia is marrying Martín soon.</i>
Coincido contigo en eso.	<i>I agree with you on that.</i>
Cuenta conmigo.	<i>Count on me.</i>
Voy a hablar con el profesor mañana.	<i>I'm going to talk to the professor tomorrow.</i>
No puedo con ese tipo.	<i>I can't deal with that guy.</i>
Estoy soñando contigo.	<i>I'm dreaming about you.</i>

**AVOID THE****Blunder**

Do not try to translate the English prepositions.

- ✗ Julia se casa a Martín.
- ✗ Cuenta en mí.
- ✗ Voy a hablar al profesor.
- ✗ Estoy soñando de ti.

**sin**

The preposition *sin* has several uses.

- *Sin* generally corresponds to English “without.”

Salió sin dinero.

*She left without money.*

No puedo vivir sin ti.

*I can't live without you.*

Se fue sin despedirse.

*He left without saying good-bye.*

Lo llamé sin darme cuenta.

*I called him without realizing it.*

- *Sin* occurs after the verb *llevar* and is followed by a verb in infinitive form to indicate how long it has been since something has occurred (see pages 116–117).

Llevamos veinte años sin vernos.

*We haven't seen each other for twenty years.*

Lleva seis meses sin hablar español.

*He hasn't spoken Spanish for six months.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ No nos hemos visto por veinte años.

✗ No ha hablado español por seis meses.

- *Sin* is followed by a verb in the infinitive form to indicate a condition that exists because an action has not occurred.

Hay problemas sin resolver.

*There are unsolved problems.*

El dormitorio todavía está sin pintar.

*The bedroom is still unpainted.*

**de**

The preposition *de* has specific uses and is sometimes required in set phrases.

- *De* can indicate origin and is used in other expressions translated as “from.”

—¿De dónde es Sara?

*“Where is Sara from?”*

—Es de Chicago.

*“She's from Chicago.”*

Lo sé de memoria.

*I know it from memory.*

Voy a Nueva York de vez en cuando.

*I go to New York from time to time.*

De ahora en adelante vamos a tener más cuidado.

*From now on we're going to be more careful.*

■ *De... en...* indicates a repetitive activity, translated as “from ... to ...” in English.

El príncipe fue de casa en casa  
en busca de la princesa.

*The prince went from house to  
house looking for the princess.*

AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ de casa a casa

✗ de pueblo a pueblo

■ *De* can indicate possession.

—¿De quién es este libro?

*“Whose book is this?”*

—Es de Carlos.

*“It’s Carlos’s.”*

AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use an apostrophe + *s* in Spanish.

✗ Es Carlos’s.

■ *De* can indicate the material something is made of.

—¿De qué material es tu blusa?

*“What material is your blouse  
made of?”*

—Es de seda.

*“It’s silk.”*

Las sillas son de madera.

*The chairs are made of wood.*

La bolsa es de plástico.

*The bag is made of plastic.*

AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ La blusa es seda.

✗ Las sillas son maderas.

■ In some expressions, *de* can be translated as “of.”

Esa mujer se aprovecha de ti.

*That woman takes advantage  
of you.*

No te burles de mí.

*Don’t make fun of me.*

Nos cansamos de salir cada  
noche.

*We got tired of going out every  
night.*

Su libro consta de cuatro cuentos.

*His book consists of four stories.*

- In some expressions, *de* can be translated as “about.”

Se alegra de las noticias.	<i>He is happy about the news.</i>
Nos enteramos de su visita.	<i>We found out about her visit.</i>
Me olvidé de llamarte.	<i>I forgot about calling you.</i>
Se rieron de los fracasos.	<i>They laughed about the failures.</i>

- *De* can be used after *estar* to indicate a current state.

de acuerdo	<i>in agreement</i>
de buen humor	<i>in a good mood</i>
de caza	<i>(in the act of) hunting</i>
de mal humor	<i>in a bad mood</i>
de merienda	<i>having a snack</i>
de moda	<i>in style</i>
de mudanza	<i>(in the process of) moving</i>
de pie	<i>standing</i>
de prisa	<i>in a hurry</i>
de visita	<i>visiting</i>

Los hombres están de caza.	<i>The men are out hunting.</i>
Estamos de merienda.	<i>We're having a snack.</i>
Las faldas cortas están de moda.	<i>Short skirts are in style.</i>
Están de mudanza.	<i>They're in the process of moving.</i>
Las chicas están de pie.	<i>The girls are standing up.</i>
¿Están de visita?	<i>Are you visiting?</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *en* with these expressions to translate “in.”

✗ *en* acuerdo      ✗ *en* un buen humor      ✗ *en* moda

- *De* is used to express the appropriate time for an activity.

Es la hora de descansar.	<i>It's time to rest.</i>
No es hora de comer.	<i>It's not time to eat.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not leave out the preposition, even though “to” is expressed in the English infinitive.

✗ Es la hora descansar.  
✗ No es hora comer.

- *De* is used to express a type of activity or temporary job.

María trabaja de niñera.

*María works as a babysitter.*

Mi hermana hace de cocinera.

*My sister is doing the cooking.*

- *De* is used to define certain objects according to their use.

Chicle es otro nombre por goma de mascar.

*"Chicle" is another word for chewing gum (gum used for chewing).*

Las computadoras han reemplazado a las máquinas de escribir.

*Computers have replaced typewriters (machines used for writing).*

- *De* is used in comparisons.

Mateo es el mejor de la clase.

*Mateo is the best in the class.*

Eres el chico más simpático del mundo.

*You are the nicest guy in the world.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ el mejor en la clase

✗ el más simpático en el mundo

- *De* is used after *ser* to express desired or suggested activity.

Es de desear que terminemos temprano.

*It is to be desired that we finish early.*

Ese grupo es de temer.

*That group is to be feared.*

Lo que dice es de creer.

*What he says should be believed.*

- *De* can be used to express "if" before a conditional statement.

De no haber visto a tu hermana, me habría olvidado de llamarte.

*If I hadn't seen your sister, I would have forgotten to call you.*

- *De* is used after a conjugated form of *acabar* to indicate action that has just been completed (see pages 119–120).

Acabo de comer.

*I have just eaten./I just ate.*

Acaban de hacer el examen.

*They have just taken the test./ They just took the test.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ acabo de comido

✗ acaban de hecho el examen

- *De* is used after a conjugated form of *haber* to indicate an obligation.

He de hacerlo por mi familia.  
La carta ha de ser firmada.

*I must do it for my family.*  
*The letter has to be signed.*

- When *de* is used after certain verbs, it is followed by another verb in the infinitive form.

acordarse de    *remember to*  
cesar de        *stop (doing)*  
dejar de        *stop (doing)*  
ocuparse de    *deal with*

parar de        *stop (doing)*  
tener ganas de *want to*  
terminar de    *finish (doing)*  
tratar de        *try to*

Quiere dejar de fumar.  
Ella no para de hablar.  
Tengo ganas de conocerlo.  
Trata de comprenderla.

*He wants to stop smoking.*  
*She doesn't stop talking.*  
*I want to meet him.*  
*Try to understand her.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not omit the preposition *de*, even though “to” is part of the English infinitive.

- ✗ *Quiere dejar fumar.*  
✗ *Trata comprenderla.*

Do not use a gerund construction, as you would in English.

- ✗ *Quiere dejar fumando.*

- *De* is used after certain verbs and is followed by a noun or pronoun.

abusar de        *abuse, rape*  
cambiar de      *change*  
carecer de      *lack*  
constar de      *consist of*  
cuidar de        *be careful of*  
depender de    *depend on*  
despedirse (i, i) *say good-bye*  
de                *to*

disfrutar de    *enjoy*  
enamorarse de *fall in love with*  
gozar de        *enjoy*  
ocuparse de    *deal with*  
preocuparse de *worry about*  
quejarse de     *complain about*  
servir (i, i) de *serve as*  
tratarse de      *be about*

La familia depende del hijo mayor.

*The family depends on the oldest son.*

Vamos a despedirnos de Carmen.

*We're going to say good-bye to Carmen.*

María se enamoró de Pedro.  
El libro se trata de una familia  
pobre.

*María fell in love with Pedro.  
The book is about a poor family.*

- *De* is the first word in a number of set expressions.

de buena gana/de mala gana	<i>gladly/unwillingly</i>
de cena/de almuerzo	<i>for dinner/for lunch</i>
de día/de noche	<i>during the day/at night</i>
de la misma manera	<i>in the same way</i>
de nada, no hay de qué	<i>you're welcome</i>
de ninguna manera	<i>in no way</i>
de nuevo	<i>again</i>
de pronto	<i>suddenly</i>
de repente	<i>suddenly</i>
de todo corazón	<i>sincerely</i>
de verdad	<i>really, truly</i>

¿Qué hay de cena?

*What's for dinner?*

Trabaja de día y estudia de noche.

*She works during the day and  
studies at night.*

Por favor, toca la canción de nuevo.

*Please play the song again.*

Es un amigo de verdad.

*He's truly a good friend.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not try to translate these expressions that use the Spanish *de* word for word. Learn the entire expression as a unit.

✗ *a noche*

✗ *en ninguna manera*

✗ *por cena*

### *en*

The preposition *en* has specific uses and is sometimes required in set phrases.

- *En* corresponds to the English “in,” “on,” and “at” to indicate place.

¿Qué tienes en la mano?

*What do you have in your hand?*

El gato está en el techo.

*The cat is on the roof.*

Mi esposo está en el aeropuerto.

*My husband is at the airport.*

Vivimos en el tercer piso.

*We live on the third floor.*

The definite article is omitted after *en* in several expressions.

Estoy en casa.	<i>I'm at home.</i>
Los niños están en clase.	<i>The children are in class.</i>

- *En* indicates occurrence within a certain period of time.

Vamos a la playa en el verano.	<i>We go to the beach in summer.</i>
Su cumpleaños es en julio.	<i>Her birthday is in July.</i>
Fueron a España en 2002.	<i>They went to Spain in 2002.</i>
Se reúnen en la mañana.	<i>They meet in the morning.</i>
Descanso en la tarde.	<i>I rest in the afternoon.</i>
Sale en la noche.	<i>He goes out at night.</i>
No lo he visto en todo el día.	<i>I haven't seen him all day.</i>
Hay siete días en una semana.	<i>There are seven days in a week.</i>

*En* is not used with days of the week (see page 232).

Te veo el miércoles.	<i>I'll see you on Wednesday.</i>
Nos reunimos los viernes.	<i>We meet on Fridays.</i>

AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ en miércoles      ✗ en los viernes

*En* is not used with specific times of the morning, afternoon, evening, or night (see page 48).

Nos reunimos en la mañana.	<i>We meet in the morning.</i>
Nos reunimos a las 10 de la mañana.	<i>We meet at 10 o'clock in the morning.</i>
Te veo en la tarde.	<i>I'll see you in the afternoon.</i>
Te veo a las cuatro de la tarde.	<i>I'll see you at 4 o'clock in the afternoon.</i>

AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ a las 10 en la mañana      ✗ a las cuatro en la tarde

- *En* indicates the length of time spent on an activity.

Pintó la casa en tres días.	<i>He painted the house in three days.</i>
Completamos el curso en dos semanas.	<i>We finished the course in two weeks.</i>

- *En* indicates how someone is dressed.

Ella llegó en pantalones.	<i>She arrived in pants.</i>
Vino a la fiesta en disfraz.	<i>He came to the party in a costume.</i>

- *En* indicates certain methods of transportation.

Fui en tren.	<i>I went on the train.</i>
Deberían ir en taxi.	<i>You all should take a taxi.</i>
¿Van Uds. en coche?	<i>Are you going by car?</i>
Hay que ir en avión.	<i>You have to go by plane.</i>
Quiero ir en bicicleta.	<i>I want to go on a bicycle.</i>
Van a Australia en barco.	<i>They're going to Australia by ship.</i>

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

- ✗ *Voy por tren.*
- ✗ *Vamos por coche.*

- *De... en...* indicates a repetitive activity, translated as “from ... to ...” in English.

Los chicos fueron de casa en casa vendiendo revistas.	<i>The children went from door to door selling magazines.</i>
----------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

- ✗ *Los chicos fueron de puerta a puerta.*

- When used after *el primero* and *el último* to indicate an activity performed by someone, *en* is followed by a verb in the infinitive form.

Fui el primero en levantar la mano.	<i>I was the first to raise my hand.</i>
Fue la última en salir.	<i>She was the last to leave.</i>

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Do not try to translate English prepositions for these functions.

- ✗ *Fui el primero a levantar la mano.*
- ✗ *Fue la última a salir.*

- *En* is used in certain negative expressions.

En mi vida he visto tanta gente.	<i>I've never seen so many people in all my life.</i>
----------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------

—¿Me vas a dejar ir?

“Are you going to let me go?”

—En absoluto.

“No way!”

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not add *no* to *en mi vida*.

✗ En mi vida no he visto \_\_\_\_.

Do not use *en absoluto* if you mean “yes.” Do not confuse *en absoluto*, which means “absolutely not,” with *absolutamente*, which means “yes, indeed.”

✗ Sí, en absoluto.

■ *En* is used in certain set expressions.

en balde	<i>in vain</i>	en llamas	<i>in flames</i>
en broma	<i>as a joke</i>	en lugar de	<i>instead of</i>
en casa	<i>at home</i>	en mi opinión	<i>in my opinion</i>
en construcción	<i>under construction</i>	en obras	<i>under construction</i>
en contra de	<i>opposed to</i>	en punto	<i>on the dot</i>
en cuanto a	<i>as for</i>	en seguida	<i>right away</i>
en cuanto	<i>as soon as</i>	en suma	<i>in short</i>
en efectivo	<i>in cash</i>	en venta	<i>on sale</i>
en este momento	<i>at the moment</i>	en vez de	<i>instead of</i>
en flor	<i>in bloom</i>	no en balde	<i>no wonder</i>

Seguro que lo dijo en broma.

*Surely he said it as a joke.*

En cuanto a mí, estoy en contra de la idea.

*As for me, I'm against the idea.*

El puente está en obras.

*The bridge is under construction.*

En este momento estoy ocupada.

*I'm busy at the moment.*

■ *En* is used after certain verbs.

coincidir en	<i>be similar to</i>	fijarse en	<i>take notice of</i>
confiar en	<i>trust</i>	insistir en	<i>emphasize</i>
consentir en	<i>consent to</i>	meterse en	<i>meddle with</i>
convenir en	<i>agree on</i>	pensar en	<i>think about</i>
convertir en	<i>become, turn into</i>	quedar en	<i>agree to</i>
dudar en	<i>hesitate to</i>	tardar (una	<i>take (an hour)</i>
empeñarse en	<i>be determined to</i>	hora) en	<i>to</i>
entrar en	<i>enter</i>		

Coinciden en sus ideas.  
 No dudes en llamarme.  
 Entramos en la casa a las ocho.  
 Insistió en la importancia de  
 ahorrar dinero.  
 Pienso en ti todo el día.  
 Quedamos en comer juntos.

*They have the same ideas.*  
*Don't hesitate to call me.*  
*We entered the house at 8 o'clock.*  
*She stressed the importance of*  
*saving money.*  
*I think about you all day.*  
*We agreed to eat together.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not try to translate English prepositions. Learn these expressions as units.

- ✗ Entramos la casa.
- ✗ Consiente a ir.
- ✗ Tarda una hora a llegar.

### **para**

The preposition *para* has specific uses and is sometimes required in set phrases.

- *Para* can indicate purpose.
- *Para* can be followed by a noun to indicate a specific purpose.
 

Esta es ropa para niños.	<i>This is children's clothing.</i>
Ella preparó comida para todos.	<i>She fixed food for everybody.</i>
Estos asientos son reservados para un grupo.	<i>These seats are reserved for a group.</i>
Tengo que estudiar para un examen.	<i>I have to study for an exam.</i>
- *Para* can be followed by a verb in the infinitive form to indicate purpose.
 

Vamos a casa para descansar.	<i>Let's go home to rest.</i>
Jorge fue al mercado para comprar uvas.	<i>Jorge went to the market to buy grapes.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Rather than translate *para* as “to” or “for,” think of its function as an indicator of purpose.

- ✗ Tengo que estudiar por un examen.
- ✗ Vamos a casa por descansar.

- *Para* can be followed by *que* + a verb in the subjunctive to indicate the purpose of the action of the first verb. The subject of the second clause must be different from the subject of the first clause.

Vamos a casa para que los niños  
descansen.

*Let's go home so the children can  
rest.*

Jorge fue al parque con los niños  
para que su esposa pudiera  
descansar.

*Jorge went to the park with the  
children so that his wife could  
rest.*

- *Para* can indicate destination.

Salieron para la estación.

*They left for the station.*

Voy para tu casa esta tarde.

*I'm coming to your house this  
afternoon.*

Estos chocolates son para ti.

*These chocolates are for you.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Rather than translate *para* as “to,” “toward,” or “for,” think of its function as an indicator of destination.

✗ Salieron por la estación.

✗ Voy por tu casa.

✗ Estos chocolates son por ti.

- *Para* can indicate future time.

Termínalo para el 15 de septiembre.

*Finish it by September 15.*

Tenemos que escribir el ensayo  
para el lunes.

*We have to write the essay for  
Monday.*

No dejes para mañana lo que  
puedes hacer hoy.

*Don't put off until tomorrow  
what you can do today.*

Faltan tres semanas para el receso  
de verano.

*There are three more weeks  
until summer break.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Rather than translate *para* as “for,” “by,” or “until,” think of its function as an indicator of future time.

✗ Tenemos que escribir el ensayo por lunes.

■ *Para* is used to indicate a characteristic, ability, or opinion that distinguishes one person, group, or thing from others.

Ella es muy joven para manejar un coche. *She is too young to drive a car.*

Este problema es muy difícil para mí. *This problem is very difficult for me.*

■ *Para* is used to compare someone or something with others of its type.

Para un chico de cuatro años, es muy alto. *For a four-year-old boy, he is very tall.*

Para ser una chica tan joven, es muy madura. *For such a young girl, she's very mature.*

Para un extranjero, hablas español muy bien. *For a foreigner, you speak Spanish very well.*

Para ser recién llegado a este país, ese niño se ha adaptado muy bien. *For someone who has just arrived in this country, that child has adapted very well.*

■ *Para* is used to indicate someone's opinion.

Para ella, él es rey del mundo. *She thinks he's the best man on earth.*

Para mí, es un ladrón y debemos despedirlo. *In my opinion, he's a thief and we should fire him.*

■ *Para* is used in certain set expressions.

estar para	<i>be about to (do)</i>
leer para sí	<i>read silently</i>
nacer para	<i>be born to (do)</i>
no ser para tanto	<i>not be such a big deal</i>

Estamos para salir.	<i>We're about to leave.</i>
El niño tiene que aprender a leer para sí.	<i>The boy has to learn to read silently.</i>
Nació para ser cantante.	<i>She was born to be a singer.</i>
No te preocupes. No es para tanto.	<i>Don't worry. It's not such a big deal.</i>

para serte sincero	<i>to tell you the truth</i>
para servirle	<i>at your service</i>
para colmo	<i>to top it all off</i>
para mi gran sorpresa	<i>to my surprise</i>
para siempre	<i>forever</i>
para su desgracia	<i>unfortunately for him/her</i>

Estoy resfriada, tengo dolor  
de cabeza y para colmo, tengo  
que estar en una reunión  
a las ocho de la mañana.

Para su gran sorpresa,  
le ascendieron de puesto.

Te amaré para siempre.

Mi hermano, para su desgracia,  
tuvo que trabajar diez años  
en ese lugar.

*I have a cold, my head aches,  
and to top it all off, I have  
to be at a meeting at 8 A.M.*

*To his great surprise, they  
promoted him.*

*I'll love you forever.*

*My brother, unfortunately for  
him, had to work in that  
place for 10 years.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Rather than translate word for word, think of set expressions as complete units.

✗ a mi sorpresa

✗ por colmo

✗ por su desgracia

para que te enteres /	<i>for your information /</i>
para que lo sepas	<i>just so you know</i>
para variar	<i>for a change</i>

—Cenicienta, eres muy poca cosa.

Nadie se casará contigo.

—Pues, para que te enteres,  
el príncipe me propuso  
matrimonio anoche.

Esteban no vino a clase hoy,  
¡para variar!

*“Cinderella, you’re a nobody.*

*No one will marry you.”*

*“Well, for your information,  
the prince proposed to me  
last night.”*

*Esteban didn’t come to class  
today, for a change!*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

These expressions are used sarcastically; do not use them if you want to express a sincere feeling.

### *por*

The preposition *por* has specific uses and is sometimes required in set phrases.

■ *Por* can indicate the agent or means of the action of the verb.

La novela fue escrito por su  
abuela.

*The novel was written by his  
grandmother.*

Anoche hablamos por teléfono.  
Le mandé el paquete por correo  
aéreo.

*We talked on the phone last night.  
I sent him the package via air  
mail.*

- *Por* can indicate a route or vague location.

Caminaron por el parque.  
Anda por el jardín, viendo las  
flores.  
Está por aquí.

*They walked through the park.  
He's walking around the garden,  
looking at the flowers.  
It's near here.*

—¿Dónde estabas?  
—Por ahí.

*"Where were you?"  
"Not too far away."*

- *Por* can indicate time, as an alternative to *en*.

Tenemos clases por la mañana,  
descansamos por la tarde y  
estudiamos por la noche.

*We have classes in the morning,  
we rest in the afternoon, and  
we study at night.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

When an actual time is expressed, use the pattern *a las diez de la mañana*, *a las cuatro de la tarde*.

✗ *a las diez por la mañana*  
✗ *a las cuatro por la tarde*

- *Por* can indicate the duration of planned future action.

Van a Guatemala por dos años.  
Voy a estudiar por cinco horas.

*They're going to Guatemala for  
two years.  
I'm going to study for five hours.*

When indicating the duration of past action, *por* is not necessary.

Estuvimos dos años en  
Guatemala.  
Estudié cinco horas anoche.

*We were in Guatemala for two  
years.  
I studied (for) five hours last night.*

When the duration of planned future action is indicated after the verb *estar*, *por* is not necessary.

Vamos a estar dos años en  
Guatemala.  
Voy a estar cinco horas en la  
biblioteca.  
Vamos a estar en Guatemala  
dos años.

*We're going to be in Guatemala  
for two years.  
I'm going to be at the library  
for five hours.  
We're going to be in Guatemala  
for two years.*

*Por* can indicate an exchange of one thing for another.

Quiero cambiar esta camisa por la otra.	<i>I want to exchange this shirt for the other one.</i>
Pagó \$20 por el libro.	<i>He paid \$20 for the book.</i>

*Por* can indicate a substitution of one thing for another.

Ella va a asistir al congreso por su jefe.	<i>She's going to attend the conference in place of her boss.</i>
Ana trabaja por mí mañana.	<i>Ana is substituting for me tomorrow.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not confuse “work in my place” (*por mí*) with “work for me” (*para mí*).

- *Por* can indicate the motive, reason, or cause of an action.

Lo hizo por amor.	<i>She did it out of love.</i>
Vendió su coche por necesidad.	<i>He sold his car out of necessity.</i>
—¿Por qué te vas?	<i>“Why are you leaving?”</i>
—Porque no me gusta el trabajo.	<i>“Because I don’t like the job.”</i>
Ella se perdió por mi culpa.	<i>She got lost because of me.</i>
Él se mudó a otro país por ella.	<i>He moved to another country for her.</i>
Por ser de Canadá, hablaba inglés con fluidez.	<i>Since he was from Canada, he spoke English fluently.</i>

- There is a distinction between *por ser*, which explains a reason for something being as it is, and *para ser*, which compares something or someone with others of its type (see page 278).

Por ser de Londres, habla inglés con fluidez.	<i>Since he’s from London, he speaks English fluently.</i>
Para ser angloparlante, habla español muy bien.	<i>For a native speaker of English, he speaks Spanish very well.</i>

- *Por* indicates a more dramatic motive than *para*.

Su esposo compró la casa por ella.	<i>Her husband bought the house for her (because of her needs).</i>
Su esposo compró la casa para ella.	<i>Her husband bought the house for her (as a gift).</i>

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not confuse *¿por qué?* “for what reason?” with *¿para qué?* “for what purpose?”

- *Por* can indicate the benefactor of an action.

¡Brindemos por la salud de nuestro gran amigo!	<i>Let's drink to the health of our great friend!</i>
Voy a votar por la maestra, porque conoce los problemas de las escuelas.	<i>I'm going to vote for the teacher, because she knows the problems with the schools.</i>

- *Por* can be used after *ir* to mean “to go get.”

Fueron al centro por pan.	<i>They went to town for bread.</i>
Voy a la biblioteca por un libro.	<i>I'm going to the library to get a book.</i>

- *Por* can indicate action yet to be done.

Tengo tres trabajos por terminar.	<i>I still have three papers to finish.</i>
Tiene dos coches por reparar.	<i>He still has two cars to repair.</i>

- *Por* can indicate a lack of purpose.

Este político habla por hablar.	<i>This politician talks just for the sake of talking.</i>
---------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

- *Por* can mean “per.”

Pagamos casi dos dólares por galón.	<i>We paid almost two dollars per gallon.</i>
Ahorró el 10 por ciento de su sueldo.	<i>She saved 10 percent of her salary.</i>

- *Por* can mean “times” in multiplication.

—¿Cuánto es tres por tres?	<i>“How much is three times three?”</i>
—Tres por tres es nueve.	<i>“Three times three is nine.”</i>

- *Por* is used in certain set expressions.

por adelantado	<i>in advance</i>	por escrito	<i>in writing</i>
por ahora	<i>for the time being</i>	por favor	<i>please</i>
por cierto	<i>by the way</i>	por la fuerza	<i>by force</i>
por desgracia	<i>unfortunately</i>	por lo menos	<i>at least</i>
por Dios	<i>For heaven's sake!</i>	por medio de	<i>by means of</i>
por ejemplo	<i>for example</i>	por parejas	<i>in pairs</i>
por el presente	<i>for the time being</i>	por si acaso	<i>just in case</i>
por encima de	<i>over the top of</i>	por supuesto	<i>naturally</i>

Por ahora, me quedo en casa.

*For the time being, I'm staying home.*

Por favor, mándame tus ideas por escrito.

*Please send me your ideas in writing.*

Dejaré mi número de teléfono, por si acaso necesitas algo.

*I'll leave my telephone number just in case you need anything.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ para desgracia

✗ para si acaso

✗ para supuesto

### **contra**

The preposition *contra* has several different uses.

- *Contra* is used to indicate odds.

Las posibilidades son una contra un millón que ganes la lotería.

*Your chances of winning the lottery are one in a million.*

- *Contra* is used to indicate a remedy.

El médico me dio un medicamento contra los dolores.

*The doctor gave me some medicine for the pain.*

- *Contra* is used to indicate “against” a thing or a person.

Vamos a poner la mesa contra la pared.

*We're going to put the table against the wall.*

Ramón boxea contra el campeón esta noche.

*Ramón is boxing against the champion tonight.*

- The phrase *en contra de* is used to indicate “not in favor of” or “against” an idea.

Se manifestaron en contra de la guerra.

*They demonstrated against the war.*

El estudiante se expresó en contra de las ideas del profesor.

*The student spoke against the professor's ideas.*

### **desde**

The preposition *desde* has several different uses.

- *Desde* is used to indicate time (see page 257).

El semestre es desde el 12 de enero hasta el 5 de mayo.

*The semester is from January 12 to May 5.*

—¿Desde cuándo estás aquí?

*“How long have you been here?”  
 (“Since when are you here?”)*

—Estoy aquí desde hace cuatro semanas.

*“I've been here for four weeks.”*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not translate the English expressions word for word.

✗ ¿Cuánto tiempo has estado aquí?

✗ He estado aquí por cuatro semanas.

- *Desde* is used to indicate a starting point leading to a destination.

Viajó desde Europa a California  
en un día.

*She traveled from Europe to  
California in one day.*

Me llamó desde su hotel en  
San José.

*He called me from his hotel  
in San José.*

### *ante*

The preposition *ante* has several uses.

- *Ante* indicates “in the presence of” with a certain solemnity not implied by *delante de* (see page 234).

Tuvo que presentar su versión  
de los hechos ante el juez.

*She had to present her version  
of the story before the judge.*

- *Ante* is used in a figurative sense to indicate reason or motive.

Está emocionado ante la  
posibilidad de estudiar en el  
extranjero.

*He's excited about the possibility  
of studying abroad.*

Ante los problemas que tenía en  
casa, tuvo que dejar de trabajar.

*Because of the problems she had  
at home, she had to stop  
working.*

- *Ante* is used in the expression *ante todo* to indicate “above all,” “most importantly.”

Ante todo, quiero graduarme  
de enfermera.

*Most importantly, I want to get  
my nursing degree.*

Ante todo cuida tu salud.

*Above all, take care of your  
health.*

### *hacia*

The preposition *hacia* is used to indicate “toward.”

Ustedes van hacia el norte.

*You all are headed north.*

Sintió mucho cariño hacia su  
padre.

*She felt a lot of affection for her  
father.*

**sobre**

The preposition *sobre* has several uses.

- *Sobre* is an alternative for *en*, *encima de*, and *por encima de* to indicate place.

El libro está sobre la mesa.	<i>The book is on the table.</i>
Puse las llaves sobre el libro.	<i>I put the keys on top of the book.</i>

- *Sobre* can indicate “above” or “higher than.”

La ciudad está a 5.000 metros sobre el nivel del mar.	<i>The city is 5,000 meters above sea level.</i>
-------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

- *Sobre* can indicate a topic.

Tengo un libro sobre las flores silvestres de esta región.	<i>I have a book about the wildflowers in this area.</i>
------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------

- *Sobre* can indicate approximation.

Tenemos que leer sobre cien páginas.	<i>We have to read about a hundred pages.</i>
--------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------

- *Sobre* can indicate the addition of more of the same.

Sobre los problemas que ya tiene, ahora viene esto.	<i>On top of the problems she already has, now this.</i>
En ese pueblo, ocurre tragedia sobre tragedia.	<i>In that town, one tragedy happens on top of another.</i>

- *Sobre* can indicate close observation.

El jefe está siempre sobre sus empleados.	<i>The boss is always watching what his employees do.</i>
-------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------

**bajo**

The preposition *bajo* has several uses.

- *Bajo* can indicate “below” or “lower than.”

Hace muchísimo frío. Está en cinco grados bajo cero.	<i>It's freezing. It's five degrees below zero.</i>
------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------

- *Bajo* can indicate “under the power/influence/protection of.”

La gente sufrió muchas desgracias bajo su gobierno.	<i>The people suffered great misfortune during (under the power of) his government.</i>
No debió manejar cuando estaba bajo la influencia de los medicamentos.	<i>He shouldn't have been driving under the influence of the medicine.</i>
Por fin estamos bajo techo.	<i>We're finally indoors (under the protection of the roof).</i>

- *Bajo* can indicate presence in certain natural settings.

Caminamos bajo la lluvia.	<i>We walked in the rain.</i>
Se sentaron bajo la sombra de un árbol.	<i>They sat in the shade of a tree.</i>
Se besaron bajo las estrellas.	<i>They kissed under the stars.</i>
Se puede ver bajo la luz de la luna.	<i>You can see by the light of the moon.</i>

- *Bajo* is used in certain expressions.

bajo cuerda	<i>under the counter/table</i>
bajo juramento	<i>under oath</i>
bajo llave	<i>under lock and key</i>
bajo mano	<i>on the quiet</i>
bajo techo	<i>under cover</i>

Hicieron algunos pagos bajo cuerda.	<i>They made several under-the-counter payments.</i>
Las joyas están bajo llave.	<i>The jewelry is under lock and key.</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Caminamos en la lluvia.  
✗ Se puede ver en la luz de la luna.

## *tras*

The preposition *tras* has several uses.

- *Tras* can indicate “following.”

Tras los acontecimientos de ayer, ella toma más precauciones.	<i>Following yesterday's events, she is being more careful.</i>
---------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------

- *Tras* can indicate pursuit.

Todos los chicos andan tras ella.	<i>All the boys are after her.</i>
-----------------------------------	------------------------------------

- *Tras* can indicate tedious repetition.

Día tras día, trabajaba doce horas y volvía a casa en la noche.	<i>Day after day, he worked 12 hours and came back home at night.</i>
-----------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------

**entre**

The preposition *entre* has several uses.

- *Entre* indicates both “between” and “among.”

En la clase, me siento entre  
Juan y Miguel.

*In the class I sit between Juan  
and Miguel.*

Aquí estoy, entre gente de todas  
partes del mundo.

*Here I am among people from  
all over the world.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the preposition *de* after *entre*.

✗ Me siento entre de Juan y Miguel.

✗ Estoy entre de gente de todas partes.

- Unlike most prepositions, *entre* is followed by the subject pronouns *yo* and *tú*, rather than *mí* and *ti*.

Esto es entre tú y yo.

*This is between you and me.*

¿Juan se sentó entre tu hermana  
y tú?

*Did Juan sit between you and  
your sister?*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ Esto es entre ti y mí.

✗ Juan se sentó entre ti y ella.

- *Entre* is used in division to mean “divided by.”

Dieciséis entre dos son ocho.

*Sixteen divided by two is eight.*

**según**

The preposition *según* generally corresponds to English “according to.”

Hicimos el trabajo según nos  
indicó.

*We did the job according to his  
instructions.*

Según el periódico, hoy va a  
llover.

*According to the paper, it's going  
to rain today.*

Unlike most prepositions, *según* is followed by the subject pronouns *yo* and *tú*, rather than *mí* and *ti*.

Según tú, tenemos un examen  
mañana, pero yo no estoy tan  
seguro de eso.

*According to you, we have an  
exam tomorrow, but I'm not  
so sure about that.*

## salvo and excepto

The prepositions *salvo* and *excepto* indicate exception.

Todos los chicos, salvo mi hermano, estaban contentos.

*All the boys except my brother were happy.*

Unlike most prepositions, *salvo* and *excepto* are followed by the subject pronouns *yo* and *tú*, rather than *mí* and *ti*.

Toda la familia, excepto yo, fue al campo.

*The whole family went to the country, except for me.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ según mí
- ✗ según ti
- ✗ salvo mí
- ✗ salvo ti

## Exercises

**A** Circle the correct pronouns to complete the following sentences.

- Este asunto es entre **ti y mí** | **él y mí** | **tú y yo** | **ti y él**.
- Voy al mercado con **-tigo** | **-sigo** | **nosotros** | **ti**.
- Ella no conoce **al** | **la** | **a la** | **el** Sra. Rodríguez.
- Este regalo es para **la** | **lo** | **ella** | **yo** | **tú**.
- Mi papá lo hizo por **mí y ti** | **mí y ella** | **ella y él** | **ella y por él**.

**B** Express the following English questions in Spanish.

- What are you thinking about? \_\_\_\_\_
- Who is he looking for? \_\_\_\_\_
- Who is she going with? \_\_\_\_\_
- What are we waiting for? \_\_\_\_\_
- What are you looking at? \_\_\_\_\_
- Who is the letter from? \_\_\_\_\_
- How long have you been here? \_\_\_\_\_
- How often do you visit your grandmother? \_\_\_\_\_

**C** Circle the appropriate prepositions to complete the following sentences.

1. La casa huele **como** | **de** | **a** pan.
2. Fuimos a la escuela **en** | **por** | **a** pie.
3. Carmen se va a casar **con** | **a** | **contra** Pablo.
4. Él está soñando **de** | **a** | **con** | **en** ella.
5. Él está pensando **de** | **a** | **con** | **en** ella.
6. Ella es la mejor **de** | **entre** | **en** | **por** la clase.
7. Ella se enamoró **de** | **con** | **en** | **para** él.
8. Nos vemos a las 10 **en** | **de** | **por** | **para** la mañana.
9. Nos vemos **de** | **para** | **por** | **después** la mañana.
10. Quedamos **a** | **en** | **por** | **con** encontrarnos aquí a las nueve.

**D** Fill in the blanks with *por* or *para*.

1. Julio fue al mercado \_\_\_\_\_ leche.
2. Esteban compró una casa \_\_\_\_\_ su familia.
3. Pasamos \_\_\_\_\_ el parque en camino a la biblioteca.
4. Estos regalos son \_\_\_\_\_ mis primos.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ ser extranjera en los Estados Unidos, habla inglés muy bien.
6. Esa pregunta es muy fácil \_\_\_\_\_ mí.
7. Estaba \_\_\_\_\_ abrir la botella.
8. Ya he leído este libro. Voy a cambiarlo \_\_\_\_\_ otro.
9. Pagó diez dólares \_\_\_\_\_ la camiseta.

# CONJUNCTIONS

y/e	<i>and</i>
o/u	<i>or</i>
pues	<i>for</i>
pero	<i>but</i>

## CORRELATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

o... o...	<i>either ... or ...</i>
ni... ni...	<i>neither ... nor ...</i>
apenas... cuando...	<i>hardly ... when ...</i>

## OTHER CONJUNCTIONS

aunque	<i>although, even if</i>
de modo que	<i>so</i>
mientras que	<i>while (in a comparison)</i>
puesto que	<i>since (because)</i>

---

Review the conjunctions in the chart above.

The basic conjunctions are similar to, but not always equivalent to, their English counterparts.

## y

The conjunction *y*, like the English “and,” is used to connect similar parts of speech.

Roberto y Ricardo estudian.	<i>Roberto and Ricardo are studying.</i>
Ana estudia y trabaja.	<i>Ana studies and works.</i>
Vamos a estudiar y trabajar.	<i>We're going to study and work.</i>
Ana es inteligente y trabajadora.	<i>Ana is smart and hardworking.</i>

When two or more adverbs of manner are connected by *y*, only the last one mentioned includes the suffix *-mente* (see page 244).

Roberto lee lenta y cuidadosamente.	<i>Roberto reads slowly and carefully.</i>
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ *lentamente y cuidadosamente*

When the word following *y* begins with the letter *i*- or the letters *hi*-, *y* changes to *e*.

Voy con Ana *e* Isabel.

*I'm going with Ana and Isabel.*

Estudio español *e* historia.

*I study Spanish and History.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ *España y Inglaterra*

✗ *islamismo y hinduismo*

*Y* expressed as a question is used to ask for a response to an understood or assumed request for information.

SITUATION A young woman returns home after an important job interview.

HER FATHER

—¿Y?

“So?”

THE YOUNG WOMAN

—¡Me contrataron!

“They hired me!”

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not assume that *y* is always translated as “and.”

The English correlative conjunctions “both ... and ...” can be expressed with *tanto... como...* in Spanish.

Tanto la madre como el hijo  
estudian español.

*Both the mother and the son are  
studying Spanish.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not assume that “and” is always translated as *y*.

## **O**

The conjunction *o*, like the English “or,” is used to indicate an option of one thing rather than another.

—¿Quieres helado de chocolate  
o de vainilla?

*“Do you want chocolate or  
vanilla ice cream?”*

—No sé si quiero helado o no.

*"I don't know whether I want ice cream or not."*

The correlative conjunctions *o... o...* are used to present an ultimatum or to offer a choice.

¡O te portas bien, o te marchas!

*Either you behave yourself, or you leave!*

La reunión tiene que ser esta semana, o el martes o el miércoles.

*The meeting has to be this week, on either Tuesday or Wednesday.*

Usually only one *o* is used to translate "either ... or ..." in other contexts.

No sé qué voy a hacer. Iré al concierto o al cine.

*I don't know what I'm going to do. I'll go to either the concert or the movies.*

Ella no está conmigo. Está con su hermano o con su novio.

*She isn't with me. She's with either her brother or her boyfriend.*

When the word following *o* begins with the letter *o-* or the letters *ho-*, *o* changes to *u*.

Puedes usar esa palabra u otra.

*You can use that word or another one.*

No sé si la cita es mañana u hoy.

*I don't know if the appointment is tomorrow or today.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ ayer o hoy

✗ esta o otra

✗ Francia o Holanda

When the conjunction *o* is used between numbers, it is written with an accent mark.

Seremos unos 20 ó 30 personas.

*We'll be about 20 or 30 people./ There'll be about 20 or 30 of us.*

The expression *o sea* is used to signal a clarification, like the English "in other words" or "I mean."

No fue como tú imaginas, o sea, no fue tan dramático.

*It wasn't what you think, I mean, it wasn't that dramatic.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not assume that *o* is always translated as "or."

**ni, ni siquiera, and ni... ni...**

The conjunction *ni* has several uses.

*Ni* or *ni siquiera* can express “not even.”

Ni (siquiera) su esposa lo sabe.	<i>Not even his wife knows.</i>
No ha visto ni (siquiera) a su mejor amigo.	<i>He hasn't seen even his best friend.</i>

The correlative conjunctions *ni... ni...* are used to express the lack of an alternative.

No viene ni Carlos ni Ricardo.	<i>Neither Carlos nor Ricardo is coming.</i>
Esos chicos ni trabajan ni estudian.	<i>Those boys don't work or study.</i>

**AVOID THE Blunder**

Do not leave out the first *ni*.

**X** No viene Carlos ni Ricardo.

**pues**

The conjunction *pues* indicates a reason for the previous statement.

Ernesto no comprende la lección, pues no estuvo en clase ayer.	<i>Ernesto doesn't understand the lesson because he wasn't in class yesterday.</i>
Voy a invitar a Paco, pues es mi mejor amigo.	<i>I'm going to invite Paco, since he's my best friend.</i>

**AVOID THE Blunder**

The word *pues* has other meanings and can also be used as an adverb. Do not assume that it always has the same translation into English.

**pero**

The conjunction *pero*, like the English “but,” indicates a contrast with the previous statement.

La lección parece difícil, pero no lo es.	<i>The lesson looks hard, but it isn't.</i>
Tino no va a la fiesta, pero yo sí.	<i>Tino isn't going to the party, but I am.</i>

**no... sino (que)...**

The expressions *no... sino...* and *no... sino que...* are used to correct a previous statement.

*Sino* is used to correct any sentence element, with the exception of a conjugated verb.

No canta Julio, sino Enrique.	<i>Julio isn't singing; Enrique is.</i>
No quieren bailar, sino cantar.	<i>They don't want to dance; they want to sing.</i>
No vamos al cine, sino al teatro.	<i>We're not going to the movies; we're going to the theater.</i>
No voy con Juan, sino con Mario.	<i>I'm not going with Juan; I'm going with Mario.</i>

**AVOID THE Blunder**

Be sure to repeat any preposition that occurs between *sino* and the correcting item.

✗ No vamos al cine, sino teatro.

✗ No voy con Juan, sino Mario.

*Sino que* is used to correct a previous statement when the conjugated verb is repeated or changed.

No vamos al cine, sino que vamos al teatro.	<i>We're not going to the movies; we're going to the theater.</i>
Ellos no alquilaron la casa, sino que la compraron.	<i>They didn't rent the house; they bought it.</i>

**AVOID THE Blunder**

Do not omit the *que* when there is a conjugated verb in the correction.

✗ No vamos al cine, sino vamos al teatro.

✗ No alquilaron la casa, sino la compraron.

**apenas**

The conjunction *apenas* refers to action that occurs immediately before new action (see page 247).

When *apenas* introduces a past action, it is followed by a verb in the indicative.

Apenas lo vio, corrió a ayudarlo. *As soon as she saw him, she ran to help him.*

When *apenas* introduces an action that has not yet taken place, it is followed by a verb in the subjunctive. It is an alternative to *en cuanto*.

Apenas lo sepa, te llamaré. *As soon as I find out, I'll call you.*  
 Me dijo que apenas lo supiera, *He told me that as soon as he*  
 me llamaría. *found out, he would call me.*

The correlatives *apenas... cuando...* are used to express action that follows immediately.

Apenas empecé a leer cuando *I had just begun to read when*  
 sonó el teléfono. *the phone rang.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not confuse the conjunction *apenas* with the adverb *apenas*, which indicates a less than adequate amount or degree.

## Other Common Conjunctions

There are many other connective words and expressions. Following are some of the most common.

■ The conjunction *aunque* expresses the meaning “although” or “in spite of the fact that.”

When *aunque* introduces information that is new to the hearer, it is followed by a verb in the indicative mood.

Aunque mi hermano no durmió *Even though my brother didn't*  
 bien anoche, está listo para *sleep well last night, he's ready*  
 el examen. *for the test.*  
 Aunque se discutieron ayer, hoy *Even though they argued*  
 están de acuerdo. *yesterday, they are in*  
*agreement today.*

When *aunque* precedes a fact that is already known to the hearer, it is followed by a verb in the subjunctive mood.

—¡Su novio es muy rico! *“Her boyfriend is rich!”*  
 —Aunque su novio tenga mucho *“Even though her boyfriend has*  
 dinero, es muy tacaño. *a lot of money, he's very stingy.”*  
 —No dormí ni una hora anoche. *“I didn't get even an hour's sleep*  
*last night.”*

—Aunque no durmieras anoche, parece estar listo para el examen.

*“Even if you didn’t sleep last night, you seem to be ready for the test.”*

■ *De modo que* indicates a consequence.

Estaba muy alterado, de modo que lo llevaron a su casa para que se tranquilizara.

*He was very upset, so they took him home to calm him down.*

■ *Mientras que* is used in a comparison.

Yo trabajo todo el día, todos los días, mientras que tú te quedas en casa viendo la televisión.

*I work all day every day, while you stay home watching TV.*

■ *Puesto que* introduces a reason.

Tengo que volver a mi país, puesto que se me ha acabado el dinero.

*I have to go back to my country, since I’ve run out of money.*

## Exercise

**A** Fill in the blanks with the appropriate conjunction.

1. Estudio latín \_\_\_\_\_ inglés.
2. No viene Andrés, \_\_\_\_\_ su hermano.
3. Alfredo es inteligente \_\_\_\_\_ Ricardo también.
4. Patricia no es simpática \_\_\_\_\_ su hermana tampoco.
5. ¿Prefieres ir al campo \_\_\_\_\_ quedarte en la ciudad?
6. Tengo que estudiar \_\_\_\_\_ mañana es el examen final.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Adriana \_\_\_\_\_ Paula pasaron el verano en Europa.
8. ¡ \_\_\_\_\_ te callas \_\_\_\_\_ te echo de la clase!
9. No sabe si la fiesta es hoy \_\_\_\_\_ otro día.
10. No quiere mostrarle la foto a nadie, \_\_\_\_\_ a su mejor amigo.

# VOCABULARY

*This page intentionally left blank.*

# WORDS

## Cognates

Cognates are words that have a similar spelling and similar meaning in two languages. English and Spanish share many cognates, which are an enormous help in developing a working vocabulary. Following are a few examples of cognates.

### Nouns

actor	capital	director	menú
alcohol	cereal	error	mineral
ángel	chocolate	favor	mosquito
animal	club	gas	motor
área	color	general	ópera
arquitecto	control	hotel	piano
banana	criminal	humor	profesor
cable	debate	idea	radio

■ Many nouns that end in “-ion” in English end in *-ción*, *-sión*, or *-xión* in Spanish. These nouns are always feminine (see page 31). Following are some examples.

información	televisión
solución	conexión
satisfacción	

Just because a Spanish word is a cognate does not mean that it is always used exactly like it is in English. *La televisión*, for example, refers to TV programming, and *el televisor* is the TV set.

Quiero ver la televisión a las ocho.	<i>I want to watch TV at eight.</i>
Ayer compramos un televisor nuevo.	<i>Yesterday we bought a new TV.</i>

■ A few masculine nouns end in *-ión* and do not have cognates in English.

el avión	<i>the airplane</i>	el guión	<i>the script</i>
el camión	<i>the truck</i>	el sarampión	<i>the measles</i>

■ Many nouns that end in “-ity” in English end in *-dad* in Spanish. These nouns are always feminine (see page 31).

cualidad	honestidad	seguridad
especialidad	posibilidad	sociedad
felicidad	responsabilidad	

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Be careful spelling cognates that contain “qu” in English.

✗ *qualidad*

Add *e-* before English words beginning with *sp-*, *st-*, and *sc-*.

✗ *specialidad*

Be careful not to use a double *s* in *posibilidad*.

✗ *possibilidad*

Note the spelling difference in *responsabilidad*.

✗ *responsibilidad*

■ The names of most academic subjects in English have cognates in Spanish. Many nouns of this type that end in “-y” or “-ology” in English end in *-ía* or *-ología* in Spanish.

anatomía	psicología*
biología	sociología
filosofía	

\*Also spelled *sicología*.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Equivalent usage often differs. In English, “science” is singular, but Spanish *ciencias* is plural. Also, in English, “physics” is plural, but Spanish *física* is singular.

✗ *Estudia ciencia y físicas.*

■ Many noun cognates that end in “-nt” in English end in *-nte* in Spanish.

adolescente	inmigrante	restaurante
delincuente	paciente	sirviente
estudiante	presidente	

- Certain nouns that end in “-ment” in English have cognates ending in *-mento* in Spanish.

argumento	pavimento
documento	suplemento
fragmento	

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Some of these cognates can be very tricky. *Argumento* means “argument” in the sense of “presentation of a case,” but not “a heated discussion.” “Government” is *gobierno*, and “disappointment” is *desilusión*. Also, *medicamento* is “medication.” Check these words in a dictionary before trusting them as cognates.

- Other noun cognates that end in “-ment” in English end in *-miento* in Spanish.

comportamiento	<i>comportment (behavior)</i>
entretenimiento	<i>entertainment</i>
sentimiento	<i>sentiment</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

This group of cognates can also be tricky. *Entrenamiento* means “training” as in sports, while *adiestramiento* means “training” as in learning skills. *Conocimiento* is “knowledge,” and *pimiento* is “pepper.” Check these words in a dictionary before trusting them as cognates.

- Many English words that end in “-ance” or “-ence” have cognates that end in *-ancia* or *-encia* in Spanish. They are always feminine.

abundancia	emergencia	referencia
arrogancia	existencia	repugnancia
correspondencia	presencia	

- Many English words that end in “-ist” have counterparts in Spanish that end in *-ista* for both males and females.

artista*	materialista	racista
feminista	optimista	socialista
lingüista	pesimista	

\**Artista* refers to any creative person, not just a painter. An *artista* can be a *pintor*, *músico*, or *actor*, among other creative professions.

## Verbs

Following is a sample of the many Spanish verbs that have English cognates.

demostrar (ue)	imitar	liberar	practicar
fascinar	iniciar	manipular	servir (i, i)
finalizar	insistir	necesitar	solucionar
ilustrar	inventar	obtener	visitar

## Adjectives

Following is a sample of the many Spanish adjectives that have English cognates.

artístico	envidioso	liberal	quieto
decente	generoso	necesario	reciente
difícil	honesto	obvio	reservado
eficiente	inocente	popular	sincero

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *celoso* if you want to say that you are “envious.” *Envidioso* means “envious” or “jealous” of someone because he or she has what you want. *Celoso* means “jealous” of someone because of another interest he or she has in someone or something else. A person who is *celoso* wants to have control over another person’s feelings.

✗ *Estoy celosa de ella porque ganó el premio.*

## Adverbs

Many adverbs that end in “-ly” in English have cognates that end in *-mente* in Spanish (see pages 244–246). Following are a few examples.

artísticamente	inocentemente	probablemente
eficientemente	naturalmente	rápidamente
especialmente	obviamente	recientemente
generosamente	perfectamente	responsablemente
honestamente	posiblemente	sinceramente

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Even though cognates may convey similar meanings, they are not necessarily used in exactly the same way. For example, *sinceramente* means “sincerely,” but it is not used as the closing of a friendly letter, as is its English counterpart. A better closing in Spanish would be *Afectuosamente* or *Cordialmente*.

## *Falsos amigos*

False cognates, often called *falsos amigos*, are words that look so similar in two languages that we expect them to have the same meaning in both—but they don’t! Because there are so many true cognates in English and Spanish, it is no wonder that these words have been labeled “false friends.” Following are the most common ones.

### Nouns

SPANISH NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING	ENGLISH NOUN	SPANISH MEANING
apología	<i>eulogy</i>	<i>apology</i>	disculpa
arena	<i>sand</i>	<i>arena</i>	estadio
campo	<i>field, countryside</i>	<i>camp</i>	campamento
carpeta	<i>folder</i>	<i>carpet</i>	alfombra
carta	<i>letter, playing card</i>	<i>card</i>	tarjeta
colegio	<i>high school</i>	<i>college</i>	universidad
collar	<i>necklace</i>	<i>collar</i>	cuello (de camisa)
competencia	<i>competition</i>	<i>competence</i>	capacidad
complexión	<i>temperament</i>	<i>complexion</i>	tez
compromiso	<i>commitment</i>	<i>compromise</i>	término medio
concurso	<i>contest</i>	<i>concourse</i>	explanada
confección	<i>handiwork</i>	<i>confection</i>	pastel
conferencia	<i>lecture</i>	<i>conference</i>	congreso, reunión
coraje	<i>anger</i>	<i>courage</i>	valor
costumbre	<i>custom</i>	<i>costume</i>	disfraz
decepción	<i>disappointment</i>	<i>deception</i>	engaño
delito	<i>crime</i>	<i>delight</i>	alegría
desgracia	<i>bad luck</i>	<i>disgrace</i>	vergüenza
dirección	<i>address</i>	<i>direction</i>	rumbo
discusión	<i>argument</i>	<i>discussion</i>	conversación
disgusto	<i>argument</i>	<i>disgust</i>	asco, repugnancia
dormitorio	<i>bedroom</i>	<i>dormitory</i>	residencia de estudiantes

SPANISH NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING	ENGLISH NOUN	SPANISH MEANING
educación	<i>manners, education</i>	<i>education</i>	instrucción formal
éxito	<i>success</i>	<i>exit</i>	salida
fábrica	<i>factory</i>	<i>fabric</i>	tela
falta	<i>lack, error, absence, foul</i>	<i>fault</i>	culpa
idioma	<i>language</i>	<i>idiom</i>	modismo
injuria	<i>injustice, harm</i>	<i>injury</i>	herida, daño
lectura	<i>reading selection</i>	<i>lecture</i>	discurso
librería	<i>bookstore</i>	<i>library</i>	biblioteca
manifestación	<i>protest, demonstration</i>	<i>manifestation</i>	señal, síntoma
parientes	<i>relatives, kinfolk</i>	<i>parents</i>	padres
pena	<i>embarrassment, punishment, sadness</i>	<i>pain</i>	dolor, molestia
recolección	<i>compilation</i>	<i>recollection</i>	recuerdo
sentencia	<i>verdict, sentence</i>	<i>sentence</i>	frase, oración, veredicto
suceso	<i>event</i>	<i>success</i>	éxito
trampa	<i>trick, trap</i>	<i>tramp</i>	vagabundo, mujerzuela
vaso	<i>glass</i>	<i>vase</i>	florero

## Verbs

SPANISH VERB	ENGLISH MEANING	ENGLISH VERB	SPANISH MEANING
abusar	<i>molest</i>	<i>abuse</i>	maltratar
advertir (ie, i)	<i>warn</i>	<i>advertise</i>	anunciar
apuntar	<i>write down</i>	<i>appoint</i>	nombrar
argüir	<i>present a case</i>	<i>argue</i>	discutir
asistir	<i>attend</i>	<i>assist</i>	ayudar
atender (ie)	<i>pay attention to</i>	<i>attend</i>	asistir
avisar	<i>inform</i>	<i>advise</i>	aconsejar
demandar	<i>sue</i>	<i>demand</i>	exigir
discutir	<i>argue</i>	<i>discuss</i>	hablar, conversar
explicar	<i>level</i>	<i>explain</i>	explicar
fabricar	<i>make, craft</i>	<i>fabricate</i>	mentir (ie, i)
ignorar	<i>be unaware of</i>	<i>ignore</i>	no hacer caso
molestar	<i>bother</i>	<i>molest</i>	abusar
pretender	<i>aspire to, try to, court</i>	<i>pretend</i>	fingir

SPANISH VERB	ENGLISH MEANING	ENGLISH VERB	SPANISH MEANING
realizar	<i>achieve, effect</i>	<i>realize</i>	darse cuenta de
recordar (ue)	<i>remember</i>	<i>record</i>	grabar, inscribir
resistir	<i>tolerate</i>	<i>resist</i>	tener fuerzas
restar	<i>subtract</i>	<i>rest</i>	descansar
revisar	<i>review</i>	<i>revise</i>	enmendar
solicitar	<i>apply (submit an application)</i>	<i>solicit</i>	pedir, buscar
soportar	<i>tolerate</i>	<i>support</i>	mantener, apoyar

## Adjectives

SPANISH ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH MEANING	ENGLISH ADJECTIVE	SPANISH MEANING
actual	<i>current</i>	<i>actual</i>	verdadero
bizarro	<i>gallant</i>	<i>bizarre</i>	extraño
bravo	<i>angry</i>	<i>brave</i>	valiente
casual	<i>unexpected</i>	<i>casual</i>	informal
constipado	<i>having a bad cold</i>	<i>constipated</i>	estreñido
conveniente	<i>advantageous</i>	<i>convenient</i>	cómodo, oportuno
corriente	<i>ordinary</i>	<i>current</i>	actual
distinto	<i>different</i>	<i>distinct</i>	visible
egoísta	<i>selfish</i>	<i>egotistical</i>	presumido
embarazada	<i>pregnant</i>	<i>embarrassed</i>	avergonzado
exitoso	<i>successful</i>	<i>exciting</i>	emocionante
fastidioso	<i>annoying</i>	<i>fastidious</i>	detallado
gracioso	<i>funny</i>	<i>gracious</i>	gentil
largo	<i>long</i>	<i>large</i>	grande
ordinario	<i>vulgar</i>	<i>ordinary</i>	común, corriente
particular	<i>private</i>	<i>particular</i>	especial, cierto
real	<i>royal</i>	<i>real</i>	verdadero
sano	<i>healthy</i>	<i>sane</i>	cuerdo, sensato
sensible	<i>sensitive</i>	<i>sensible</i>	sensato, juicioso
simpático	<i>nice</i>	<i>sympathetic</i>	compasivo

## Adverbs

One adverb is a common *falso amigo*.

SPANISH ADVERB	ENGLISH MEANING	ENGLISH ADVERB	SPANISH MEANING
actualmente	<i>currently</i>	<i>actually</i>	realmente

## English Words with More Than One Spanish Meaning

Many words in English have two or more noninterchangeable translations in Spanish. Following are some common examples.

### Nouns

<b>character</b>	el personaje	<i>part in a movie or play</i>
	el carácter	<i>a person's moral makeup</i>
	el tipo	<i>unusual type of person</i>
	un cómico	<i>comedian</i>

El personaje de la pieza que me gustó más es la hermana mayor.	<i>The character that I liked best in the play is the older sister.</i>
Ella demostró que tenía muy buen carácter.	<i>She showed that she had great strength of character.</i>
Ese tipo apareció en la fiesta sin invitación.	<i>That character showed up uninvited at the party.</i>
El hermano de Jaime es un cómico de verdad.	<i>Jaime's brother is a real character.</i>

<b>corner</b>	el rincón	<i>corner indoors (one you can stand in)</i>
	la esquina	<i>corner outdoors (one you can stand on)</i>

Ella puso la lámpara en un rincón de la sala.	<i>She put the lamp in a corner of the living room.</i>
Lo vi en la esquina buscando un taxi.	<i>I saw him on the corner looking for a taxi.</i>

<b>country</b>	el país	<i>independent nation</i>
	la patria	<i>native land</i>
	el campo	<i>farmland, land outside the city</i>

Brasil es el país más grande de Sudamérica.	<i>Brazil is the biggest country in South America.</i>
Murieron por la patria.	<i>They died for their country.</i>
Ellos viven en Madrid pero tienen otra casa en el campo.	<i>They live in Madrid, but they have another house in the country.</i>

<b>paper</b>	el papel	<i>material used for writing and drawing</i>
	el informe	<i>informative document, report</i>
	el trabajo	<i>academic theme or term paper</i>
	el documento	<i>official document</i>

La niña necesita papel para escribir su carta.	<i>The child needs paper to write her letter on.</i>
------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------

El comité mandó su informe al gobierno.

*The committee sent its paper to the government.*

Eduardo escribió un trabajo de cincuenta páginas sobre ese tema.

*Eduardo wrote a 50-page paper on that subject.*

Su hermano llegó al país sin documentos.

*Her brother arrived in the country without papers.*

<b>party</b>	la fiesta	<i>friendly get-together</i>
	el partido	<i>political group</i>
	el cómplice	<i>co-conspirator</i>
	el grupo	<i>a group of people to be seated together</i>

Al final del curso hicimos una fiesta.

*We had a party when the course was over.*

¿De qué partido es tu candidato preferido?

*What party is your favorite candidate a member of?*

Creo que ella fue cómplice en el crimen.

*I think she was a party to the crime.*

Tengo un grupo de tres para la mesa número 4.

*I have a party of three for table 4.*

<b>people</b>	la gente	<i>men, women, and children</i>
	el pueblo	<i>a specific community</i>
	las personas	<i>human beings</i>

La amabilidad de la gente es lo que me gustó más del país.

*The kindness of the people is what I liked best about the country.*

Este candidato es el mejor representante del pueblo.

*This candidate is the best representative of the people.*

Había más de cien personas en la fiesta.

*There were more than a hundred people at the party.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

*La gente* is a singular noun that refers to all the people. Use *las gentes* only if you are referring to various tribes or other populations.

**X** *las gentes*

**right**      el derecho      *a just claim*

(see also pages 311 and 320)

Este grupo ha luchado por los derechos humanos.

*This group has worked hard for human rights.*

<b>time</b>	la vez el tiempo la hora divertirse (ie, i) pasarlo bien	<i>an individual occasion</i> <i>the past, the present, and the future</i> <i>a point in time indicated by the clock</i> <i>have a good time</i> <i>have a good time</i>
	Él la llamó tres veces. Hemos perdido mucho tiempo discutiendo. ¿Qué hora es? —¿Se divertieron? —Sí, lo pasamos muy bien.	<i>He called her three times.</i> <i>We wasted a lot of time arguing.</i> <i>What time is it?</i> <i>“Did you have a good time?”</i> <i>“Yes, we had a very good time.”</i>

### AVOID THE

## Blunder

*El tiempo* also refers to the weather. *Tener buen tiempo* means “have good weather.”

- ✗ La llamó tres tiempos.
- ✗ ¿Qué tiempo es?
- ✗ Tuvimos un buen tiempo.

## Verbs

<b>appear</b>	aparecer parecer	<i>show up</i> <i>seem to be</i>
	Su nombre apareció tres veces en el artículo. Parece que no va a venir.	<i>His name appeared in the article three times.</i> <i>It appears that he's not coming.</i>
<b>ask</b>	pedirle a uno preguntarle a uno hacerle una pregunta a uno	<i>make a request of someone</i> <i>make a query to someone</i> <i>pose a question to someone</i>

(see also pages 167 and 201–202)

Ella nos pidió que la lleváramos a su casa.	<i>She asked us to take her home.</i>
Le preguntamos dónde vivía.	<i>We asked her where she lived.</i>
¿Puedo hacerte una pregunta?	<i>Can I ask you a question?</i>

**be** (see pages 87–89)

■ *Ser* is used to indicate origin, nationality, religion, profession, civil status, ownership, composition, and descriptive characteristics of people and things.

Ramón es de México. Es católico.  
 Es médico. Es soltero.  
 Es simpático.  
 Esta chaqueta es de Guatemala.  
 Es de algodón. Es roja. Es mía.

*Ramón is from Mexico.  
 He's a Catholic. He's a doctor.  
 He's single. He's nice.  
 This jacket is from Guatemala.  
 It's cotton. It's red. It's mine.*

*Ser* is used to tell the current time and date, as well as the time, date, and location of events.

Hoy es miércoles, 12 de enero.  
 La reunión es mañana. Es a las diez. Es en la oficina del jefe.

*Today is Wednesday, January 12.  
 The meeting is tomorrow.  
 It's at 10 o'clock. It's in the boss's office.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Forget the misleading rule that *ser* indicates permanence. Many uses of *ser* are not necessarily permanent: *es joven, soltero, gordo, pequeño, pobre, de Ramón*.

■ *Haber* is used to state the existence of something. In all tenses, it is used only in the third-person singular, even when it is followed by a plural noun.

Hay una persona en la cocina.  
 Hay diez personas en la cocina.

*There is one person in the kitchen.  
 There are ten people in the kitchen.*

No había nada que leer.  
 Había tres libros en la mesa.

*There was nothing to read.  
 There were three books on the table.*

Hubo un accidente ayer.  
 Hubo dos accidentes ayer.

*There was an accident yesterday.  
 There were two accidents yesterday.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

✗ *Habían tres libros.*

✗ *Hubieron dos accidentes.*

■ *Estar* is used to tell the current condition of a person or thing.

Sara está enferma.  
 El dormitorio está sucio.  
 Su tío está muerto.  
 La máquina está rota.

*Sara is sick.  
 The bedroom is dirty.  
 His uncle is dead.  
 The machine is broken.*

*Estar* is used to tell the location of people and things.

Ana María no está en clase hoy porque está enferma.	<i>Ana María isn't in class today because she's sick.</i>
La Argentina está en el sur de Sudamérica.	<i>Argentina is in the southern part of South America.</i>
La oficina está en el tercer piso.	<i>The office is on the third floor.</i>
Todos estamos aquí para la reunión.	<i>We're all here for the meeting.</i>

*Estar* is used with a gerund to indicate ongoing activity (see page 115).

Mis amigos están estudiando en la biblioteca.	<i>My friends are studying at the library.</i>
--------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------

*Estar* is used with a past participle to indicate a current condition (see page 87).

Las ventanas están abiertas.	<i>The windows are open.</i>
La puerta está cerrada.	<i>The door is closed.</i>

#### AVOID THE

### Blunder

Forget the misleading rule that *estar* indicates temporary meaning. Many uses of *estar* are not temporary.

- ✗ La Argentina es en Sudamérica.
- ✗ Su tío es muerto.

■ *Tener* is used to tell age. The word *años* is usually stated, and the word “old” is not translated. Since age is a characteristic, it answers the question *¿cómo es?*

El muchacho tiene diez años.	<i>The boy is ten.</i>
Esta casa tiene cien años.	<i>This house is a hundred years old.</i>

#### AVOID THE

### Blunder

- ✗ El muchacho es diez.
- ✗ El muchacho tiene diez.
- ✗ Esta casa es cien años viejo.

*Tener* is used with certain nouns to indicate a current condition. It answers the question *¿cómo está?*

tener (mucho) calor	<i>be (very) hot</i>
tener (mucho) frío	<i>be (very) cold</i>
tener (mucho) hambre	<i>be (very) hungry</i>
tener (mucho) miedo	<i>be (very) afraid</i>
tener (mucho) sed	<i>be (very) thirsty</i>
tener (mucho) sueño	<i>be (very) sleepy</i>

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Estoy hambre.
- ✗ Estoy sed.
- ✗ Estoy frío.

■ *Muy* used after *ser* and *estar* means “very.” *Mucho(-a)* is used after *tener*.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

- ✗ Tengo muy hambre.
- ✗ Tiene muy sueño.

<b>be right</b>	tener razón ser correcto estar correcto	<i>make sense</i> <i>be the truth, behave appropriately</i> <i>be a correct response on a test</i>
	Su madre dice que debe hacer las tareas antes de ver la televisión. Su madre tiene razón.	<i>His mother says he has to do his homework before watching TV. His mother is right.</i>
	El mensaje es correcto.	<i>The message is true.</i>
	Ese señor es muy correcto.	<i>That man is very well mannered.</i>
	Espero que todas las respuestas en el examen estén correctas.	<i>I hope all the answers on the test are right.</i>

<b>become</b>	hacerse ponerse convertirse llegar a ser	<i>change over the course of time</i> <i>experience a sudden change in condition</i> <i>transform completely, turn into</i> <i>achieve a change</i>
	Piensa hacerse abogado, por lo tanto, estudia mucho.	<i>He wants to become a lawyer, so he studies a lot.</i>
	El abogado se puso bravo cuando oyó el veredicto.	<i>The lawyer became angry when he heard the verdict.</i>

La niña se convirtió en una  
belleza.  
Ella se dedicó a cantar y llegó  
a ser famosa.

*The little girl became a great  
beauty.  
She devoted her life to singing  
and became famous.*

**can**      poder + *infinitive*      *be able to* (because the possibility exists)  
                 saber + *infinitive*      *know how to*

Sé manejar, pero hoy no puedo  
manejar porque no tengo coche.      *I can drive, but I can't drive today  
because I don't have a car.*

**eat**      comer      *eat*  
                 desayunar      *eat breakfast*  
                 almorzar      *eat lunch*  
                 cenar      *eat dinner*

Vamos a comer a las ocho.      *We're going to eat at eight.*  
¿A qué hora desayunan ustedes?      *What time do you all eat  
breakfast?*  
No almuerzan hasta las dos.      *They don't eat lunch until two.*  
¿Dónde quieres cenar?      *Where do you want to eat dinner?*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

*El desayuno, el almuerzo, and la cena* are meals that can be prepared, served, or enjoyed. But in Spanish, you “breakfast,” “lunch,” and “dine.”

- ✗ *Voy a comer desayuno.*
- ✗ *Va comer almuerzo.*
- ✗ *Vamos a comer la cena.*

**go**      ir      *move from one place to another*  
                 irse      *leave, go away*  
                 subir      *go up*  
                 bajar      *go down*  
                 volverse loco(-a)      *go crazy*

Tenemos que ir al mercado por  
leche.      *We have to go to the store for  
milk.*  
Tengo que irme. Se me hace tarde.      *I have to go. I'm late.*  
El ascensor subió al séptimo piso.      *The elevator went up to the  
seventh floor.*  
Queremos bajar al sótano.      *We want to go down to the  
basement.*  
Me estoy volviendo loca con  
tanto trabajo.      *I'm going crazy with so much  
work.*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not confuse *ir* and *irse*.

✗ El ascensor fue arriba al séptimo piso.

✗ Tengo que ir.

✗ Tenemos que irnos al mercado.

<b>go and come</b>	<i>ir</i>	<i>go to another place (there)</i>
	<i>venir</i>	<i>come to where the speaker is (here)</i>

Voy a tu casa mañana.	<i>I'm coming to your house tomorrow.</i>
-----------------------	-------------------------------------------

Por favor, ven a mi oficina a las once.	<i>Please come to my office at 11 o'clock.</i>
-----------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

In English, it is possible to “come there,” when “there” means where the person you are talking to is or expects to be at the time of your arrival. In Spanish, this is not possible.

✗ Vengo a tu casa mañana.

✗ Venimos a tu fiesta el sábado.

<b>have</b>	<i>hacer una fiesta</i>	<i>organize a party</i>
	<i>tener una fiesta</i>	<i>be invited to a party</i>

¡Vamos a hacer una fiesta!	<i>Let's have a party!</i>
----------------------------	----------------------------

Tenemos una fiesta el viernes.	<i>We have a party to go to on Friday.</i>
--------------------------------	--------------------------------------------

<b>have to</b>	<i>deber + infinitive</i>	<i>be obligated to</i>
	<i>tener que + infinitive</i>	<i>need to</i>

Debemos pagar los impuestos cada año.	<i>We have to pay our taxes every year.</i>
---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

Me duele mucho el diente. Tengo que ir al dentista ahora mismo.	<i>My tooth really hurts. I have to go to the dentist right away.</i>
-----------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------

<b>know</b>	<i>conocer</i>	<i>be acquainted with a person, have visited a place</i>
	<i>saber</i>	<i>be aware of information</i>

No conozco Bolivia, pero conozco a muchos bolivianos.	<i>I've never been to Bolivia, but I know a lot of Bolivians.</i>
-------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

—¿Sabes tú dónde está Bolivia?

*“Do you know where Bolivia is?”*

—Claro, sé que está al este del Perú.

*“Of course, I know that it’s east of Peru.”*

**leave**      salir      *go out of a place*  
                  dejar      *not bring something with you, leave something behind*

Humberto sale de su casa a las ocho de la mañana.      *Humberto leaves home at 8 A.M.*

Dejó su maletín en su casa.      *He left his briefcase at home.*

**like**      apreciar/estimar      *hold in high esteem*  
                  caerle bien a uno      *have a good impression of*  
                  gustarle a uno      *be pleased by the company of a person, be attracted to a person, be delighted by a thing*

Aprecia mucho a sus colegas.      *She likes her colleagues.*

Su novio me cae muy bien.      *I like her boyfriend.*

A Alejandro le gusta mucho Cristina.      *Alejandro really likes Cristina.*

Le gustan todas sus clases.      *She likes all her classes.*

A mí me gusta mucho el chocolate.      *I like chocolate a lot.*

### AVOID THE

## Blunder

Keep in mind that in these constructions the person with the feeling is the indirect object, and the person or thing that causes the feeling is the subject.

✗ Su novio me caigo bien.

✗ Le gusta sus clases.

✗ Me gusto el chocolate.

### AVOID THE

## Blunder

*Gustar* usually implies “attracted to.” Use *querer* to express “liking” family members or those in platonic relationships.

✗ Me gusta mi hermana.

✗ Le gusta mucho su abuelo.

**love**      querer      *care for someone, love*  
                  amar      *love unconditionally*  
                  encantarle a uno      *be really delighted by a person or thing*

Ella quiere mucho a sus padres.  
 Te amo. Quiero casarme contigo.  
 Tú me encantas.  
 Me encanta tu nuevo vestido.  
 ¿Dónde lo compraste?

*She loves her parents a lot.  
 I love you. I want to marry you.  
 You enchant me.  
 I love your new dress. Where did  
 you buy it?*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

*Querer* means “love” or “care for” when referring to people, but “want” when referring to things. *Encantar* means “love” when referring to things, but “entice,” “enchant,” or “delight” when referring to people.

✗ *Amo el chocolate.*

<b>make</b>	hacer	<i>construct</i>
	hacer un ruido	<i>make a noise</i>
	hacer/tender (ie) la cama	<i>make the bed</i>
	anotar algo	<i>make a note of something</i>
	cometer un error	<i>make a mistake</i>
	ganar dinero	<i>make money</i>
	Voy a hacerme un vestido nuevo.	<i>I'm going to make a new dress.</i>
	¡No hagas tanto ruido!	<i>Don't make so much noise!</i>
	Hoy ni quiero tender la cama.	<i>Today I don't even want to make my bed.</i>
	Anota esa dirección, por favor.	<i>Please make note of that address.</i>
	Todos cometemos errores.	<i>We all make mistakes.</i>
	Su hijo gana bastante dinero.	<i>His son makes a lot of money.</i>
<b>meet</b>	conocer	<i>get acquainted with, be introduced to</i>
		<i>for the first time</i>
	encontrarse	<i>run into someone you already know</i>
	Conocí a Josefina en la clase de español.	<i>I met Josefina in Spanish class.</i>
	Ayer nos encontramos en la cafetería.	<i>We met in the cafeteria yesterday.</i>
<b>miss</b>	echar de menos, extrañar	<i>feel nostalgic for</i>
	perder, faltar a	<i>not attend an event</i>
	perder	<i>be late for (a bus or train)</i>
	pasar por alto	<i>overlook</i>
	Me gusta estar aquí, pero echo de menos a mi familia.	<i>I like being here but I miss my family.</i>
	Me gusta estar aquí, pero extraño a mi familia.	

Javier perdió tres clases.  
Javier faltó a tres clases.

} *Javier missed three classes.*

¡Apúrate o perderemos el tren!  
Jorge pasó por alto los detalles  
del plan.

*Hurry up or we'll miss the train!*  
*Jorge completely missed the details*  
*of the plan.*

**pay**      pagarle      *give money to (for things or work)*  
                 prestarle atención a,      *pay attention to*  
                 hacerle caso a

En esta compañía nos pagan  
al final del mes.  
Debemos prestarle atención  
al director.

*At this company they pay us*  
*at the end of the month.*  
*We have to pay attention to*  
*the director.*

**play**      jugar      *participate in a game, gamble*  
                 tocar      *make music with an instrument*  
                 hacer/jugar un papel      *act a part in a play*

Van a jugar (al) fútbol después  
de clase.  
¿Tocas un instrumento?  
Julián hace/juega el papel del  
padre en la pieza.

*They're going to play soccer after*  
*class.*  
*Do you play an instrument?*  
*Julian is playing the part of the*  
*father in the play.*

**return**      volver, regresar      *come/go back*  
                 devolver      *give/take something back*

Mariana regresa a su casa  
mañana.  
Debes devolver los libros a la  
biblioteca hoy.

*Mariana is returning home*  
*tomorrow.*  
*You have to return the books*  
*to the library today.*

**ride**      montar a caballo      *go on horseback*  
                 montar en bicicleta      *go on a bicycle*  
                 ir en coche/bus/tren/avión      *go by car/bus/train/airplane*

A Sonia le encanta montar  
a caballo.  
Muchas personas montan en  
bicicleta los fines de semana.  
No quiero ir en tren.

*Sonia loves to ride horses.*  
*A lot of people ride bicycles*  
*on weekends.*  
*I don't want to ride the train.*

**spend**      gastar      *use money*  
                 pasar tiempo      *use time*

Alfredo gasta todo el dinero que  
gana en regalos para su novia.

*Alfredo spends all the money*  
*he makes on presents for his*  
*girlfriend.*

Nos gustaría pasar un tiempo  
en Nicaragua.

*We would like to spend some time  
in Nicaragua.*

<b>take</b>	tomar	<i>grasp with the fingers, drink</i>
	sacar	<i>remove from, take (a photograph), make (a photocopy)</i>
	quitarle a uno	<i>take away from</i>
	quitarse	<i>take off (clothing)</i>
	cuidar	<i>take care of</i>
	dar una vuelta	<i>take a stroll/ride</i>

Ángeles tomó el diccionario del  
estante y buscó la palabra.

*Ángeles took the dictionary from  
the shelf and looked up the  
word.*

Los padres sacaron a los niños  
de la escuela.

*The parents took their children  
out of the school.*

Manuel siempre saca muchas  
fotos.

*Manuel always takes a lot of  
pictures.*

El policía le quitó la licencia de  
conducir.

*The policeman took his driver's  
license away from him.*

Los chicos deben quitarse la  
gorra al entrar en el salón  
de clase.

*The kids have to take off their caps  
when they enter the classroom.*

Norma se queda en casa para  
cuidar a sus niños.

*Norma stays home to take care  
of her children.*

Vamos a dar una vuelta por  
la ciudad.

*Let's take a ride around the city.*

<b>take and bring</b>	llevar	<i>take (there)</i>
	traer	<i>bring (here)</i>

Voy a tu casa y te llevo los  
documentos.

*I'm coming to your house and  
I'll bring you the papers.*

Carlos vino a mi casa y me trajo  
dos libros.

*Carlos came to my house and  
brought me two books.*

In English, you can “bring” something “there,” when “there” means where the person you are speaking to is or expects to be at the time of your arrival. In Spanish, this is not possible.

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *traer*, unless you are already at your friend's house and mean, “I brought you the documents.”

✗ Te traigo los documentos mañana.

<b>try</b>	intentar hacer tratar de hacer hacer un esfuerzo	<i>make an effort to do something</i> <i>act to do something</i> <i>make an effort</i>
	Intenté hablar con él, pero no estaba en su casa cuando lo llamé.	<i>I tried to talk to him, but he wasn't at home when I called him.</i>
	Susana trató de abrir la puerta con esta llave, pero no funcionó.	<i>Susana tried to open the door with this key, but it didn't work.</i>
	Tienes que hacer un esfuerzo.	<i>You have to try!</i>
<b>used to</b>	acostumbrarse estar acostumbrado	<i>get used to</i> <i>be accustomed to</i>
	El niño tiene que acostumbrarse a seguir las instrucciones de la maestra.	<i>The child has to get used to following the teacher's instructions.</i>
	Al principio me molestó el ruido de los aviones, pero ahora estoy acostumbrada.	<i>At first the airplane noise bothered me, but now I'm used to it.</i>

The imperfect tense of a verb is used to express “used to be” or “used to do” something regularly in the past.

The preterite tense of a verb is used to express “used to be” or “used to do” something, but not anymore.

Ana era muy flaca. Incluso intentaba ganar peso.	<i>Ana used to be really skinny. She even used to try to gain weight.</i>
Ella estuvo casada una vez.	<i>She used to be married.</i>

<b>watch</b>	ver mirar	<i>see, watch (television, a movie, a show, a game)</i> <i>look at</i>
	Las chicas vinieron a casa a ver la televisión.	<i>The girls came home to watch TV.</i>
	Me gusta mirar a la gente andar por la calle.	<i>I like to watch people walking down the street.</i>

#### AVOID THE

## Blunder

In English one “watches” shows and games. In Spanish, *ver*, rather than *mirar*, is used to express this.

- ✗ Miro la televisión.
- ✗ Miramos el fútbol.

**work**      trabajar      *do physical or mental labor*  
                  funcionar      *function*

Trabajamos de lunes a viernes.  
 El lavaplatos no funciona.

*We work from Monday to Friday.*  
*The dishwasher doesn't work.*

## Adjectives and Adverbs

**bad/badly**      malo(-a)/mal

¿Cómo es ella? Es mala.  
 ¿Cómo está ella? Está mal.  
 Canta muy mal.

*What's she like? She's a bad girl.*  
*How is she? She's in bad shape.*  
*She sings very badly.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Use *malo(-a)* after *ser*, and *mal* after *estar* or an action verb. *Mal* is an adverb, and its form does not change.

- ✗ Es mal.
- ✗ Está mala.
- ✗ Canto malo.

**good/well**      bueno(-a)/bien

¿Cómo es ella? Es buena.  
 ¿Cómo está ella? Está bien.

*What's she like? She's a good girl.*  
*How is she? She's well./*  
*She's in good shape.*  
*She speaks Spanish very well.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Use *bueno(-a)* after *ser*, and *bien* after *estar* or an action verb. *Bien* is an adverb, and its form does not change.

- ✗ Ella es bien.
- ✗ Ella está bueno.
- ✗ Habla bueno.

**little**      pequeño(-a)      *small in size*  
                  poco(-a)      *a small amount, very little*  
                  un poco      *a small amount, some*

El apartamento es muy pequeño.  
 Tenemos poco espacio.  
 Nos gustaría tener un poco más  
 de espacio.

*The apartment is very little.*  
*We have very little space.*  
*We'd like to have a little more space.*

<b>right</b>	derecho(-a) a la derecha	<i>opposite of left to the opposite of left</i>
Cecilia escribe con la mano derecha.		<i>Cecilia writes with her right hand.</i>
Dobla a la derecha en el segundo semáforo.		<i>Turn right at the second light.</i>

## Spanish Words with More Than One English Meaning

Following are some Spanish words that have noninterchangeable translations in English.

<b>buscar</b>	<i>look for, go get (a person or thing), pick up (a person to go somewhere)</i>
No sé dónde está el libro.	<i>I don't know where the book is.</i>
Voy a buscarlo.	<i>I'm going to look for it.</i>
El libro está arriba en el escritorio.	<i>The book is upstairs on the desk.</i>
Voy a buscarlo.	<i>I'll go get it.</i>
Vamos a buscarte a tu casa a las ocho.	<i>We're going to pick you up at your house at eight.</i>
<b>ganar</b>	<i>win, beat, earn, gain</i>
¡Ojalá que ganemos el partido!	<i>I hope we win the game.</i>
Les ganamos por dos puntos.	<i>We beat them by two points.</i>
Su marido gana suficiente dinero para los dos.	<i>Her husband earns enough money for both of them.</i>
Gané dos kilos durante mis vacaciones.	<i>I gained two kilos during my vacation.</i>
<b>llevar</b>	<i>wear, carry, take, have spent time</i>
<b>llevarse con</b>	<i>get along with</i>

Tu hermano siempre lleva ropa muy elegante.	<i>Your brother always wears fine clothes.</i>
Los bomberos sacaron al anciano de la casa y lo llevaron al hospital.	<i>The firemen got the old man out of the house and took him to the hospital.</i>
Horacio lleva veinte años trabajando aquí.	<i>Horacio has been working here for twenty years.</i>
María y Ana se llevan bien.	<i>María and Ana get along well.</i>
Patricia no se lleva bien con María.	<i>Patricia doesn't get along well with María.</i>

**querer** *love, want*

Juan quiere mucho a su hija.  
Juan quiere una casa nueva.

*Juan loves his daughter.  
Juan wants a new house.*

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

*Querer* means “love, care about” when it refers to people, and “want” when it refers to things.

**tomar** *drink, take, grasp, pull*

Miguel no toma café.

*Miguel doesn't drink coffee.*

Toma las pastillas después de  
comer.

*Take the pills after eating.*

Toma el vaso y ponlo en la mesa.

*Take the glass and put it on  
the table.*

¡No me tomes el pelo!

*Don't pull my hair! (Don't tease  
me!)*

## Exercises

**A** Write the Spanish cognate of each of the following English nouns.

- |                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>chocolate</i> _____   | 6. <i>fragment</i> _____  |
| 2. <i>solution</i> _____    | 7. <i>sentiment</i> _____ |
| 3. <i>possibility</i> _____ | 8. <i>arrogance</i> _____ |
| 4. <i>biology</i> _____     | 9. <i>presence</i> _____  |
| 5. <i>patient</i> _____     | 10. <i>feminist</i> _____ |

**B** Write the English meaning of each of the following Spanish nouns.

- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>arena</i> _____      | 6. <i>discusión</i> _____ |
| 2. <i>carpeta</i> _____    | 7. <i>fábrica</i> _____   |
| 3. <i>compromiso</i> _____ | 8. <i>lectura</i> _____   |
| 4. <i>costumbre</i> _____  | 9. <i>parientes</i> _____ |
| 5. <i>decepción</i> _____  | 10. <i>suceso</i> _____   |

**C** Write the Spanish that corresponds to each of the following English verbs. Give the infinitive form of the Spanish verb.

- |                     |       |                           |       |
|---------------------|-------|---------------------------|-------|
| 1. warn             | _____ | 6. bother                 | _____ |
| 2. write down       | _____ | 7. remember               | _____ |
| 3. pay attention to | _____ | 8. inform                 | _____ |
| 4. argue            | _____ | 9. apply (for school/job) | _____ |
| 5. be unaware of    | _____ | 10. attend                | _____ |

**D** Match the Spanish adjectives in the left column with the appropriate English adjectives in the right column.

- |                      |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| _____ 1. actual      | a. sensitive    |
| _____ 2. casual      | b. unexpected   |
| _____ 3. cómodo      | c. pregnant     |
| _____ 4. conveniente | d. advantageous |
| _____ 5. detallado   | e. annoying     |
| _____ 6. embarazada  | f. royal        |
| _____ 7. fastidioso  | g. sensible     |
| _____ 8. informal    | h. casual       |
| _____ 9. real        | i. convenient   |
| _____ 10. sensato    | j. fastidious   |
| _____ 11. sensible   | k. current      |
| _____ 12. verdadero  | l. actual       |

**E** Circle the expression that best completes each sentence.

- Llamé a mi amiga **dos tiempos** | **dos veces** | **dos horas**.
- Ella me **pidió** | **preguntó** | **hizo una pregunta** dónde estaba el banco.
- Su hermano **es** | **está** | **estaba** una persona muy simpática.
- Su apartamento **es** | **está** | **fue** en el tercer piso.
- Creo que la profesora **es** | **tiene** | **está** razón.
- Tengo que **irse** | **ir** | **irme**.
- Vengo** | **Voy** | **Me voy** a tu casa mañana.
- Él no **conoce** | **sabe** | **es** Nueva York.
- Su abuelo es **bien** | **bueno** | **enfermo**.

# CONSTRUCTIONS

Spanish and English use very different constructions for certain concepts. Following are some examples.

## English to Spanish

### **since**

- “after a time in the past when”: *desde* (see pages 117 and 283)

Desde que tengo este coche, he gastado mucho dinero.	<i>Ever since I've had this car, I've spent a lot of money.</i>
---------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------

- to indicate a period of time during which an event or activity has not occurred: *hace* (see page 116)

Hace años que no voy al teatro.	<i>It's been years since I've been to the theater.</i>
---------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------

- “because”: *como*

Como teníamos tanta hambre, fuimos a un restaurante.	<i>Since we were so hungry, we went to a restaurant.</i>
---------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------

### **so**

- to intensify the meaning of an adjective: *tan*

El profesor es tan exigente que me pone nervioso.	<i>The teacher is so strict that he makes me nervous.</i>
------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

- to ask about recent news that's on the mind of both parties: *¿Y?* (see page 291)

SITUATION The baby has just been born and the new father calls his parents.

MADRE	—¿Y...?	<i>“So ...?”</i>
HIJO	—¡Es una niña!	<i>“It's a girl!”</i>

- to introduce a consequence: *así que*

Tengo que trabajar el sábado, así que no voy a poder acompañarte al cine.	<i>I have to work on Saturday, so I won't be able to go to the movies with you.</i>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

- to indicate “not good, not bad”: *más o menos/regular*  
 —Hola Paco, ¿cómo van las cosas?                      “Hi, Paco. How are things?”  
 —Pues, más o menos.                      “Oh, just so-so.”

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use *así así* to mean “so-so.”

- ¿Cómo estás?  
 ✗ —Así así.

### *will*

- to ask a favor: question using a verb in the present tense  
 ¿Me ayudas con los paquetes?                      *Will you help me with the packages?*  
 ¿Me estacionas el coche?                      *Will you park the car for me?*
- to accept a request: verb in the present tense  
 Te ayudo con mucho gusto.                      *I'll gladly help you.*  
 Te estaciono el coche enseguida.                      *I'll park the car for you right away.*
- to make a promise: verb in the present or future tense  
 La llamo esta tarde a las cinco. }  
 La llamaré esta tarde a las cinco. } *I'll call you this afternoon at five.*
- to predict the future: verb in the future tense  
 Su hijo será famoso.                      *Your son will be famous.*  
 Tú viajarás por el mundo.                      *You will travel throughout the world.*
- to indicate probability: verb in the future tense  
 —¿Qué vas a hacer?                      “What are you going to do?”  
 —No sé. Me quedará en casa                      “I don't know. I'll probably stay  
 y veré la televisión.                      home and watch TV.”

### AVOID THE *Blunder*

Do not use the future tense in Spanish to translate all meanings of “will.” Rather than translate words individually, think of the function of the Spanish equivalent for the entire expression.

- ✗ ¿Me ayudarás con los paquetes?  
 ✗ ¿Me llamarás esta tarde?

**wish**

- to express a sentiment: indirect object pronoun + *desear*

Te deseo un feliz cumpleaños.	<i>I wish you a happy birthday.</i>
Les deseamos toda la felicidad del mundo.	<i>We wish you all the happiness in the world.</i>

- to express a wish that something were true: *ojalá (que)* + verb in imperfect subjunctive (see page 195)

Ojalá estuvieras aquí conmigo.	<i>I wish you were here with me.</i>
Ojalá tuviéramos más tiempo.	<i>I wish we had more time.</i>

- to wish that something were true or had not happened: *lamentar* + infinitive

Lamento no poder decírtelo.	<i>I wish I could tell you.</i>
Lamento no haber ido a verla.	<i>I wish I had gone to see her.</i>

**wonder**

“I wonder” is best expressed in Spanish by using a question in the future tense or in the conditional (see pages 145 and 156). The future is used to express wonder about present time. The conditional is used to express wonder about past time.

¿Dónde estará mi hermano?	<i>I wonder where my brother is.</i>
¿Dónde estaría mi hermano?	<i>I wonder where my brother was.</i>

**would**

“Would” has several meanings in English. Each meaning uses a different expression in Spanish.

- “would rather”: *preferir (ie, i)*

Preferimos quedarnos en casa.	<i>We would rather stay home.</i>
-------------------------------	-----------------------------------

- past tense of “will”; to express refusal to act: “wouldn’t,” “refused to”: *negarse a/no querer*

Se negó a ir al concierto. }	<i>He wouldn't go to the concert. /</i>
No quiso ir al concierto. }	<i>He refused to go to the concert.</i>

- past habitual action: verb in imperfect tense (see pages 132–138)

Ella me decía sus secretos cuando éramos pequeñas.	<i>She would always tell me her secrets when we were little.</i>
----------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------

- conditional action: verb in conditional (see pages 151–156)

Mi colega iría si pudiera.	<i>My colleague would come if she could.</i>
----------------------------	----------------------------------------------

Ella estaría hablando contigo  
ahora si fuera posible.  
Ya nos habríamos ido si no  
hubiéramos perdido tanto  
tiempo.

*She would be talking to you right  
now if it were possible.  
We would have left by now if we  
badn't wasted so much time.*

- to make a polite request: *poder* in conditional

¿Podría usted hacerme un favor?  
¿Podrían ustedes ayudarnos?

*Would you do me a favor?  
Would you all help us?*

- “would like”: *gustarle a uno* in conditional; also, imperfect subjunctive of *querer*; “*quisiera*” + infinitive

¿Adónde te gustaría ir?

*Where would you like to go?*

Me gustaría comer afuera esta noche.

Quisiera comer afuera esta noche.

*I would like to eat out tonight.*

- “would you mind if”: *importarle a uno* in conditional

¿Te importaría si saliera temprano  
de la clase?

*Would you mind if I left class  
early?*

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

Rather than translate “would” literally, think of the function of the Spanish equivalent for the entire expression.

## Spanish to English

**darle de alta**     *release a patient*

**darle de baja**     *admit a patient*

A Marta le dieron de alta del  
hospital ayer.

*They released Marta from the  
hospital yesterday.*

A su papá le dieron de baja ayer.

*They admitted her father  
yesterday.*

**darle la bienvenida a alguien**     *welcome someone*

Vamos todos al aeropuerto para  
darles la bienvenida.

*We're all going to the airport  
to welcome them.*

**desayunar, almorzar (ue), cenar**     *eat breakfast, eat lunch, eat dinner*

No desayuno hasta las once.

*I don't eat breakfast until 11  
o'clock.*

¿Quieres almorzar conmigo?

*Will you eat lunch with me?*

¿A qué hora cenan ustedes?

*What time do you all eat dinner?*

## AVOID THE *Blunder*

In Spanish, you “breakfast,” “lunch,” and “dine.” The nouns for meals, *el desayuno*, *el almuerzo*, and *la cena* are used with the verbs *preparar*, *cocinar*, and *servir*.

✗ No como el desayuno.

✗ ¿Quieres comer almuerzo?

✗ ¿A qué hora comen la cena?

**despedirse de** *say good-bye to*

Tuvimos que despedirnos  
anoche.

*We had to say good-bye to each  
other last night.*

**echarle la culpa a alguien** *blame someone*

Fue él quien lo hizo, pero  
a ella le echaron la culpa.

*He's the one who did it, but they  
blamed it on her.*

**echarse a perder** *be ruined*

Ha llovido tanto que mis  
sandalias se han echado  
a perder.

*It has rained so much that my  
sandals are ruined.*

**enamorarse de** *fall in love with*

Me temo que me estoy  
enamorando de él.

*I'm afraid I'm falling in love  
with him.*

**estrenar** *use for the first time*

Esta noche va a estrenar su  
vestido nuevo.

*She's going to wear her new dress  
for the first time tonight.*

**fijarse en** *notice, pay attention to*

Mi esposo ni se ha fijado en  
que me he cortado el pelo.  
¡Fíjate en cómo lo hacen los  
otros!

*My husband hasn't even noticed  
that I had my hair cut.  
Pay attention to how the others  
do it.*

**soler** *usually (do)*

¿A qué hora suelen cenar?

*What time do you usually eat  
dinner?*

Solemos cenar a las ocho.

*We usually eat dinner at eight.*

**tratarse de** *be about*

- ¿De qué se trata la película?  
 —Se trata de la vida en un pueblo pequeño.

*"What's the movie about?"  
 "It's about life in a small town."*

**Negative Constructions**

In Spanish, as opposed to English, a negative clause must have *no* or another negative word before the verb.

■ Negative sentences are often expressed using a double negative, with *no* preceding the verb and another negative word following the verb.

—¿Tienes algo en la mano?

*"Do you have something in your hand?"*

—No, no tengo nada en la mano.

*"No, I don't have anything in my hand."*

—¿Está alguien en la casa?

*"Is anyone in the house?"*

—No, no está nadie.

*"No, no one is there."*

—¿Conoces a algún carpintero bueno?

*"Do you know a good carpenter?"*

—No, no conozco a ningún carpintero aquí.

*"No, I don't know a single carpenter here."*

—¿Quieres ir a alguna parte?

*"Do you want to go anywhere?"*

—No, no quiero ir a ninguna parte.

*"No, I don't want to go anywhere."*

Algún día volverá.

*He'll come back one day.*

No volverá nunca.

*He'll never come back.*

Ella va al cine y yo también.

*She's going to the movies, and so am I.*

Ella no va a estudiar ni yo tampoco.

*She's not going to study, and I'm not either.*

Él quiere cenar e ir al cine.

*He wants to eat dinner and go to the movies.*

Ella no quiere ni cenar ni ir al cine.

*He doesn't want to eat dinner or go to the movies.*

**AVOID THE Blunder**

✗ Tengo nada en la mano.

✗ Volverá nunca.

■ A negative word other than *no* sometimes precedes the verb, and the *no* is omitted.

Nada es más importante que la salud.

Nadie está en la casa.

Ningún carpintero quiere hacer este proyecto.

Nunca volverá.

No quiero ir al cine. Tampoco quiero quedarme aquí.

Ella no quiere hacer nada, ni quiere ir al cine.

*Nothing is more important than health.*

*No one is in the house.*

*No carpenter wants to do this project.*

*She'll never come back.*

*I don't want to go to the movies.*

*I don't want to stay here either.*

*She doesn't want to do anything.*

*She doesn't even want to go to the movies.*

AVOID THE

*Blunder*

✗ No nadie está en casa.

✗ No nunca volverá.

## Exercises

**A** Express the following in Spanish.

1. When are they going to release your grandmother from the hospital?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Are you going to wear your new shoes (for the first time)?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. I want to be at the station to welcome you.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. She went to Mexico and fell in love.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. The dinner was ruined.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. The girl didn't pay any attention to him at the party.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. They blamed me.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. They said goodbye this morning at the airport.

\_\_\_\_\_

9. What is your paper about?

\_\_\_\_\_

10. What time do you all eat breakfast?

\_\_\_\_\_

**B** Rewrite the following sentences, making them negative.

1. Tengo que comprar algo.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Siempre viene a visitar los domingos.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Jorge va a estudiar, y yo también.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Alguien está en la oficina.

\_\_\_\_\_

# CATCH THE BLUNDERS

In the following paragraphs, each word printed in red contains at least one blunder. Correct all the blunders, referring to the English version when necessary, and fill in all the blanks. Then check your answers on pages 347–349.

**A** Soy en mi **primero ano** de **colegio**. Vivo en **un dormitorio**, que se llama “Jefferson Hall,” con dos compañeras de cuarto, Mary y Jenna. **Los dos están** muy **simpático** y nos llevamos bien. Mary es bastante **serio** y **ella** estudia mucho. Jenna es buena **estudiante**, pero **ella** no estudia **tan mucho que** Mary. **Nuestra** dormitorio **es no largo**, pero **lo** es cómodo y bonito.

*I'm a freshman in college. I live in a dorm, called “Jefferson Hall,” with two roommates, Mary and Jenna. Both of them are very nice and we get along well. Mary is pretty serious and she studies a lot. Jenna is a good student, but she doesn't study as much as Mary. Our room isn't big, but it's comfortable and pretty.*

**B** Desde quiero ser **un** médico, **yo** estudio biología y química, que **yo** me **gusto** mucho. Mis clases son **en Lunes** y **en Miércoles son** las diez **en** la mañana hasta \_\_\_\_\_ once y **medio**, a Washington Hall. **Yo** también tengo \_\_\_\_\_ estudiar **ingles**, **historía**, y **espanol**. \_\_\_\_\_ **español** es **difícil por mí**, pero **yo** me **lo gusto** y **yo** creo que **está** importante **por mí** carrera. La clase de inglés **está en Martes** y \_\_\_\_\_ **Jueves son** las nueve **a** Harrison Hall, la de historia **son la mediodía en las mismas** días y **a** el mismo edificio y la de español es de **Lunes a Jueves** desde las dos **en** la tarde **a** las tres, **a** Tyler Hall. No tengo que **atender** a clases **en Viernes**.

*Since I want to be a doctor, I take Biology and Chemistry, which I like a lot. The classes are on Mondays and Wednesdays at 10 o'clock in the morning until 11:30, in Washington Hall. I also have to study English, History, and Spanish. Spanish is hard for me, but I like it and I think it is important for my career.*

*My English class is on Tuesdays and Thursdays at 9 A.M. in Harrison Hall, my History class is at noon on the same days and in the same building, and my Spanish class is from Monday to Thursday from 2 P.M. until three, in Tyler Hall. I don't have to attend classes on Fridays.*

**C** Entramos en un dormitorio de la universidad y vemos **esté** escena: Hay **ochos** estudiantes **sentado** en el suelo **preparandose por** un **examen**. Están tratando \_\_\_\_\_ recordar todos los datos sobre **de la Civil Guerra** de los Estados Unidos. Un chica **tene** una pizarra pequeña en **el** cual \_\_\_\_\_ **escribando las importantes fechas**. Un chico \_\_\_\_\_ **esta** explicando a su amigo \_\_\_\_\_ que pasó al final de **el** guerra. **Dos otros** chicos **está leyendo** sus **libro de textos**. Una estudiante está **dormiendo** y su amiga está tratando **a despertar a ella**. Un muchacho está hablando **en el** celular **a** su novia. Nadie está **mirando** \_\_\_\_\_ televisión. Todos **los personos** beben café y **ellos** esperan la llegada de unas pizzas.

*We enter a college dorm room and see the following scene: There are eight students sitting on the floor getting ready for a test. They're trying to remember all the facts about the U.S. Civil War. One girl has a small blackboard on which she is writing the important dates. A boy is explaining to his friend what happened at the end of the war. Two other boys are reading their textbooks. One student is sleeping, and her friend is trying to wake her up. A boy is talking to his girlfriend on his cell phone. Nobody is watching TV. They are all drinking coffee, and they're waiting for pizza to arrive.*

**D** **En Viernes** tengo una fiesta **a** la casa de un amigo. Yo voy \_\_\_\_\_ ir con **dos otras** chicas. Yo no sé qué van \_\_\_\_\_ llevar ellas, pero yo pienso llevar mi nueva falda negra con una blusa rosada. Yo voy a usar unos zapatos negros de tacón alto y unos pendientes **platas**. Mis amigas vienen a buscarme **son** las siete, así que voy a tener que cambiar **mis ropas** rápido porque mi **pasada** clase no termina hasta las 5:30. Estoy segura de que vamos a **tener un tiempo muy bueno**.

*On Friday I'm going to a party at a friend's house. I'm going to go with two other girls. I don't know what they're going to wear, but I plan to wear my new black skirt with a pink blouse. I'm going to wear my black high heels and some silver earrings. My friends are coming to get me at seven, so I'm going to have to change my clothes fast because my last class doesn't end until 5:30. I'm sure we're going to have a good time.*

**E** Cuando **estaba** joven, **viví** en la ciudad con mis padres y \_\_\_\_\_ mis hermanos. Todos los domingos **fuimos a el** pueblo para **comer almuerzo** a la casa de mis abuelos. También **fueron** mis tíos con sus hijos, y a veces invitábamos \_\_\_\_\_ **alguno** amigo. En fin, **era muchas gentes** que **comerían** y **tendrían un buen tiempo** en esa casa **en** domingos. Mi abuela, la mejor cocinera **en el** mundo, **preparó** una **grande comida**, con por lo menos dos tipos de carne, varios platos de verduras, dos o tres ensaladas, y frutas. Nunca faltaba el pan especial hecho **por** mano por mi abuela. Luego se servía un pastel o una torta de postre. \_\_\_\_\_ Todo el mundo \_\_\_\_\_ **gustaban a** comer en casa de mi abuela. **Yo** me gustaba **a** jugar con mis primos, pero lo que **yo** me gustaba más era **sentando** en la mesa con los viejos y **escuchando a** sus cuentos.

*When I was young I lived in the city with my parents and my brothers and sisters. Every Sunday we went to the country to eat lunch at my grandparents' house. My aunts and uncles and their kids always went too, and sometimes we invited a friend as well. So there were always a lot of people who would eat and have fun at that house on Sundays. My grandmother, the best cook in the whole world, used to prepare a huge meal, always with at least two kinds of meat, several platters of vegetables, two or three salads, and fruit. There were always my grandmother's homemade biscuits. Later a pie or cake was served for dessert. Everybody liked to eat at my grandmother's house. I liked to play with my cousins, but what I liked best was sitting at the table with the old people and listening to their stories.*

**F** **Uno** domingo cuando **estuvimos** en **mis abuelos' casa**, mi hermano se **caió fuera** de un árbol, donde estaba jugando con **nuestros** primo. Todos estábamos muy **preocupado**. Alguien **llamaba** \_\_\_\_\_ la ambulancia. Mientras esperábamos **para** ayuda, mi mamá trataba **a** calmar \_\_\_\_\_ mi hermano, que **fue** agitado. Él no lloraba, aunque estaba muy herido. Yo trataba **a** calmar \_\_\_\_\_ mi hermanita, que sí lloraba por lo ocurrido. Por fin **llegaba** la ambulancia. Los paramédicos **examinaban** \_\_\_\_\_ mi hermano y **llevaron lo a el** hospital, donde determinaron que **rompió su** clavícula. Le **ponían** algunas vendas, le **daron** un calmante y luego **llevábamos lo** a casa.

*One Sunday when we were at my grandparents' house, my brother fell out of a tree, where he was playing with our cousin. We were all really worried. Somebody called an ambulance. While we were waiting for help, my mother tried to soothe my brother, who was upset. He didn't cry, even though he was badly hurt. I tried*

to soothe my little sister, who cried because of what happened. Finally the ambulance arrived. The paramedics examined my brother and took him to the hospital, where they determined that he had broken his collarbone. They put some bandages on him, gave him a tranquilizer, and then we took him home.

**G** Un español clase es planeando tener una fiesta \_\_\_\_\_ celebrar el final de semestre. El profesor quiere que los estudiantes traen platos auténticos de la cocina hispana. \_\_\_\_\_ dice a tres chicas a preparar arroz con pollo en el estilo colombiano. \_\_\_\_\_ sugiere a dos otras a seguir una receta por unas papas en el estilo peruano. A uno chico \_\_\_\_\_ recomienda a hacer una española tortilla, y a un otro chico a preparar uno flan. El profesor \_\_\_\_\_ da recetas por todos estes platos. Los estudiantes salgan entusiasmados, pensando de su fiesta y \_\_\_\_\_ la comida rica que van \_\_\_\_\_ cocinar.

*A Spanish class is planning to have a party to celebrate the end of the semester. The teacher wants the students to bring authentic Hispanic dishes. He tells three girls to prepare chicken and rice, Colombian style. He suggests to two others that they follow a recipe for Peruvian-style potatoes. He recommends to one boy that he make a Spanish tortilla, and to another that he make a flan. The teacher gives them recipes for all these dishes. The students leave excitedly, thinking about their party and the delicious food they're going to cook.*

**H** Una clase de español era planeando tener una fiesta para celebrar el final del semestre. El profesor quiso \_\_\_\_\_ los estudiantes a traer platos auténticos de la cocina hispana. \_\_\_\_\_ dijo a tres chicas a preparar arroz con pollo al estilo colombiano. \_\_\_\_\_ sugirió a otras dos a seguir una receta para unas papas al estilo peruano. \_\_\_\_\_ un chico \_\_\_\_\_ recomendó a hacer una tortilla española, y a uno otro chico a preparar un flan. El profesor \_\_\_\_\_ dó recetas para todos estos platos. Los estudiantes salgaron entusiasmados, pensando de su fiesta y \_\_\_\_\_ la comida rica que fueron \_\_\_\_\_ cocinar.

*A Spanish class was planning to have a party to celebrate the end of the semester. The teacher wanted the students to bring authentic Hispanic dishes. He told three girls to prepare Colombian-style chicken with rice. He suggested to two others that they follow a recipe for Peruvian-style potatoes. He recommended to one boy that he make a Spanish tortilla, and to another that he make a flan. The teacher gave them recipes for all these dishes. The students left excitedly, thinking about their party and the delicious food they were going to cook.*

**I** “¿Qué van a hacer ustedes cuando \_\_\_\_\_ **graduan?**” **pidió** la señora que visitaba la universidad con **sus** hija. Una chica contestó, “voy a estudiar medicina y algún día seré médico.” Otra **dijo**, “**tomaré** un viaje alrededor **el** mundo y no **vuelveré** hasta \_\_\_\_\_ me **canso** de la aventura.” Otras **dijieron** que no **supieron que van** \_\_\_\_\_ hacer. Algunas **fueron seguros** de que **quisieron conseguir casados** y tener hijos algún día, **sino** otras no.

*“What are you all going to do when you graduate?” asked the woman who was visiting the university with her daughter. One girl answered, “I’m going to study medicine and one day I’ll be a doctor.” Another said, “I’ll take a trip around the world and I won’t come back until I get tired of the adventure.” Others said they didn’t know what they were going to do. Some were sure that they wanted to get married and have children one day, but others weren’t.*

**J** Para el año 2050, todos nosotros seremos **viejo** y **habremos hecho** muchas cosas. Mi hermano dice \_\_\_\_\_ se habrá jubilado después **que ha** trabajado cuarenta años. Se habrá casado \_\_\_\_\_ su novia **corriente** y tendrán tres hijos. Los **niños** ya habrán **terminados** sus carreras y **ellos** vivirán en varias partes del mundo. Mi hermano piensa \_\_\_\_\_ se reunirán todos por lo menos cuatro veces **un** año. Su novia dice que ella también se habrá **jubilada** y que sí, se habrá casado **a** mi hermano. Pero ella dice que no tendrán tres hijos, **pero** dos, y que los dos vivirán cerca \_\_\_\_\_ sus padres cuando **son** grandes.

*By the year 2050, we’ll all be old and we will have done a lot of things. My brother says that he will have retired after working forty years. He will have married his present girlfriend and they will have three children. The children will have already finished their education and will be living in different parts of the world. My brother thinks they will all get together at least four times a year. His girlfriend says that she will have retired too, and that, yes, she will have married my brother. But she says they won’t have three children, but two, and that both of them will live near their parents when they are grown.*

**K** Si yo **ganaba** “el gordo” de la lotería, o si alguien me **dio** diez **millon** dólares, antes **que yo hice** otra cosa, **yo** contrataría a alguien **quien serviría** como mi gerente personal, que **manejaría** el dinero, que lo **invertiría** bien, que me **ayudaría** en elegir proyectos filantrópicos y que **aseguraría** que no **perdería** el dinero tan rápido **que lo habría** ganado. Luego dejaría **trabajando** y pensaría **de** la mejor manera de disfrutar de la vida. **Yo** creo que buscaría una casa elegante, **sino**

que no muy grande, y que también yo compraría una casa nueva para mis padres. Yo compraría un coche de lujo. Yo tomaría viajes a los países que me parecieron interesantes, pero antes que yo tomaba cada viaje, yo estudiaría el idioma y la cultura del lugar. Yo leería mucho para aprender más del mundo. Claro, yo también tendría muchas fiestas en la nueva casa y invitaría \_\_\_\_\_ todos mis amigos.

*If I won the lottery jackpot, or if someone gave me ten million dollars, before I did anything else, I would hire someone to be my personal manager, to take care of the money, to invest it well, to help me to choose charitable projects, and to make sure that I didn't lose the money as fast as I had gotten it. Then I would stop working and would think about the best way to enjoy life. I think I would look for an elegant house, but not a big one, and I would also buy a new house for my parents. I would buy a luxury car. I would take trips to the countries that seemed interesting, but before taking each trip, I would study the language and the culture of the place. I would read a lot, to learn more about the world. Of course I would also have a lot of parties at the new house, and I would invite all my friends.*

**L** Mi tío ya es viejo y él dice él ha vivido bien. Claro, hay cosas que habría cambiado si **había** tenido la oportunidad, pero en general está contento. **El más triste tiempo** de su vida fue **diez años pasados**, cuando mi tía **morió** de cáncer. Durante estos diez años, mi tío \_\_\_\_\_ ha sentido muy **sólo**. Él habría gustado mucho disfrutar de **sus esposa's compañía**. Sin embargo, sus dos hijas visitan **a él** todos los días, y si necesita **cualquiera** cosa, sólo tiene que decirlo y se cumple el deseo en seguida. \_\_\_\_\_ siente dichoso y muy orgulloso de su familia, pues no conoce \_\_\_\_\_ **ninguno** otro anciano que **tiene** hijos tan atentos. También **es** muy agradecido de haber gozado de **bien** salud todos estos años.

*My uncle is old now, and he says he has lived well. Of course, there are things he would have changed if he had had the chance, but in general he's happy. The saddest time of his life was ten years ago, when my aunt died of cancer. For these ten years, my uncle has been lonely. He would have liked to have had his wife by his side. Still, his two daughters visit him every day, and if he needs anything, he only has to mention it and it's done. He feels lucky and proud of his family—he doesn't know anybody else his age who has such attentive children. He's also very grateful to have been in good health all these years.*

# ANSWER KEY

## Spelling (page 16)

- A**
- |                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. ca, que, qui, co, cu | 4. cua, cue, cui, cuo       |
| 2. ga, gue, gui, go, gu | 5. gua, güe, güi, guo       |
| 3. za, ce, ci, zo, zu   | 6. ja, je/ge, ji/gi, jo, ju |
- B**
1. Mi hermano no vino a clase porque no hizo la tarea. Ahora está en casa.
  2. ¿Quiénes van al cine esta tarde? ¿Vas tú? ¿Va tu hermano?
  3. Sí, mi hermano va, pero sólo si hace la tarea primero.
- C**
- |      |      |
|------|------|
| 1. 5 | 4. 3 |
| 2. 2 | 5. 4 |
| 3. 3 |      |

## Capitalization (page 19)

- A**
- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| 1. D.   | 3. Ud.   |
| 2. Sra. | 4. Sres. |
- B**
- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. septiembre | 8. miércoles |
| 4. inglés     | 9. argentino |
| 6. católico   |              |

## Punctuation (page 21)

- A**
- |                                        |                                                           |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Maria, ¿vas a estudiar conmigo hoy? | 4. Sí, te llamo a las ocho.                               |
| 2. No, no puedo.                       | 5. "Te voy a extrañar", dijo Paco.                        |
| 3. ¿Me llamas más tarde?               | 6. Fueron a Guatemala, El Salvador, Honduras y Nicaragua. |

## Nouns (page 37)

- A**
- |                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. la hermana      | 6. el amigo   |
| 2. el profesor     | 7. la miembro |
| 3. la médico       | 8. el jefe    |
| 4. el especialista | 9. la mujer   |
| 5. la paciente     |               |

- B**
1. el
  2. la
  3. el
  4. el
  5. la
  6. el
  7. la
  8. la
  9. el
  10. el
  11. la
  12. la
- C**
1. casas
  2. libros
  3. esquíes
  4. ladrones
  5. ciudades
  6. lápices
  7. órdenes
  8. lunes
  9. domingos
  10. los Sres. Pérez/ los Pérez

### Numbers (page 52)

- A**
1. dos
  2. diez
  3. catorce
  4. veintidós
  5. treinta y nueve
  6. ciento cuarenta y seis
  7. cuatrocientos setenta y tres
  8. quinientos once
  9. mil novecientos ochenta y cuatro
  10. dos mil siete
- B**
1. el primer libro, la primera novela
  2. el segundo piso, la segunda vez
  3. el tercer edificio, la tercera casa
  4. el cuarto año, la cuarta calle
  5. el quinto día, la quinta persona
- C**
1. veintiún chicos
  2. veintiuna chicas
  3. cien libros
  4. doscientos tres niños
  5. dos millones de dólares
  6. el dos de octubre de mil novecientos setenta y siete
  7. dos cero dos, cuatro noventa, treinta y tres, sesenta y uno
  8. las diez y media de la mañana
  9. medio kilo
  10. dos kilos y medio

### Noun Determiners (pages 78-79)

- A**
1. el águila
  2. estos libros
  3. la lección
  4. las aguas
  5. aquel día
  6. aquellas personas
  7. algún chico
  8. unos libros
- B**
1. el
  2. los
  3. en el
  4. en el
  5. al
  6. el
  7. X
  8. X
  9. otra
  10. otras dos
  11. ninguna
  12. X
  13. un
  14. X
  15. las
  16. la
  17. X

- |                                                                                          |                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>C</b> 1. g<br>2. b<br>3. f<br>4. h<br>5. d                                            | 6. a<br>7. c<br>8. i<br>9. e                                                |
| <b>D</b> 1. Ese hombre<br>2. libro cualquiera<br>3. cualquier libro<br>4. propio negocio | 5. negocio propio<br>6. única mujer<br>7. mujer única<br>8. cierto problema |

### Descriptive Adjectives (pages 94–95)

- |                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>A</b> 1. la chica interesante<br>2. el hombre optimista<br>3. las jóvenes encantadoras           | 4. los niños felices<br>5. el muchacho alto                                                                        |
| <b>B</b> 1. la casa pequeña y hermosa<br>2. la blusa y falda nuevas                                 | 3. los zapatos azules y bonitos<br>4. las blusas roja y blanca                                                     |
| <b>C</b> 1. nuevo coche<br>2. gran hombre<br>3. antigua ciudad                                      | 4. familia pobre<br>5. viejo amigo                                                                                 |
| <b>D</b> 1. el verde<br>2. los grandes<br>3. lo bueno                                               | 4. lo interesante<br>5. los interesantes                                                                           |
| <b>E</b> 1. es<br>2. está<br>3. es<br>4. es                                                         | 5. es<br>6. está<br>7. está<br>8. es                                                                               |
| <b>F</b> 1. muy<br>2. un poco<br>3. demasiado/bien/sumamente/<br>extremadamente/requete<br>4. ísimo | 5. el chico más alto de la clase<br>6. más enérgica que Esteban<br>7. ísima<br>8. la chica más seria de la escuela |

### The Infinitive (page 101)

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>A</b> 1. Tenemos que estudiar más.<br>2. Volvió a escribir el ejercicio.<br>3. Quieren dejar de fumar.<br>4. Nos encanta ir de compras.<br>5. Vi salir al jefe.<br>6. Ella me hizo trabajar. | 7. (El) saber montar en bicicleta es importante en esta ciudad.<br>8. Acaba de llegar.<br>9. Es difícil estudiar aquí.<br>10. Estos libros son fáciles de entender. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Types of Verbs** (page 109)

- A**
- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. sales, a    | 12. visita, c   |
| 2. levanto, b  | 13. dice, f     |
| 3. caminan, a  | 14. acaba, g    |
| 4. llama, c    | 15. fascina, e  |
| 5. cuenta, d   | 16. lastiman, b |
| 6. queja, b    | 17. gusta, e    |
| 7. envía, d    | 18. aconsejo, f |
| 8. pierden, g  | 19. sugiere, f  |
| 9. encantan, e | 20. quiero, c   |
| 10. da, d      | 21. vamos, a    |
| 11. olvida, g  |                 |

**The Present Tense** (page 121)

- A**
- |             |                      |
|-------------|----------------------|
| 1. hacen    | 6. está              |
| 2. leyendo  | 7. ir                |
| 3. tenemos  | 8. voy a estudiar    |
| 4. estudias | 9. se cae            |
| 5. hablo    | 10. canta en público |

- B**
1. Construyen/Están construyendo una casa nueva.
  2. Llevamos diez años viviendo en esta ciudad./ Hace diez años que vivimos en esta ciudad./ Vivimos en esta ciudad desde hace diez años.
  3. Esta es la primera vez que como mole.
  4. (Ella) acaba de leer esa novela.
  5. ¿Te llevamos a tu casa?
  6. Casi/ Por poco tienen un accidente.
  7. Si me llamas, te ayudo.
  8. Nos vamos a las seis y la película empieza a las siete.
  9. ¿Vas a salir con tus amigos mañana por la noche?
  10. ¿Me ayudas?

**The Preterite Perfect Tense** (page 126)

- A**
- |                           |                                   |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Mis padres han comido. | 3. He terminado con mis exámenes. |
| 2. ¿Qué has hecho?        | 4. Ana ha recibido un mensaje.    |
- B**
1. Acaban de llegar.
  2. Ya hemos escrito las cartas.
  3. No ha enviado su solicitud todavía.
  4. Abrió la ventana hace unos minutos.
  5. ¿Cuántas veces han visto ustedes esa película?

**The Preterite Tense** (page 131)

- A**
- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. jugué    | 13. pudo    |
| 2. almorzó  | 14. oíste   |
| 3. fuimos   | 15. leyó    |
| 4. tuve     | 16. dio     |
| 5. corrió   | 17. vi      |
| 6. hicieron | 18. buscó   |
| 7. estuvo   | 19. escribí |
| 8. estudié  | 20. visitó  |
| 9. volvió   | 21. leí     |
| 10. dormí   | 22. fui     |
| 11. hizo    | 23. sintió  |
| 12. comí    | 24. supe    |
- B**
- |                                  |                                       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Yo siempre pagué las cuentas. | 7. Los niños durmieron toda la noche. |
| 2. Jorge bailó bien.             | 8. A Beatriz no le gustó la película. |
| 3. Fuimos al cine el sábado.     | 9. Me dio mucho gusto conocerlo.      |
| 4. No hicimos nada el jueves.    | 10. Estuvo muy cansado.               |
| 5. ¿Adónde fuiste?               |                                       |
| 6. Nuestro equipo jugó bien.     |                                       |

**The Imperfect Tense** (pages 138–139)

- A**
1. Era pequeña y un poco seria.
  2. Tenía un perro y me gustaba jugar con él.
  3. Iba al cine con mis amigas todos los miércoles.
  4. Mi familia y yo comíamos en la casa de mi abuela los domingos por la tarde.
  5. Escribía mis tareas en la tarde después de las clases.
  6. Mis hermanas y yo ayudábamos en la casa.
  7. Mis amigos iban a la playa en el verano y a veces yo los acompañaba.
  8. La actividad que me gustaba más era leer.
- B**
1. cocinaba, veía
  2. entré, jugaban (estaban jugando)
  3. estábamos, apagó
  4. llamaste, estaba
  5. quería
  6. podía, tenía que, fui

**The Pluperfect Tense** (page 142)

- A**
1. había leído el periódico
  2. ya había comido
  3. no había estudiado

**The Future Tense** (page 148)

- A**
- |                |           |
|----------------|-----------|
| 1. tendré      | 3. vivirá |
| 2. encontrarás | 4. vendrá |
- B**
- |            |          |
|------------|----------|
| 1. regrese | 4. comes |
| 2. estudie | 5. tenga |
| 3. estén   |          |

**The Future Perfect Tense** (page 150)

- A**
- |           |                                           |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------|
| 1. habrán | 3. habremos                               |
| 2. habrá  | 4. habré.... ( <i>Answer will vary.</i> ) |

**The Simple Conditional** (page 154)

- A**
1. Tendrías frío.
  2. Estaría enferma.
  3. Si yo fuera tú (usted), no saldría.
  4. Si tuviera más dinero, compraría una casa.
  5. ¿Qué harías tú? / ¿Qué haría usted?

**The Conditional Perfect** (page 157)

- A**
1. ¿Qué habríamos hecho?
  2. Si hubiera tenido tiempo, te habría llamado.
  3. Si hubiera estado allí tu hermano, no habrías hecho eso.
  4. Si hubiéramos sabido la verdad, no habríamos trabajado aquí.

**The Present Subjunctive** (pages 175–176)

- A**
- |               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| 1. tenga      | 6. llegue  |
| 2. habla      | 7. vienen  |
| 3. guste      | 8. acepten |
| 4. escribamos | 9. ir      |
| 5. llames     | 10. vayan  |
- B**
1. No hay nadie que cocine como mi mamá.
  2. Buscamos un gerente que hable español.
  3. Espero que vengas a la fiesta.
  4. Ella te aconseja que trabajes más.
  5. ¡Es maravilloso que estés aquí!
  6. Él duda que yo lo pueda hacer.
  7. Te llamo en cuanto / tan pronto como / cuando sepa las noticias.
  8. Te recojo a menos que tenga que trabajar.
  9. Ella sale sin que él lo sepa.
  10. Ahorrarán dinero para poder viajar.

- C** 1. Ven conmigo. 3. Levántense.  
2. Siéntese, por favor. 4. ¡Vamos al cine!
- D** 1. No vengas conmigo. 3. No se levanten.  
2. No se sienten, por favor. 4. No vayamos al cine.

### The Preterite Perfect Subjunctive (page 183)

- A** 1. haya estudiado 4. haber podido  
2. haya terminado 5. haya pagado  
3. hayas podido

### The Imperfect Subjunctive (page 196)

- A** 1. tuviera 3. solicitara  
2. acompañaran 4. llamara
- B** 1. estudiara  
2. ver  
3. leyeras
- C** 1. Si lo quisiera, me casaría con él.  
2. Si él me llamara todas las noches, no contestaría el teléfono.  
3. Si quisieras tocar el piano, practicarías todos los días.  
4. Si mi papá estuviera aquí, me ayudaría.

### The Pluperfect Subjunctive (page 199)

- A** 1. Si lo hubiera querido, me habría casado con él.  
2. Si él me hubiera llamado todas las noches, no habría contestado el teléfono.  
3. Si hubieras querido tocar el piano, habrías practicado todos los días.  
4. Si mi papá hubiera estado aquí, me habría ayudado.

### Reported Speech (page 203)

- A** 1. quiere ir al cine, quería ir al cine  
2. fueron al cine ayer, habían ido al cine ayer  
3. le ayude con la computadora, le ayudara con la computadora  
4. va a estar en su casa esta tarde, iba a estar en su casa esta tarde

### Subjects, Objects, and Their Pronouns (pages 228–230)

- A** 1. -tigo 5. mí  
2. -sigo 6. ti  
3. usted 7. nosotros  
4. mí 8. él
- B** 1. nos 4. se  
2. se 5. -se  
3. Me 6. -te

- C** 1. se aprovechó 4. me siento  
2. quedaron 5. Despedimos  
3. se quedó
- D** 1. Juan no la llamó esta tarde.  
2. Susana las dejó en el mercado.  
3. Los queremos mucho.
- E** 1. me 3. nos  
2. les 4. Te
- F** 1. Me la va a enviar la próxima semana.  
2. Ángela se las dará muy pronto.  
3. ¿Te lo dijo Jorge?
- G** 1. A Victoria le interesan las películas. Le encantan.  
2. A Roberto le fastidia el tráfico. Le molesta mucho.  
3. A Juan le gusta Inés. Ella le fascina (a él). / Le fascina.
- H** 1. A Mario se le quedaron las llaves en el coche.  
2. Se nos cayeron los libros.  
3. Se les olvidó la tarea.
- I** 1. habla 3. venden  
2. enseñan 4. sirve
- J** 1. Lo bueno 3. el cual  
2. lo difícil 4. de las cuales

## Adverbs and Prepositions with Adverbial Functions

(pages 254–256)

- A** 1. pasada 7. buen tiempo  
2. anoche 8. veces  
3. última, hace dos semanas 9. ¿Te divertiste? / ¿Lo pasaste bien?  
4. últimas 10. tiempo  
5. siguiente 11. otra vez / una vez más  
6. próximo 12. A veces
- B** 1. leer 3. vuelvan  
2. regrese 4. vestirse
- C** 1. los lunes 4. más de  
2. el lunes 5. en  
3. Siempre
- D** 1. delante de 3. dentro de  
2. afuera 4. abajo
- E** 1. suave y dulcemente 3. con calma  
2. recién 4. despacio / lento / lentamente

- F** 1. b 4. a  
2. e 5. d  
3. c
- G** 1. ¿Adónde vas? / ¿Adónde va usted?  
2. ¿De qué hablan ustedes? / ¿De qué habláis?  
3. ¿Con quién vas al cine? / ¿Con quién va usted al cine?  
4. ¿Cuándo regresan/vuelven ustedes? / ¿Cuándo regresáis/volváis?
- H** 1. No voy a ninguna parte.  
2. No hablamos de nada.  
3. No voy al cine con nadie.  
4. No regresamos nunca. / No volvemos nunca.
- I** 1. d 5. a  
2. g 6. c  
3. f 7. b  
4. e

### Other Prepositions (pages 288–289)

- A** 1. tú y yo 4. ella  
2. -tigo 5. ella y por él  
3. a la
- B** 1. ¿En qué piensas? / ¿En qué estás pensando?  
2. ¿A quién busca? / ¿A quién está buscando?  
3. ¿Con quién va?  
4. ¿Qué esperamos? / ¿Qué estamos esperando?  
5. ¿Qué miras? / ¿Qué estás mirando?  
6. ¿De quién es la carta?  
7. ¿Desde cuándo estás aquí? / ¿Hace cuánto tiempo que estás aquí?  
8. ¿Con qué frecuencia visitas a tu abuela?
- C** 1. a 6. de  
2. a 7. de  
3. con 8. de  
4. con 9. por  
5. en 10. en
- D** 1. por 6. para  
2. para 7. para  
3. por 8. por  
4. para 9. por  
5. Para

**Conjunctions** (page 296)

- A**
- |         |                      |
|---------|----------------------|
| 1. e    | 6. pues              |
| 2. sino | 7. Tanto, como       |
| 3. y    | 8. O, o              |
| 4. ni   | 9. u                 |
| 5. o    | 10. ni / ni siquiera |

**Words** (pages 321–322)

- A**
- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. chocolate   | 6. fragmento   |
| 2. solución    | 7. sentimiento |
| 3. posibilidad | 8. arrogancia  |
| 4. biología    | 9. presencia   |
| 5. paciente    | 10. feminista  |
- B**
- |                   |              |
|-------------------|--------------|
| 1. sand           | 6. argument  |
| 2. folder         | 7. factory   |
| 3. commitment     | 8. reading   |
| 4. custom         | 9. relatives |
| 5. disappointment | 10. event    |
- C**
- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. advertir | 6. molestar  |
| 2. notar    | 7. recordar  |
| 3. atender  | 8. avisar    |
| 4. discutir | 9. solicitar |
| 5. ignorar  | 10. asistir  |
- D**
- |      |       |
|------|-------|
| 1. k | 7. e  |
| 2. b | 8. h  |
| 3. i | 9. f  |
| 4. d | 10. g |
| 5. j | 11. a |
| 6. c | 12. l |
- E**
- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| 1. dos veces | 6. irme   |
| 2. preguntó  | 7. Voy    |
| 3. es        | 8. conoce |
| 4. está      | 9. bueno  |
| 5. tiene     |           |

**Constructions** (page 330)

- A**
1. ¿Cuándo van a darle de alta a tu abuela? / ¿Cuándo le van a dar de alta a tu abuela?
  2. ¿Vas a estrenar tus nuevos zapatos?
  3. Quiero estar en la estación para darte la bienvenida.
  4. Ella fue a México y se enamoró.
  5. La cena se echó a perder.
  6. La chica no se fijó en él durante la fiesta.
  7. Me echaron la culpa (a mí).
  8. Se despidieron esta mañana en el aeropuerto.
  9. ¿De qué se trata tu trabajo?
  10. ¿A qué hora desayunan ustedes? / ¿A qué hora desayunáis?
- B**
1. No tengo que comprar nada.
  2. Nunca viene a visitar los domingos.
  3. Jorge no va a estudiar, ni yo tampoco.
  4. Nadie está en la oficina.

**Catch the Blunders** (pages 331–336)

**A** Estoy en mi primer año de la universidad. Vivo en una residencia, que se llama “Jefferson Hall”, con dos compañeras de cuarto, Mary y Jenna. Las dos son muy simpáticas y nos llevamos bien. Mary es bastante seria y estudia mucho. Jenna es buena estudiante, pero no estudia tanto como Mary. Nuestro dormitorio no es grande, pero es cómodo y bonito.

**B** Como quiero ser médico, estudio biología y química, que me gustan mucho. Mis clases son los lunes y los miércoles desde las diez de la mañana hasta las once y media, en Washington Hall. También tengo que estudiar inglés, historia y español. El español es difícil para mí, pero me gusta y creo que es importante para mi carrera. La clase de inglés es los martes y los jueves a las nueve en Harrison Hall, la de historia es a mediodía los mismos días y en el mismo edificio y la de español es de lunes a jueves desde las dos de la tarde hasta las tres, en Tyler Hall. No tengo que asistir a clases los viernes.

**C** Entramos en un dormitorio de la universidad y vemos esta escena: Hay ocho estudiantes sentados en el suelo preparándose para un examen. Están tratando de recordar todos los datos sobre la Guerra Civil de los Estados Unidos. Una chica tiene una pizarra pequeña en la cual está escribiendo las fechas importantes. Un chico le está explicando a su amigo lo que pasó al final de la guerra. Otros dos chicos están leyendo sus libros de texto. Una estudiante está durmiendo y su amiga está tratando de despertarla. Un muchacho está hablando por celular con su novia. Nadie está viendo la televisión. Todos beben café y esperan la llegada de unas pizzas.

**D** El viernes tengo una fiesta en la casa de un amigo. Voy a ir con otras dos chicas. No sé qué van a llevar ellas, pero yo pienso llevar mi nueva falda negra con una blusa rosada. Voy a usar unos zapatos negros de tacón alto y unos pendientes de plata. Mis amigas vienen a buscarme a las siete, así que voy a tener que cambiarme de ropa rápido porque mi última clase no termina hasta las 5:30. Estoy segura de que vamos a divertirnos mucho.

**E** Cuando era joven, vivía en la ciudad con mis padres y con mis hermanos. Todos los domingos íbamos al pueblo para almorzar a la casa de mis abuelos. También iban mis tíos con sus hijos, y a veces invitábamos a algún amigo. En fin, había mucha gente que comía y se divertía en esa casa los domingos. Mi abuela, la mejor cocinera del mundo, preparaba una gran comida, con por lo menos dos tipos de carne, varios platos de verduras, dos o tres ensaladas y frutas. Nunca faltaba el pan especial hecho a mano por mi abuela. Luego se servía un pastel o una torta de postre. A todo el mundo le gustaba comer en casa de mi abuela. A mí me gustaba jugar con mis primos, pero lo que me gustaba más era sentarme en la mesa con los viejos y escuchar sus cuentos.

**F** Un domingo cuando estábamos en la casa de mis abuelos, mi hermano se cayó de un árbol, donde estaba jugando con nuestro primo. Todos estábamos muy preocupados. Alguien llamó a la ambulancia. Mientras esperábamos ayuda, mi mamá trataba de calmar a mi hermano, que estaba agitado. Él no lloraba, aunque estaba muy herido. Yo trataba de calmar a mi hermanita, que sí lloraba por lo ocurrido. Por fin llegó la ambulancia. Los paramédicos examinaron a mi hermano y lo llevaron al hospital, donde determinaron que se le había roto la clavícula. Le pusieron algunas vendas, le dieron un calmante y luego lo llevamos a casa.

**G** Una clase de español está planeando hacer una fiesta para celebrar el final del semestre. El profesor quiere que los estudiantes traigan platos auténticos de la cocina hispana. Les dice a tres chicas que preparen arroz con pollo al estilo colombiano. Les sugiere a otras dos que sigan una receta para unas papas al estilo peruano. A un chico le recomienda que haga una tortilla española, y a otro que prepare un flan. El profesor les da recetas para todos estos platos. Los estudiantes salen entusiasmados, pensando en su fiesta y en la comida rica que van a cocinar.

**H** Una clase de español estaba planeando hacer una fiesta para celebrar el final del semestre. El profesor quería que los estudiantes trajeran platos auténticos de la cocina hispana. Les dijo a tres chicas que prepararan arroz con pollo al estilo colombiano. Les sugirió a otras dos que siguieran una receta para unas papas al estilo peruano. A un chico le recomendó que hiciera una tortilla española, y a otro que preparara un flan. El profesor les dio recetas para todos estos platos. Los estudiantes salieron entusiasmados, pensando en su fiesta y en la comida rica que iban a cocinar.

**I** “¿Qué van a hacer ustedes cuando se gradúen?” preguntó la señora que visitaba la universidad con su hija. Una chica contestó, “voy a estudiar medicina y algún día seré médico”. Otra dijo, “haré un viaje alrededor del mundo y no volveré hasta que me canse de la aventura”. Otras dijeron que no sabían qué iban a hacer. Algunas estaban seguras de que querían casarse y tener hijos algún día, pero otras no.

**J** Para el año 2050, todos nosotros seremos viejos y habremos hecho muchas cosas. Mi hermano dice que se habrá jubilado después de haber trabajado cuarenta años. Se habrá casado con su novia actual y tendrán tres hijos. Los hijos ya habrán terminado sus carreras y vivirán en varias partes del mundo. Mi hermano piensa que se reunirán todos por lo menos cuatro veces al año. Su novia dice que ella también se habrá jubilado y que sí, se habrá casado con mi hermano. Pero ella dice que no tendrán tres hijos, sino dos, y que los dos vivirán cerca de sus padres cuando sean grandes.

**K** Si yo ganara “el gordo” de la lotería, o si alguien me diera diez millones de dólares, antes de hacer otra cosa, contrataría a alguien que sirviera como mi gerente personal, que manejara el dinero, que lo invirtiera bien, que me ayudara en elegir proyectos filantrópicos y que asegurara que no perdiera el dinero tan rápido como lo hubiera ganado. Luego dejaría de trabajar y pensaría en la mejor manera de disfrutar de la vida. Creo que buscaría una casa elegante, pero no muy grande, y que también compraría una casa nueva para mis padres. Compraría un coche de lujo. Haría viajes a los países que me parecieran interesantes, pero antes de hacer cada viaje, estudiaría el idioma y la cultura del lugar. Leería mucho para aprender más del mundo. Claro, también haría muchas fiestas en la nueva casa e invitaría a todos mis amigos.

**L** Mi tío ya es viejo y dice que ha vivido bien. Claro, hay cosas que habría cambiado si hubiera tenido la oportunidad, pero en general está contento. La época más triste de su vida fue hace diez años, cuando mi tía murió de cáncer. Durante estos diez años, mi tío se ha sentido muy solo. Le habría gustado mucho disfrutar de la compañía de su esposa. Sin embargo, sus dos hijas lo visitan todos los días, y si necesita cualquier cosa, sólo tiene que decirlo y se cumple el deseo en seguida. Se siente dichoso y muy orgulloso de su familia, pues no conoce a ningún otro anciano que tenga hijos tan atentos. También está muy agradecido de haber gozado de buena salud todos estos años.

*This page intentionally left blank.*

# INDEX OF SPANISH WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

- a* 48, 97, 104–8, 165, 215, 234, 242, 257, 261–65  
*a la, a las* 231–32  
*abajo* 234, 243  
*acá* 242  
*acabar de* 98, 270  
*acaso* 159  
*acaso, por si* 282  
*actualmente* 114, 231  
*acuerdo, de* 269  
*adelantado, por* 282  
*adelante* 234, 243  
*adentro* 234, 243  
*adónde* 251  
*afuera* 234  
*abí* 233  
*ahora* 114, 231, 249  
*ahora, por* 282  
*al* 56, 100, 257  
*algo* 235  
*alguien* 328  
*algún/alguna(-os/-as)* 54, 71, 328  
*allí, allá* 230  
*almuerzo, de* 272  
*alrededor (de)* 234  
*ambos(-as)* 54, 75  
*año, este* 114  
*anoche* 123, 232, 236  
*ante* 257, 284  
*anteayer* 123, 232  
*antes* 232, 233  
*antes de* 239, 259  
*antes posible, lo* 232  
*antes que* 145, 159, 171, 192, 232, 239  
*apenas* 247, 295–96  
*apenas... cuando* 291  
*aquel/aquella(-os/-as)* 53, 68  
*aquí, acá* 233  
*arriba* 234, 242  
*así que* 323  
*atrás (de)* 234  
*aunque* 291, 296–97  
*ayer* 123, 232  
  
*bajo* 257, 285–86  
*balde, en* 275  
*base de, a* 265  
*bastante* 146, 235  
*bien* 234, 235, 246, 319  
*broma, en* 275  
*buen/bueno(-a/-os/-as)* 64, 84, 319  
  
*caballo, a* 265  
*cada* 54, 75  
*calma, con* 235  
*casa, en* 275  
*caso de que, en* 146, 159, 171, 181, 192  
*causa de, a* 265  
*caza, de* 269  
*cena, de* 272  
*cerca (de)* 234  
*ciegas, a* 245  
*cierto* 54, 64, 77  
*cierto, por* 282  
*colmo, para* 278  
*cómo* 248, 252, 253  
*como* 66, 247, 252, 323  
*como si* 195  
*con* 257, 266  
*conmigo, contigo, consigo* 208, 258  
*consecuencia de, a* 265  
*construcción, en* 275  
*contento de que, estar* 159, 190

- contra* 257, 284  
*contra de, en* 275  
*contrario, al* 265  
*corazón, de todo* 272  
*costa de, a* 265  
*cuál* 250–51  
*cual, el* 227  
*cual, lo* 227  
*cualquier/cualquiera* 54, 71  
*cuando* 145, 159, 170, 182, 191, 231, 232  
*cuánto* 253  
*cuánto(-a/-os/-as)* 250  
*cuantos(-as), unos(-as)* 54, 71  
*cuidado, con* 245  
*cuidado de, al* 59  
*cuyo(-a/-os/-as)* 53
- de* 46, 48, 51, 93, 97, 98, 257, 267–72  
*de... en* 268  
*debajo de* 234, 243  
*del* 56, 257  
*delante* 243  
*delante de* 234, 243  
*demás, los* 54, 76  
*demasiado* 235, 246  
*dentro de* 144, 234, 243  
*derecha (de), a la* 234, 320  
*derecho(-a)* 320  
*derecho, todo* 234  
*desde* 116–17, 257, 283–84, 323  
*desgracia, para su* 278  
*desgracia, por* 282  
*después de* 232, 233, 259  
*después que* 145, 159, 171, 192, 232, 239  
*detrás (de)* 234  
*día, algún* 144, 328  
*día, de* 231, 272  
*día siguiente, al* 232  
*días, estos* 114, 231  
*días, todos los* 233  
*Dios, por* 282  
*duras penas, a* 265
- e* 291  
*efectivo, en* 275
- ejemplo, por* 282  
*él/ella(-os/-as)* 204, 206, 207, 258  
*el/la/los/las* 25–36, 48, 51, 53, 55–63, 86, 205, 232  
*en* 48, 60, 98, 233, 242, 257, 272–76  
*en cuanto* 145, 159, 171, 182, 191, 232, 275  
*en cuanto a* 275  
*encima de* 234, 242  
*encima de, por* 282  
*enfrente* 234  
*enfrente de* 234, 243  
*entonces* 232  
*entonces, en aquel* 232  
*entre* 233, 244, 257, 258, 287  
*escondidas, a* 265  
*escrito, por* 282  
*ese/esa/eso(-os/-as)* 53, 67–68  
*esmero, con* 245  
*eso de, a* 265  
*esos días, en* 232  
*espaldas de, a* 265  
*estar* 87–90, 112, 128, 132, 136, 309–10  
*este/esta/esto(-os/-as)* 53, 67–70  
*este momento, en* 114, 231, 275  
*excepto* 257, 258, 288
- favor de, a* 265  
*favor, por* 282  
*fin de cuentas, a* 265  
*fin de que, a* 148, 160, 173  
*final, al* 231  
*finalmente* 233  
*fines de, a* 231  
*flor, en* 275  
*frecuentemente* 233  
*frente a* 234  
*fuera de* 234  
*fuerza, por la* 282
- gana, de buena/mala* 272  
*generalmente* 233  
*gran/grande* 64, 85  
*gustar* 96, 106, 135, 221–23, 314, 326  
*gusto, a* 265

*haber* 98, 128, 140, 143, 149, 152,  
155, 158, 162, 177, 197, 309  
*bace* 116, 123, 232, 237, 323  
*hacer* 99, 112, 122, 128, 140, 143,  
149, 152, 155, 163, 177, 197  
*bacia* 234, 257, 284  
*basta* 257  
*basta que* 145, 159, 171, 181, 192  
*boy* 114, 231, 249  
*bubiera* 197–99  
*humor, de buen/mal* 269  
  
*ir* 102, 112, 128, 132, 162, 163  
*ir a* 97  
*izquierda (de), a la* 234  
  
*lado (de), al* 234  
*larga, a la* 265  
*largo de, a lo* 265  
*le/les* 104, 106, 221–23, 224–25  
*lejos* 234  
*lejos, a lo* 234  
*lejos de* 234  
*llamas, en* 275  
*lo* 86, 226–27  
*lo/la/los/las* 104, 214–17, 233  
*lo que* 227  
*luego* 233  
*lugar, en primer* 233  
*lugar de, en* 275  
  
*mal* 234, 319  
*malo(-a)* 319  
*mañana* 232, 249  
*mañana, esta* 114, 231, 232  
*manera, de la misma* 272  
*manera, de ninguna* 249, 272  
*más de* 46  
*más que* 91–92, 235  
*más tarde* 232  
*mayor* 92  
*me* 204, 208, 221–23, 224–25  
*medio(-a)* 48, 50–51, 54, 64, 77  
*medio de, por* 282  
*mejor* 92, 234  
*mejor, a lo* 265  
*menor* 92  
*menos, por lo* 282

*menos que* 91–92, 235  
*menos que, a* 146, 159, 171, 181,  
192  
*menudo, a* 233, 265  
*merienda, de* 269  
*mes, este* 114  
*mí* 204, 208  
*mi, mis* 53, 68  
*mientras* 145, 159, 170  
*mientras que* 291, 297  
*mío(a/-os/-as)* 53, 70  
*mismo(-a/-os/-as)* 54, 77  
*moda, de* 269  
*modo que, de* 291, 297  
*motivo de, con* 63  
*mucho/poca frecuencia, con* 233  
*mucho* 246, 311  
*mucho(-a/-os/-as)* 54, 73, 233  
*mudanza, de* 269  
*muy* 235, 246, 311  
  
*nada* 235, 249, 328–29  
*nada, de* 272  
*nadie* 328–29  
*ni* 291, 294, 328–29  
*ni siquiera* 294  
*ni un solo* 76  
*ningún/ninguno(-a)* 43, 328–29  
*ninguna parte* 328  
*no en balde* 275  
*no hay de qué* 272  
*no ser para tanto* 278  
*no... sino* 295  
*noche, de* 231, 272  
*noche, esta* 114, 231, 232  
*nombre de, en* 63  
*nos* 104, 209, 210, 221, 224–25  
*nosotros(-as)* 204, 206, 207, 258  
*nuestro(-a/-os/-as)* 53, 60  
*nuevo, de* 272  
*nunca* 144, 233, 240–41, 328–29  
*nunca, casi* 233  
  
*o* 291, 292–93  
*objeto de, con* 63  
*obras, en* 275  
*ojalá que* 158, 160, 166, 195, 325  
*opinión, en mi* 275

- os 104, 221, 224–25  
 otro(-a/-os/-as) 43–44, 54, 64, 71–72  
  
 para 97, 148, 173, 194, 234, 257, 259, 276–79  
 para, estar 278  
 para que 148, 160, 173, 194  
 para que te enteres 279  
 para sí 278  
 parecer 112, 136, 221–23  
 parejas, por 282  
 parte, alguna 238  
 partir de, a 265  
 pasado(-a) 123, 232, 236  
 pasado mañana 232  
 pedir 105, 112, 158, 161, 167, 188, 201–3, 308  
 peor 92, 234  
 pero 291, 294  
 pesar de, a 265  
 pie, de 269  
 pocas veces 233  
 poco(-a/-os/-as) 54, 72, 319  
 poco, un 146, 233, 235, 319  
 pocos, unos 54, 71  
 por 48, 66, 234, 257, 259, 279–83  
 por qué 160, 252  
 porque 252  
 poseer 136  
 preguntar 201–2, 308  
 presente, por el 282  
 primer/primer(-a/-os/-as) 49–50, 233  
 principio, al 231, 265  
 principios de, a 231  
 prisa, de 269  
 pronto 144, 232  
 pronto, de 272  
 pronto posible, lo más 232  
 propio(-a/-os/-as) 54, 77  
 propósito, a 265  
 próximo(-a/-os/-as) 144, 237  
 pues 291, 294  
 puesto que 291, 297  
  
 qué 250–51  
 que 98, 253  
 que, de lo 247  
  
 quién 250  
 quizá/quizás 159, 170  
  
 recientemente 231  
 recto 234  
 repente, de 272  
 revés, al 265  
  
 saber, a 265  
 salvo 257, 258, 288  
 salvo, a 265  
 se 103, 204, 209, 210, 224–26  
 seguida, en 275  
 según 257, 258, 287  
 seguro(-a) que, estar 190  
 semana, esta 114, 231, 232  
 semejante(s) 54, 77  
 semestre, este 114  
 ser 87–90, 128, 132, 136, 162, 191, 308–9  
 ser te sincero, para 278  
 servirle, para 278  
 siempre 233, 240–41  
 siempre, casi 233  
 siempre que 171  
 siempre y cuando 146, 159, 171, 181, 192  
 siguiente 237  
 sin 65, 97, 116–17, 173, 194, 257, 267  
 sin que 146, 159, 173, 194  
 sino que 295  
 sobre 233, 243, 257, 285  
 solamente 76  
 solas, a 265  
 sólo 76  
 sorpresa, para mi gran 278  
 su/sus 53, 69  
 suma, en 275  
 supuesto, por 248, 282  
 suyo(-a/-os/-as) 53, 70  
  
 tal 54, 76–77  
 tal de que, con 146, 159, 171, 181, 192  
 también 249, 328  
 tampoco 250, 328–29  
 tan 235, 247, 323  
 tan... como 93

- tan pronto como* 145, 159, 171, 182,  
191, 232  
*tanto* 54, 73, 247  
*tarde* 231  
*tarde, esta* 114, 231, 232  
*te* 204, 221–23, 224–25  
*temprano* 231  
*tener* 64–65, 112, 128, 136, 143, 152,  
163, 310–11  
*tener que* 98  
*ti* 204, 208  
*tiempo* 239, 308  
*tiempo, a* 265  
*tiempo, en aquel* 232  
*todavía* 141, 249  
*todo* 54, 74  
*tras* 257, 286  
*través de, a* 234, 265  
*tú* 204, 258  
*tu/tus* 53, 69  
*tuyo(-a/-os/-as)* 53, 70  
  
*último* 236  
*un/una(-os/-as)* 42, 53, 63–66  
  
*un día sí, otro no* 233  
*único(-a/-os/-as)* 54, 76,  
77  
*usted* 258  
*ustedes* 204, 207, 258  
  
*variar, para* 279  
*varios(-as)* 54, 77  
*veces, a* 233, 239, 265  
*venta, en* 275  
*verdad, de* 272  
*vez* 239, 308  
*vez, alguna que otra* 233  
*vez, tal* 159  
*vez a, una* 233  
*vez de, en* 275  
*vez en cuando, de* 233  
*visita, de* 269  
*vosotros(-as)* 204, 207, 258  
*vuestro(-a/-os/-as)* 53, 69  
  
*y* 291–92, 323, 328  
*ya* 141  
*yo* 20, 204, 258

# SUBJECT INDEX

- Abbreviations 17
- Accent marks 12–15, 44, 209–10,  
216–17, 220, 250
- Addresses, street 47
- Adjectives 29–30, 319–20
- cognates 302
  - in comparisons 91–93
  - descriptive 80–93
  - false cognates 305
  - forms 80–83
  - gender 80–83
  - intensification 89–91
  - as nouns 86
  - number 80–83
  - past participles as 87
  - position before and after nouns  
83–85
  - superlative 62, 93
  - usage 86–93
  - with *ser* and *estar* 87–89
- Adverbs 231–53, 319–20
- cognates 302–3
  - of degree 235, 246–47
  - of direction 234
  - false cognate 305
  - of frequency 233, 240–41
  - of manner 234–35, 244–46
  - of order of occurrence 233
  - of place 233–34, 242–44
  - of time 231–32, 236–39. *See also*  
Time expressions
- Amount 72–74, 76. *See also*  
Fractions
- Article titles 18, 66
- Articles *See also* Determiners, noun
- definite 49, 53, 55–63, 107, 206
  - indefinite 42, 53, 63–66
- Book titles 18, 66
- Capitalization 17–18
- Cardinal numbers 38–39, 46–49
- Cities, names of 62
- Cognates 299–303
- false 236, 303–5
- Commands 99–100, 101, 163, 174,  
210, 217
- Comparisons 46, 91–93
- Compass, points of the 63
- Conditional 151–54. *See also*  
Conditional perfect
- Conditional perfect 151, 155–57,  
198–99
- Conjunctions 290–96
- for comparing 296
  - for connecting 290–91
  - for contrasting 293–94, 295–96
  - correlative 290, 291, 292, 293,  
295
  - negative 293, 294
  - for stating consequences 296
  - for stating options 291–93
  - for stating reasons 293, 296
- Consonants 4, 7–9, 10–12
- Contractions 56, 257
- Countries, names of 62
- Dates 47, 50
- Days (of the week) 17, 34, 57, 273
- Definite articles *See* Articles, definite
- Demonstratives 53, 66–68. *See also*  
Determiners, noun
- Determiners, noun 53–77
- Direct objects *See* Objects, direct;  
Pronouns, direct object

- "Exchange" verbs 105–6  
 Exclamations 252–53  
 Expressions, set 323–28. *See also*  
     Prepositions, in set phrases and  
     after certain verbs  
  
 False cognates *See* Cognates  
 Feminine *See* Gender  
 Fractions 40, 50–51. *See also* Amount  
 Future perfect tense 149–50  
 Future tense 143–48  
  
 Gender 80–82. *See also* Nouns,  
     gender  
 Gerunds *See* Objects, with infinitives  
     and gerunds; Verbs, gerunds  
  
 Imperative 99–100, 101, 163, 174,  
     210, 217  
 Imperfect subjunctive 184–96  
 Imperfect tense 132–38  
 Impersonal pronouns *See* Pronouns,  
     impersonal  
 Impersonal *se* verbs *See* Verbs,  
     impersonal *se* verbs  
 Indefinite articles *See* Articles,  
     indefinite  
 Indicative mood 110. *See also* Verbs,  
     tenses, *individual tenses*  
 Indirect objects *See* Objects, indirect;  
     Pronouns, indirect object  
 Infinitives *See* Objects, with  
     infinitives and gerunds; Verbs,  
     infinitives  
 Intransitive verbs 102, 135–36  
 Irregular verbs 112, 128, 132, 143,  
     152, 162, 177, 197  
  
 Languages, names of 17, 60  
  
 Masculine *See* Gender  
 Months (of the year) 17, 47  
 Mountains, names of 62  
  
 Names  
     of persons 17, 33, 49, 61. *See also*  
         Titles, of persons  
     of places 18, 47, 62  
  
 Nationalities 17, 63, 83  
 Negative constructions 249–50, 293,  
     294, 328–29  
 Nouns 25–36. *See also* Determiners,  
     noun  
     abstract 61  
     cognates 299–301  
     false cognates 303–4  
     gender 25–32  
         nouns that name people and  
         animals 25–28  
         other nouns 28–32  
     noncount 107, 205  
     number 32–36, 59, 205  
     place names 62  
     proper 17, 18, 33, 47, 49, 61, 62  
 Number *See* Nouns, number  
 Numbers 38–51  
     billions 46  
     cardinal 38–39, 46–49  
     dates 47, 50  
     fractions 40, 50–51  
     hundreds 44–45  
     millions 46  
     ones 41–44  
     ordinal 39–40, 41, 49–50  
     position 43  
     punctuation 41  
     in street addresses 47  
     telephone 47  
     tens 44  
     thousands 45–46  
     trillions 46  
     writing 1 and 7 41  
  
 Objects 207–227  
     with commands 174  
     direct 99, 103–6, 204, 214–17,  
         220  
     with "exchange" verbs 105–6,  
         218–20  
     indirect 105–8, 204, 218–25  
     with infinitives and gerunds 209,  
         216–17, 220  
     with personal *a* 104, 165, 215,  
         261–62  
     after prepositions 204, 207–8  
     reflexive 204, 208–14

- Objects (*continued*)  
 with requests, demands, suggestions 107, 167–68, 188–89, 223  
 with unplanned occurrences 108, 224–25  
 with verbs of feeling 106–7, 220–23
- Occurrences, unplanned 108, 224–25
- Ordinal numbers 39–40, 41, 49–50
- Past participles 87, 122, 140, 149, 155, 177, 197
- Past tenses 123
- People  
 names of 17, 33, 49, 61. *See also*  
 Titles, of persons  
 nouns for 25–28
- Personal *a* 99, 104, 165, 215, 261–62
- Place markers 233–34, 242–44
- Place names 62
- Pluperfect subjunctive 197–99
- Pluperfect tense 140–42
- Plural *See* Nouns, number
- Possessives 53, 68–70, 108. *See also*  
 Determiners, noun
- Prepositions 97, 104, 243, 245–46, 251–52, 257–88  
 followed by *yo* and *tú* 287–88  
 objects after 204, 207–8  
 personal *a* 99, 104, 165, 215, 261–62  
 pronouns after 204, 207–8, 258–59  
 with question words 251–52, 260  
 in set phrases and after certain verbs 265, 266, 269, 271, 272, 275, 278, 279, 282, 283, 284, 286
- Present subjunctive 161–74
- Present tense 111–20
- Preterite perfect subjunctive 177–83
- Preterite perfect tense 122–26
- Preterite tense 127–30
- Price 60
- Professions 63–64
- Pronouns 204–27  
 with commands 174  
 direct object 99, 104–6, 204, 214–17  
 impersonal 225–26  
 indirect object 105–8, 204, 218–25  
 with infinitives and gerunds 209, 216–17, 220  
 neutral 226–27  
 after prepositions 204, 207–8, 258–59  
 reflexive 204, 208–14  
 subject 204, 205–7
- Pronunciation 3–9  
 consonants 4, 7–9  
 vowels 3, 5–7
- Punctuation 20–21  
 colon 20  
 comma 21, 41, 201  
 dash 20  
 in dialog 20–21  
 exclamation point 20, 252  
 period 21, 41, 201  
 question mark 20, 248  
 quotation marks 20–21, 201
- Quantity *See* Amount; Fractions
- Questions 248–52, 260
- Reflexive objects *See* Objects, reflexive
- Reflexive verbs *See* Verbs, with reflexive pronouns; Verbs, *se* verbs
- Religions/religious affiliations 17, 63, 83
- Reported speech 141, 200–203
- Rivers, names of 62
- Singular *See* Nouns, number
- Spelling 10–15, 300  
 accent marks 12–15, 44, 209–10, 216–17, 220, 250  
 automatic consonant changes 11–12, 91, 127, 162  
 consonants 10–12  
 Stem-changing verbs 112–13, 128, 161, 185
- Street addresses 47
- Subjects 100, 205–7

- Subjunctive mood 158–60. *See also*  
 Verbs, functions, to express;  
 Verbs, tenses, *individual tenses*  
 expressions that signal use of  
 158–60
- Suffixes 26, 27, 31, 80, 81–82, 91,  
 299–301, 302
- Superlatives 62, 93
- Telephone numbers 47
- Time, telling 48–49, 58
- Time expressions 231–32, 236–39  
 with demonstratives 67, 68  
 of frequency 125, 142, 233, 240–41  
 future 144, 232  
 general 231  
 past 68, 123, 232  
 present 231
- Titles  
 of books and articles 18, 66  
 of persons 17, 56–57, 205
- Transitive verbs 103–8, 135–36, 211
- Verbs 96–203, 308–19  
 automatic spelling changes in 11,  
 127, 162  
 cognates 302  
 dictionary form 96  
 “exchange” verbs 105–6  
 false cognates 304–5  
 functions, to express  
 “already” 124–25, 141  
 “ask” 201–3  
 “could” 137  
 “have/had to” 137  
 “I wonder” 145, 156, 325  
 “if only” 195, 198  
 “not yet” 124–25, 141  
 “say” 200–201  
 “should have” 199  
 “will” 145, 324  
 “would” 325–26  
 action in progress 115–18  
 advice 107, 158, 167–68, 188–89  
 avoidance of interference 159,  
 173, 194  
 command 99–100, 101, 163, 174,  
 210, 217  
 completion of future action  
 182–183  
 conditional action 119, 146–47,  
 153–54, 159, 172–73, 192–93,  
 195  
 conjecture 145, 150, 156–57  
 constant past action 130  
 control over action 107, 158,  
 167–68, 188–89  
 demand 99, 107, 158, 168, 189,  
 223  
 desire for action 158, 166–67,  
 187–88  
 desired characteristic 165,  
 178–79, 187  
 doubt 159, 169–70, 180–81,  
 190–91  
 expected action 145–46  
 fact 114  
 feeling 106–7, 159, 169, 180,  
 189–90, 220–23  
 frequency of action 125–26, 142  
 future action 118–19, 277  
 hope about the past 179–80  
 impossibility 169–70, 180–81,  
 190–91  
 improbability 169–70, 180–81,  
 190–91  
 intended action 145–46  
 narration 120, 130, 135–37  
 offer 118  
 ongoing state or feeling in the  
 past 136  
 order 99–100, 101, 163, 174, 210,  
 217  
 past, description of 133–34  
 past action 119–20, 123–24, 130  
 past details 138  
 possibility of occurrence 169–70,  
 180–82, 190–91  
 prediction 144, 150  
 pre-past action 141  
 probability of action 144, 153,  
 156, 169–70, 180–81, 190–91  
 prohibition of action 99, 168,  
 189  
 purpose of action 148, 160,  
 173–74, 194–95, 277

- Verbs, functions, to express  
     (*continued*)  
     recent action 123–24  
     regularly occurring action  
         133–34, 241  
     reported speech 141, 200–203  
     request 118, 167–68, 188–89, 196,  
         223  
     simultaneous past action 134  
     simultaneously begun and  
         terminated action 130  
     speculation about the past 153  
     speculation about the present 145  
     suggestion 223  
     terminated action 129  
     termination of future actions 150  
     time of action 124, 170–71,  
         191–92  
     unplanned occurrence 108,  
         224–25  
     usual action 114  
     what (apparently) doesn't/didn't  
         exist 164, 178, 186  
     what appears to be true 195  
     wish 160, 195, 325  
 gerunds 113, 115, 132, 134,  
     135–36  
     with object pronouns 209,  
         216–17, 220  
 impersonal *se* verbs 225–26  
 indicative mood 110  
 infinitives 96–101  
     as command 101  
     as direct object 99  
     with object pronouns 209,  
         216–17, 220  
     after prepositions 97–99, 259  
     as subject 100  
     vs. *que* + conjugated verb form  
         183, 239  
 intransitive verbs 102, 135–36  
 irregular verbs 112, 128, 132, 143,  
     152, 162, 177, 197  
 past participles 87, 122, 140, 149,  
     155, 177, 197  
     with prepositions 97–99  
     with included prepositions 104,  
         260  
     with reflexive pronouns 208–14  
     reciprocal action 210  
     *se* verbs 103, 208–14  
 stem-changing verbs 112–13, 128,  
     161, 185  
 subjunctive mood 158–60. *See also*  
     Verbs, functions, to express;  
     Verbs, tenses, *individual tenses*  
 tenses  
     conditional perfect 151, 155–57,  
         198  
     future perfect tense 149–50  
     future tense 143–48  
     imperfect subjunctive 184–96  
     imperfect tense 132–38  
     imperfect vs. preterite 137–38  
     past tenses 123  
     pluperfect subjunctive 197–99  
     pluperfect tense 140–42  
     present subjunctive 161–74  
     present tense 111–20  
     preterite perfect subjunctive  
         177–83  
     preterite perfect tense 122–26  
     preterite tense 127–30  
     simple conditional 151–54  
     transitive verbs 103–8, 135–36, 211  
     types of verbs 102–8  
 Vocabulary 299–329. *See also*  
     Cognates  
     English words with more than one  
         Spanish meaning 306–20  
     miscellaneous constructions  
         323–29  
     Spanish words with more than one  
         English meaning 320–21  
 Vowels 3, 5–7  
  
 Water, names of bodies of 62  
 Word order 68, 72, 77, 80, 83–85  
     *and throughout under “Spanish  
         pattern”*